特高级教师

点拨®

知识
方法
素养

本书阅读策略7招·写作技法8招



八年级
英语(下)

(JJ版)

含教材习题答案

吉林教育出版社

教辅资料站

电子教辅　试卷练习
知识总结　备课资源

扫码关注获取更多学习资料

特高级教师

点拨®

知识
方法
素养

八年级 英语 下 （JJ版）

主　　编：荣德基
学科主编：李　丽
本册主编：王秀兰



提分一定有方法

吉林教育出版社

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨 不只提分



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



目录

Unit 1 Spring Is Coming!

魔法六维导图 1
记忆大师 1
Lesson 1 How's the Weather? 3
Lesson 2 It's Getting Warmer! 8
Lesson 3 The Sun Is Rising 14
Lesson 4 The Spring City 17
Lesson 5 Babysitting on a Spring Day 21
Lesson 6 Stories about Spring 27
Unit Review 31
素养：培养“跨文化交际”素养 24

Unit 2 Plant a Plant!

魔法六维导图 37
记忆大师 37
Lesson 7 Planting Trees 39
Lesson 8 Why Are Plants Important? 44
Lesson 9 Gardening with Mary 48
Lesson 10 Make Your Garden Grow! 53
Lesson 11 Amazing Plants 58
Lesson 12 Danny's Plant 62
Unit Review 66
素养：培养“关心他人”素养 64

Unit 3 Animals Are Our Friends

魔法六维导图 72
记忆大师 72
Lesson 13 Danny's Big Scare 74
Lesson 14 Amazing Animals 79
Lesson 15 The Zoo Is Open 84
Lesson 16 The Bear Escaped! 89
Lesson 17 Save the Tigers 93
Lesson 18 Friendship Between Animals 98
Unit Review 103
素养：培养“保护动物”素养 95

Unit 4 The Internet Connects Us

魔法六维导图 108
记忆大师 108
Lesson 19 How Do You Use the Internet? 110
Lesson 20 A Computer Helps! 113
Lesson 21 Books or Computers? 118
Lesson 22 Travel on the Internet 123
Lesson 23 The Internet—Good or Bad? 127
Lesson 24 An E-mail to Grandpa 133
Unit Review 135
素养：培养“合理使用网络”素养 129

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 Buying and Selling

魔法六维导图 …… 141

记忆大师 …… 141

Lesson 25 Raising Money …… 143

Lesson 26 Cookies, Please! …… 146

Lesson 27 Business English …… 151

Lesson 28 Ms. Liu's Great Idea …… 154

Lesson 29 How to Push a Product … 159

Lesson 30 A Cookie Sale …… 165

Unit Review …… 168

素养：培养“诚实守信”素养 …… 157

Unit 6 Be a Champion!

魔法六维导图 …… 175

记忆大师 …… 175

Lesson 31 Don't Fall, Danny! …… 177

Lesson 32 My Favourite Record … 181

Lesson 33 2 800 Years of Sports … 185

Lesson 34 Modern Olympics …… 190

Lesson 35 The Dream Team …… 194

Lesson 36 Classroom Olympics … 197

Unit Review …… 202

素养：培养“竞争与合作”素养 …… 187

Unit 7 Know Our World

魔法六维导图 …… 209

记忆大师 …… 209

Lesson 37 Let's Learn Geography! …… 211

Lesson 38 The World Is a Big Place …… 215

Lesson 39 Ring Up or Call? …… 221

Lesson 40 Body Language …… 225

Lesson 41 A Class of the World … 230

Lesson 42 North America …… 235

Unit Review …… 239

素养：培养“尊重他人文化”的素养 … 229

Unit 8 Save Our World

魔法六维导图 …… 247

记忆大师 …… 247

Lesson 43 Let's Clean Up! …… 249

Lesson 44 Environment Clubs …… 253

Lesson 45 Let's Sort Garbage! …… 259

Lesson 46 Protect Our Environment … 264

Lesson 47 Connected to Nature … 267

Lesson 48 Garbage Is Interesting! … 271

Unit Review …… 276

素养：培养“鼓励他人”的素养 …… 256

培养“让座”素养 …… 274

参考答案及点拨 …… 283

教材习题参考答案 …… 296

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



全书考点索引

单词（按字母顺序排列）

abroad 213
advantage 129
advice 50
afford 150
alive 60
already 162
anywhere 135
appear 120
appreciate 156
arrive 10
attention 251
avoid 83
babysit 23
basic 46
below 29
billion 218
brave 95
bring 179
broken 262
by 100
cancer 125
carefully 64
cause 130
check 266
close 200
communicate 227
congratulate 153
consider 55
courage 95
cover 42
crazy 167
danger 86
decide 55
defeat 195
depend 116
die 269
divide 273
dream 125
dry 56
empty 261
encourage 256
enough 41
enter 115
everyday 152
everyone 199
except 213
excited 82
explain 252
farther 183
feed 86
gentle 77
get 12
happen 76
honest 157
hurt 263
imagine 233
including 153
increase 219
influence 196
instead 24
invitation 112
joke 91
key 115
kiss 228
lay 82
leave 156
less 131
lift 183
litter 263
married 188
maybe 6
mean 153
mice 81
modern 121
much 82
nearly 19
need 261
nobody 167
nod 228
none 200
northern 42
offer 163
opposite 228
others 13
own 51
pay 144
peace 193
planet 218
pleasant 46
polite 228
pollution 251
population 212
poster 145
prepare 232
pride 234
pronounce 224
protect 91
proud 183
purpose 57
push 25
raise 63
reason 95
receive 124
reduce 255
relative 180
research 112
result 200
rise 7
save 266
scared 87
seat 274
sell 121
send 65
several 184
shade 46
shake 82
shine 163
show 50
shower 6
similar 163
smell 51
sometimes 227
spirit 189
succeed 164
symbol 95
take 120
technology 111
though 116
through 15
tie 149
total 218
touch 193
translate 223
trust 158
twentieth 201
unlike 266
used 273
value 157
warn 101
waste 257
water 56
weigh 184
when 4
while 149
wish 125
with 19
without 101

短语（按字母顺序排列）

a bit of 252
agree to do sth. 252
along with 60
any other 149
as long as 61
as well 96
at the beginning of... 94
be afraid of 77
be amazed at... 188
be covered with 220
be different from 152
be full of 183
be going to do sth. 5
be harmful to 130
be known for 233
be made from 46
be scared of 6
be surprised to... 156
because of 19
by the way 42
catch one's eye 162

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

chat with sb. ……112
clean up …… 251
come down …… 24
come true…… 126
come up to …… 148
cut down …… 96
do one's best …… 196
every four years …… 188
far away …… 129
feel like …… 19
find out …… 187
for example …… 192
get sth. done …… 129
have an interest in …… 162
have to…… 51
hear about …… 91
help (sb.) (to) do sth. …… 46
hold on …… 23
hundreds of …… 20
in a word …… 47
in this way ……116
keep on doing sth. …… 122
keep...away from…… 56
keep...in balance …… 95
live off…… 270
long for …… 18
look after…… 64
look forward to …… 30
lots of …… 87
make a difference …… 266
make money …… 144
make sure …… 56
make+sb./sth. +宾补…… 41
more than ……112
no matter what…… 121
one by one …… 16
one day …… 213
one third …… 219
pass on……119
pick up…… 251
plenty of …… 19
point to …… 87
quite a few …… 223
remind sb. of sth…… 81
ring up…… 223
set up …… 134
shake hands…… 227
stand for …… 192
stand out …… 162
stay in touch …… 130
stop...from doing…… 88
take care of …… 266
take part in …… 188
take photos …… 87
take up…… 131
the number of …… 94
think of …… 18
throw away …… 256
too much …… 262
turn into …… 43
turn off…… 258
used to…… 100
wake up …… 87

句型（按字母顺序排列）

How long...? …… 179
I hope not. …… 6
I'm afraid… …… 149
It's one's duty to do sth. …… 275
It's time to do sth. …… 25
not only…but also… …… 196
Shall we...? …… 25
There be sb. /sth. doing sth. … 91
What do/does+ 主语 + look like?…… 77
Would you like to do…?…… 75

辨析（按本书页码排列）

辨析：during 与 in…… 5
辨析：maybe 与 may be …… 6
辨析：rise 与 raise …… 7
辨析：arrive, get to 与 reach … 11
辨析：neither...nor..., both...and..., not only...but also...,either...or… … 11
辨析：see sb. doing 与 see sb. do sth. …… 12
辨析：become,go,get 与 turn… 12
辨析：other, the other, another, the others, others …… 13
辨析：through, across 与 over… 15
辨析：nearly 与 almost …… 19
辨析：because of 与 because… 19
辨析：instead 与 instead of … 24
辨析：above, over, on, below 与 under …… 29
辨析：fill…with… 与 be filled with …… 42
辨析：remember to do sth. 与 remember doing sth. …… 43
辨析：of one's own 与 on one's own …… 51
辨析：have to 与 must …… 51
辨析：try to do sth. 与 try doing sth.…… 56
辨析：alive, living, live 与 lively …… 60
辨析：have been to,have gone to 与 have been in …… 76
辨析：happen 与 take place … 76
辨析：be afraid of (doing) sth. 与 be afraid to do sth. …… 77
辨析：look like 与 be like…… 78
辨析：excited 与 exciting…… 82
辨析：point to 与 point at …… 87
辨析：scared 与 scary …… 87
辨析：hear about/of 与 hear from…… 91
辨析：the number of 与 a number of …… 94
辨析：as well, too, either 与 also …… 96
辨析：by, with 与 in …… 101
辨析：pass 与 past …… 120
辨析：cost, spend, take 与 pay… 120
辨析：receive 与 accept…… 124
辨析：cause 与 reason …… 130
辨析：when 与 while…… 149
辨析：everyday 和 every day …… 152
辨析：leave 与 forget…… 156
辨析：trust 和 believe …… 158
辨析：already, yet 与 still … 162
辨析：offer 与 provide …… 163
辨析：everybody, somebody, anybody 与 nobody…… 167
辨析：how long, how soon 与 how often …… 179
辨析：bring, take 与 fetch … 180
辨析：further 与 farther…… 183
辨析：find out, find 与 look for …… 187
辨析：take part in, join 与 join in …… 188
辨析 :one day 与 some day… 213
辨析：except, except for 与 besides…… 213
辨析：increase by 与 increase to …… 219
辨析：quite a few 与 quite a little …… 223
辨析：between 与 among … 223
辨析：sometimes,some times, sometime 与 some time … 227
辨析：be known as 与 be known for …… 233
辨析：turn off, turn on, turn up 与 turn down …… 258
辨析：too much,much too, too many …… 262
辨析：that, one 与 it …… 279

语法（按本书页码排列）

合成词（U1） …… 34
构词法（U2） …… 69
不定代词 some 与 any（U3） …… 105
if 引导的条件状语从句（U4） …… 138
宾语从句（U5） …… 171
形容词、副词的比较级和最高级（U6） …… 205
现在完成时态（U7） …… 241
被动语态（U7） …… 243
"it" 的用法（U8） …… 279

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

三步阅读学习法

课标中 对“读”的要求		1. 能根据上下文和构词法推断、理解生词的含义。 2. 能理解段落中各句子之间的逻辑关系。 3. 能找出文章中的主题，理解故事的情节，预测故事情节的发展和可能的结局。 4. 能读懂相应水平的常见体裁的读物。 5. 能根据不同的阅读目的运用简单的阅读策略获取信息。 6. 能利用词典等工具书进行阅读。 7. 课外阅读量应累计达到 15 万词以上。
课标中 对“写”的要求		1. 能根据写作要求，收集、准备素材。 2. 能独立起草短文、短信等，并在教师的指导下进行修改。 3. 能使用常见的连接词表示顺序和逻辑关系。 4. 能简单描述人物或事件。 5. 能根据图示或表格写出简单的段落或操作说明。
考情分析		阅读技能和写作技能是英语学科考试主要考查的两项内容，且阅读量近年来呈上升趋势，在有些省份的中考中写作分数所占的百分比也有所增加。阅读方面要求学生具有理解各种题材和体裁的书面材料并从各种材料中获取信息的能力，写作上要求学生具有运用所学语言知识与技能进行信息沟通、再现生活经历、描述周围事物、发表意见和观点的能力。简言之，就是要求学生在大量的语言材料有效输入与积累的基础上有可观的输出。
目　的		三步阅读学习法——整体式语篇学习法的目的是让学生在完整的语境中感知文本，在阅读中解读语言所表达的含义，在实际交流中体会语言所起的作用。从而提高学生的阅读技能、培养学生的阅读策略及自主阅读能力。
三步 阅读学习法	读前	有创意的读前活动是阅读课的导入关键，学生通过参与一些与课文话题相关的活动，激活了思维，从而产生阅读的愿望，并对课文进行有效的预测。
	读中	通过围绕 scanning，skimming 和 detailed reading 设置的一系列的活动，学生学会在阅读中思考，并逐步掌握一些阅读技巧，真正提高阅读水平。
	读后	阅读后的说和写活动是检查阅读理解效果和巩固运用语言材料的阶段。学生可通过复述、续写、缩写、改写、创写等读后活动，实现从语言输入到输出的迁移。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 Spring Is Coming !

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Lesson 1

必背单词

1. shower *n.* 阵雨；淋浴
→take/have a shower 洗淋浴 →shower *v.* 淋浴
→showery *adj.* 下阵雨的；多阵雨的

2. rise *v.* & *n.* (rose/risen) 升起；上升；增加
→on the rise 在增加，在上涨

必背短语

3. weather report 天气预报

4. be scared of sb./sth. /doing sth. 害怕某人 / 某物 / 做某事 →be scared to do sth. 害怕做某事

必背句子

5. What's the weather **like** today?
今天天气怎么样？

6. I hope not! 我希望不是这样！

7. When it snows, it's not hot. 当下雪时，天不会热。

8. Spring **is coming**. 春天就要来了。

9. What strange weather! 多么奇怪的天气啊！

Lesson 2

必背单词

1. neither *conj.* & *adv.* 既不；也不；(二者) 都不

2. nor *conj.* & *adv.* 也不；也没

必背短语

3. neither…nor 既不……也不→ both…and… 两者都……→ not only…but also… 不仅……而且……→ either…or… 或者……或者……

4. see sb. doing sth. 看见某人正在做某事
→see sb. do sth. 看见某人做了某事

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

5. a field trip 野外旅行；远足；（学生）实地考察旅行

‖必背句子

6. Spring **has arrived** in Shijiazhuang.
春天已来到了石家庄。
7. The days **are getting longer** and the sun rises earlier in the morning.
白天变得更长了，早上太阳升起得更早了。
8. **Some** practice *Tai Chi*. **Others** sing and dance.
一些人练习太极。另外一些人唱歌和跳舞。

Lesson 3

‖必背单词

1. **wind** *n.* 风；气流→windy *adj.* 有风的；多风的

‖必背短语

2. one by one 一个接一个

‖必背句子

3. The wind **blows** gently… 风儿轻轻地吹……
4. **Through** the trees. 穿过树林。
5. Pets **come out** and play. 宠物们出来玩了。

Lesson 4

‖必背单词

1. **nearly** *adv.* 几乎；差不多；将近
→almost *adv.* 几乎；差不多（近义）
2. **plenty** *n.* 丰富；大量→in plenty 大量；充足
→plenty of 充足的；相当多的

‖必背短语

3. long for 渴望；向往；盼望
4. all year round 一年到头；终年
5. hundreds of 数百的
6. think of 想到

‖必背句子

7. …it **feels like** spring **nearly** all year round.
……感觉几乎四季如春。
8. **Because of** the spring-like weather, you can find hundreds of beautiful flowers and trees anytime of the year.
因为有春天般的天气，你在一年中的任何时候都能找到成百上千的漂亮的花和树木。

Lesson 5

‖必背单词

1. **instead** *adv.* 代替；更换
→instead of 代替；而不是
2. **push** *v.* & *n.* 推；按下→pull *v.* 拉；拔（反义）
→give sb. a push 推某人一下
3. **shall** *v. aux.* 将；会→will *v. aux.* 将；会
4. **rabbit** *n.* 兔子

‖必背短语

5. thank sb. for doing sth. 因为做某事感谢某人
6. turn around 转身→turn into 变成
7. hold on 抓住；抓紧
→用在电话用语中，意为“别挂断”。
8. come down 下来

‖必背句子

9. **Let's** play on the swings instead, OK?
咱们荡秋千来代替，好吗？
10. **Shall we** look at the clouds, Debbie?
黛比，我们看看云好吗？

Lesson 6

‖必背单词

1. **low** *adj.* 低的；浅的→high *adj.* 高的
2. **below** *prep.* & *adv.* 低于；在……下面
→above 在……上方（反义）
3. **zero** *num.* 零→zero hour 零时
4. **until** *conj.*（= till）直到……为止
→not…until… 直到……才……

‖必背短语

5. as…as… 和……一样……
→not as/so…as… 表示“不如/不及……”
6. below zero 零下

‖必背句子

7. We **had to** wear our jackets and boots, but it was fun.
虽然我们不得不穿着夹克衫和靴子，但那很有趣。

单元必背语法

1. **Maybe** there will be a **thunderstorm**.
也许会有雷雨。
2. Now talk about the **sunrise** and the **sunset**.
现在谈论一下日出和日落。
3. Danny **is babysitting** his cousin Debbie on the **playground**.
丹尼正在操场上面照顾他的表妹黛比。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 1 How's the Weather?

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- How is the weather in your hometown in spring? 春天你家乡的天气怎么样?
- Have you ever heard a weather report? What expressions do they often use?
  你曾经听过天气预报吗? 他们经常用什么表达方式?

课文朗读

Danny: Good morning, everyone. I'm Danny Dinosaur on the radio. What's the weather like today? Here's the weather report. Today is Friday, February 28. It will be snowy and hot.
大家早上好。我是恐龙丹尼，我在播音。今天天气怎么样呢? 这是天气预报。今天是 2 月 28 日，星期五。今天将有雪而且很热。

Jenny: (She laughs.) Danny! When ① it snows, it's not hot. It's cold.
(她笑了。) 丹尼! 当下雪时，天不会热，天会很冷。

Danny: OK, it's not hot. It's not snowing, but it is cloudy.
好的，天不热。现在没在下雪，但是多云。

Jenny: What's the temperature?
气温是多少?

Danny: Let's see. It will reach 10℃ during ② the day.
咱们看看。白天将达到 10 摄氏度。

Brian: It's quite warm today. Spring is coming ③. Is it going to ④ rain, Danny?
今天相当暖和。春天就要来了。丹尼，天要下雨了吗?

Danny: Yes! There will be a shower ⑤ /'ʃaʊə/ this afternoon. Maybe ⑥ there will be a thunderstorm /'θʌndəstɔ:m/. I hope not! ⑦ I'm scared of ⑧ thunder /'θʌndə/!
是的! 今天下午将有一场阵雨。也许会有一场雷雨。我希望不是这样! 我害怕雷声!

Jenny: Wow! What strange weather! ⑨ Now talk about the sunrise /'sʌnraɪz/ and the sunset /'sʌnset/. 喔! 多么奇怪的天气啊! 现在谈论一下日出和日落吧。

Danny: This morning, the sun rose ⑩ /rəʊz/. This evening, the sun will set /set/.
今天早上太阳升起来了。今天晚上太阳会落下。

Jenny: No, no! Tell us the exact /ɪg'zækt/ time!
不，不! 告诉我们准确的时间!

Danny: The sun rose at 7:25 this morning and it will set at 6:09 this evening.
今天早上太阳在 7:25 升起，晚上会在 6:09 落下。

Dig In 拓展

Here are some weather icons: 这是一些天气图标:

sunny 晴朗的　　rainy 有雨的　　cloudy 多云的
windy 有风的　　lightning 闪电
thunderstorm 雷雨　　foggy 有雾的
snowy 有雪的　　thunder shower 雷阵雨

Do you know more? 你还知道更多吗?

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Danny is writing a weather report. Help him complete it.
丹尼正在写一份天气预报。帮他完成它。

Hello everyone. Here's my weather report. Today is Friday, _____ 28. It is _____. The _____ will reach 10℃ during the day. It's quite warm today. There will be a _____ this afternoon. Maybe there will be a _____. Today, the sun rose at 7:25 a.m., and it will set at 6:09 p.m.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

大家好。这是我的天气预报。今天是星期五，_____ 28日。今天是_____。白天的_____将达到10摄氏度。今天相当暖和。今天下午将有一场_____。也许将有一场_____。今天，太阳在上午7：25升起，将会在晚上6：09落下。

2 Listen to the passage and fill in the table.
听短文，填表格。



Date 日期	Weather 天气			Temperature 温度	Time 时间
	Day time 白天				Sunrise 日出___
_____	Night 晚上		_____	_____	Sunset 日落___

3 Make new words by combining the words below. Complete the sentences with the compound words. 把下面的单词结合起来组成新单词。用合成的单词完成句子。

may 可能　sun 太阳　thunder 雷（声）　basket 篮子
rise 升起　ball 球　be 是　storm 暴风雨

1. Can you hear the thunder? Maybe there will be a _____.
你能听见雷声吗？可能将有一场_____。
2. The days are getting longer. The _____ today is two minutes earlier than yesterday.
白天在变长。今天_____比昨天早了两分钟。
3. **A:** Will Peter come to the party on Saturday?
星期六彼得会来参加聚会吗？
B: I think so. _____ he will come with Jim.
我认为会来。_____他将和吉姆一起来。
4. Lin Tao's dream is to be a _____ player. He wants to be like Yao Ming.
林涛的愿望是成为一名_____运动员。他想像姚明那样。

4 Work in pairs. Talk about the weather in your hometown.Then write a short weather report and share it with the class.
结对合作。讨论一下你家乡的天气。然后写一小段天气预报，和同学们分享它。

Example: It's time for the weather report. Today is... The temperature is...The weather will be... If you go out, please remember to... Today, the sun..., and it will...Thank you.
例子：天气预报的时候到了。今天是……温度是……天气将……如果你出去，请记着……今天，太阳……，并且它将……谢谢。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点批注　•考点应用

When it snows, it's not hot.

① [高频] **when** /wen/ *conj.* 当……时；*adv.* 什么时候

e.g. We turned off all the lights when we left.
我们离开的时候关掉了所有的灯。
When he comes this afternoon, I will tell him about it.
当他今天下午来时，我会告诉他这件事。

when 作连词引导时间状语从句，说明主句动作所发生的时间。

由 when 引导的时间状语从句主句用一般将来时，从句通常用一般现在时表将来。

考题在线 1 The manager of the hotel was waiting at the gate _____ the guests arrived. [宿迁]
A. while　B. when　C. unless　D. after

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨：考查连词辨析。句意：当客人到来的时候宾馆的经理正在大门口等待。when 的用法之一：由 when 引导的时间状语从句，主句用过去进行时，从句应用一般过去时。表示某个动作正在发生时，而另一个动作发生了。

★It will reach 10℃ during the day.

② **during** /'djʊərɪŋ/ *prep.* 在……的期间

e.g. They swim every day during the holiday.
他们在假期期间天天游泳。

during 常与时间段连用，表示特定的某一段时间，"during +时间段"与延续性动词连用，表示该段时间里一直发生的动作。

辨析：during 与 in

during	强调在某段时间里动作或状态的延续性。**e.g.** I learned a lot during the vacation. 我在假期里学了很多（东西）。
in	强调某一行为发生在一段时间中的某一点。 **e.g.** Yi Yangqianxi was born in 2000. 易烊千玺出生于2000年。

考题在线 2 —It is said that children in South Korea have to hike and walk through mountains at night _____ their military（军事的）training.
—Really? So their training is much harder than ours. [东营]
A. after B. since C. during D. before

★Spring is coming.

③ 现在进行时表示将来

[易错] come 意为"来"，是表示位置移动的单词。在英语中表示位置移动的单词，其现在进行时通常表示按计划或安排要发生的动作。

e.g. The children are starting school on Monday.
孩子们星期一就要开学了。

小贴士：现在进行时有时表示即将发生的动作或情况。这类动词常见的有 start, come, go, arrive, leave 等。

考题在线 3 —Honey, where are you?
—I _____. Just let me put on my shoes. [河南]
A. come B. came C. am coming D. have come

点拨：语境暗示法。句意：——亲爱的，你在哪里？——我这就来。等我穿上鞋。根据语境应用将来时态，此处用现在进行时的结构表将来。

★Is it going to rain, Danny?

④ **be going to do sth.** 打算做某事

be going to do sth. 主要有两种用法：一是表示事先经过考虑或安排要做某事；二是根据某种迹象判断非常可能发生某事。

e.g. I am going to see my aunt this evening.
今晚我打算去看我的姑姑。
Look at the clouds. I'm afraid it's going to rain later on.
看这些云，我恐怕稍后就要下雨了。

考题在线 4 We _____ have a picnic together with our teachers next Thursday. [白银]
A. are going B. are going to C. will going D. may going to

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★There will be a shower this afternoon.

⑤ **shower** /'ʃaʊə/ *n.* 阵雨，淋浴

e.g. We were caught in a heavy shower. 我们遇到一阵大雨。

He took a shower and went to bed last night.
他昨天晚上洗了个淋浴然后上床睡觉了。

He showered quickly before he got dressed.
他穿衣服之前很快地洗了个淋浴。 → shower *v.* 淋浴

常用短语为：take/have a shower 洗淋浴

★ Maybe there will be a thunderstorm.

⑥ **maybe** 可能

敲黑板 易错点，牢记！

辨析：maybe 与 may be

maybe	副词，常置于句首作状语，用来表示推测，意为“也许；可能”。
may be	“情态动词 + be”，意为“也许是；可能是”，在句中作谓语。

e.g. Maybe you put the letter in your pocket. 也许你把信放在你的口袋里了。

He may be Li Ming's father. 他可能是李明的父亲。

He may be in the office.=Maybe he is in the office. 他或许在办公室。

maybe 和 may be 可以进行同义句转换。

★ I hope not!

⑦ **[高频] I hope not.** 我希望不是这样。

e.g. —Will it rain tomorrow? 明天会下雨吗？

—I hope not. 我希望不会。

考题在线 5 —The weather report says we will expect a sunny day tomorrow.

—_____. I am going to go climbing with my classmates. [广东]

A. Bad luck　　B. I hope so

C. Sounds terrible　　D. I'm afraid so

点拨：情景交际法。句意：——天气预报说，明天我们会迎来一个晴天。——_____，我打算与我的同学去攀爬。从答语后一句意思知，应答者对于明天是晴天的消息表达了自己的意愿“希望明天是晴天”。

I hope not. 意为“我希望不是这样。”常用于表示说话人希望某事不要发生。它的肯定表达为“I hope so.”通常在听力或者情景交际中考查。

★I'm scared of thunder!

⑧ **be scared of** 害怕

e.g. I'm scared of snakes. 我害怕蛇。

She's scared/afraid of fire. 她怕火。

They are scared/afraid to take a bus late at night.
他们害怕在深夜乘坐公交车。

scared 的习惯搭配：

① be scared of sb./sth./doing sth.= be afraid of sb./sth./doing sth.

② be scared to do sth. = be afraid to do sth.

scared 与 scaring

① scared 意为“感到害怕的”，常描述人。

② scaring 意为“令人害怕的”，常描述事物。

一语辨异：

I am scared of the scaring animal.
我害怕那个吓人的动物。

★What strange weather!

敲黑板 易错点，牢记！

⑨ 句法分析：**how 与 what 引导的感叹句**

感叹句
- How + 形容词 / 副词 (+ 主语 + 谓语)!
- What + a/an + 形容词 + 可数名词单数 (+ 主语 + 谓语)!
- What + 形容词 + 名词复数或不可数名词 (+ 主语 + 谓语)!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. What exciting news(it is)!(它是)多么令人兴奋的消息呀!

What a lovely day! 多么美好的一天!

How pretty your dress is! 你的裙子多漂亮啊!

考题在线 6 _____ exciting news it is!Beijing will hold 2022 Winter Olympic Games. [天水]

A. What an B. What C. How D. How an

点拨:固定结构法。中心词 news 是不可数名词,符合感叹句结构:What+*adj.*+不可数名词+主语+谓语!

速记 小筏:感叹句,并不难,what、how 放句前;强调名词用 what,其余用 how 很简单。

This morning, the sun rose.

10 **rise** /raɪz/ *v.* & *n.* (increase in value or to a higher point) 升起,上升,增加 rise → rose → risen

e.g. They will come when the sun rises. 他们将会在日出之时来。

Gas rose in price. 煤气涨价了。

Smoke was rising from the chimney. 烟正从烟囱里升起。

Can you raise your arm above your head? 你能把你的胳膊举过头吗?

辨析:rise 与 raise

① rise 上升,指人或事物自身不借助外力起来、升高,用作不及物动词。

② raise 举起,抬起,指人为地让物体升高,用作及物动词。

考题在线答案 1. B 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. B 6. B

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见283页)

一、根据首字母或汉语提示完成下列单词

1. We know the sun r_____ in the east.
2. I learned a lot d_____ the vacation.
3. My brother often takes a s_____ after running. 【导学号:6505386】
4. Most girls are s_____ of snakes.
5. _____(多么)fine weather it is today!

二、单项选择

6. Life is like a mirror. _____ you smile at it, it will smile back. [滨州]

A. Unless B. When C. Until D. Though

7. —Maybe you can catch the last bus.

—_____. If not, I'll have to walk home. [重庆B卷]

A. Good job B. Just so-so

C. Not at all D. I hope so

8. _____ exciting it is! Our country put her first homemade aircraft carrier(国产航空母舰) in the water on April 26 in Dalian. [东营]

A. How B. What

C. How an D. What an

9. The girl is _____ going out at night.

A. scared B. scared of

C. scared to D. scare to

10. There _____ a sports meeting in our school next week. [南充]

A. will have B. is going to have

C. are going to be D. is going to be

三、连词成句

11. weather, it, strange, is, what

_____!

12. did, what, the, time, yesterday, sun, rise

_____?

13. this, be, some, there, afternoon, will, showers

_____.

14. are, starting, the, children, school, on, Monday

_____.

15. is, go, Jenny, scared, out, night, to, at

_____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 2 It's Getting Warmer!

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注

批 体裁：

应用文

批 文章结构：

并列式

原文译文 · 导读

Pre-reading（读前）

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What do you know about spring? 关于春天你知道些什么?
- Which season is your favourite? 你最喜欢哪个季节?

While-reading（读中）

- What was the temperature in the morning? 早晨的温度是多少?
- What does Wang Mei see in the park every morning?
  王梅每天早晨在公园里看到什么?

Dear Jenny, 亲爱的詹妮,

批 词语赏析：

arrive 一词形象地表达了春天的到来。

Today is March 1. Spring has arrived ① in Shijiazhuang. The temperature was 10℃ this morning. This afternoon, it reached 15℃. It was quite warm and the air was fresh. I need neither /'naɪðə/ my heavy winter coat nor ② /nɔ:/ my boots/bu:ts/ now!

课文朗读

批 词语赏析：

neither...nor... 短语的使用恰当准确，从侧面描写了春天天气转暖，温度升高。

今天是 3 月 1 日。春天已来到了石家庄。今天早上的温度是 10 摄氏度。今天下午达到了 15 摄氏度。天气相当暖和，而且空气清新。现在我既不用穿冬天的厚大衣也不用穿靴子了!

批 修辞手法："tell" 一词用拟人的写作手法让读者了解了迎春花的特征。

On my way to school this morning, I saw ③ some winter jasmine /'dʒæzmɪn/ blossoming. Here, people believe the blossom /'blɒsəm/ of this flower always tells the coming of spring, so we call winter jasmine "the welcoming-spring flower".

今天早上在我去上学的路上，我看见一些迎春花开放了。在这儿，人们认为这种花开放总是宣告春天的到来，因此我们称迎春花为"欢迎春天的花"。

批 句子：

一句话准确地概括了春天的自然特征。

The days are getting ④ longer and the sun rises earlier in the morning. The warm sunshine /'sʌnʃaɪn/ feels good after the cold winter days. Every morning, I see lots of people exercising in the park. Some practice *Tai Chi* /ˌtaɪ'tʃi:/. Others ⑤ sing and dance. Children run around or play on the swings/swɪŋz/.

批 句子：（中括号中句子）让读者看到了一幅春天里大人和孩子活动的画面。暗示了春天是一个充满生机的季节。

白天变得更长了，早上太阳升起得更早了。寒冷冬天过后的温暖的阳光让人感觉很好。每天早上，我看见许多人在公园里锻炼。一些人练习太极。另外一些人唱歌和跳舞。孩子们在周围跑或者在荡秋千。

We will have a school basketball game next week. My class is also planning a field trip to the countryside. We will plant trees, enjoy the

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

beautiful flowers and play games. Wow! I can't wait.
下周我们将有一场校篮球赛。我们班也正在计划一次乡下的郊游。我们将植树，欣赏美丽的花和做游戏。喔！我等不及了。

What's the weather like in Canada? What do you like to do in spring?
加拿大的天气怎么样呢？春天你喜欢做什么？

Wang Mei 王梅

批句子：（画"～"句子）表明作者的喜悦之情，同时又充满期待。

用两个疑问句结束全文，表达得体，且与上文衔接自然。

Learning Tip 学习提示

How do you pronounce "10℃"? That's "ten degrees Celsius"or "ten degrees centigrade". 你怎么发"10℃"的音？那是"ten degrees Celsius"或"ten degrees centigrade"。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 （见35页）

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and write true (T) or false (F). 阅读课文并判断正（T）误（F）。

1. The temperature reached 15℃ in the morning. 早上气温达到了15摄氏度。 (　)
2. Wang Mei is still wearing boots. 王梅仍穿着靴子。 (　)
3. Wang Mei saw some winter jasmine on her way to the park.
王梅在去公园的途中看见一些迎春花。 (　)
4. Wang Mei's class is planning a field trip to the countryside. 王梅的班级正打算去乡下郊游。 (　)

2 Read the lesson again and tick all the scenes mentioned. 再次阅读课文，并把提到的所有场景打钩。

☐ The grass grows. 草生长。
☐ The weather is warm. 天气是暖和的。
☐ The air is fresh. 空气是清新的。
☐ The flowers blossom. 花开放。
☐ The trees begin to sprout. 树木开始发芽。
☐ The days get longer. 天变长了。
☐ The sun rises earlier. 太阳升起得更早了。
☐ The birds fly back from the south. 鸟从南方飞回来了。

3 What do people like to do in spring? Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in the box. 春天人们喜欢做什么？用方框中所给词的正确形式填空。

reach 到达	enjoy 欣赏	rise 升起	practice 练习	plant 种植

1. When I _____ that village, it was dark. 当我 _____ 那个村庄时，天黑了。
2. It is getting warm. Many people like to _____ *Tai Chi* in the park.
天变暖和了。许多人喜欢在公园里 _____ 太极。
3. The flowers in the park have blossomed. My grandparents go there to _____ the flowers every morning. 公园里的花开了。我的祖父母每天早上去那里 _____ 花朵。
4. The sun _____ early now. Let's get up early and play ping-pong together.
现在太阳 _____ 得早。咱们早起一起打乒乓球吧。
5. Many people go to the countryside to _____ trees in early spring. 许多人早春去乡下 _____ 树。

4 Talk about spring and outdoor activities. You can use the sentences in Activities 2 and 3.
谈论春天和户外活动。你可以用活动2和活动3中的句子。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课文背诵指南

It's Getting Warmer!

- Spring, Shijiazhuang, morning10℃ /afternoon15℃ , warm, fresh air, neither my heavy winter coat nor boots
- way to school, winter jasmine blossoming, the coming of spring, the welcoming-spring flower
- days, longer, the sun, earlier, sunshine, good, morning, see people exercising, park, practice *Tai Chi*, sing, dance, run around
- next week, a school basketball game, a field trip, plant trees
- What's…? What do …?

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

☞(答案见283页)

阅读策略

推理判断法(应用于阅读理解中的深层理解题。做这类题时，我们需要纵观全文，理清文章脉络，推断作者意图，然后对所有的信息进行整体分析，推理判断出正确答案。)

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读 Lesson 2，回答问题

1. What's the main idea of Paragraph 1?

(主旨大意题)

_____

_____

二、细读文章，完成下列任务

2. ⊙ What tells us the coming of spring?

(推理判断题)

A. The temperature is 10℃ .

B. Many people are exercising in the park.

C. We play on the swings.

D. The flowers blossom.

3. ⊙ When can students have a field trip to the countryside? (推理判断题)

A. In spring. B. In summer.

C. In autumn. D. In winter.

☞温馨提示：本书中此板块带⊙的题均运用阅读策略中讲解的方法。

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

★Spring has arrived in Shijiazhuang.

arrive at 表示到达比较小的地方；arrive in 则表示到达比较大的地方。

① [高频] **arrive** /əˈraɪv/ *vi.* 到达

e.g. Please write to me as soon as you arrive in Shanghai.

请你一到上海就给我写信。

I arrive at school at half past seven every day.

我每天都是七点半到校。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

辨析：arrive, get to 与 reach

到达
- arrive 作不及物动词，后接表示地点的名词时需加介词 in 或 at
- get to 后接表示地点的副词时需去掉介词 to
- reach 作及作动词，后面直接加表示地点的名词

小贴士：arrive/get 后接地点副词时，地点副词前不加任何介词。

e.g. Bill arrives in/gets to/reaches Nanjing. 比尔到达南京。

We were very tired when we arrived/got home.

我们到家时非常累。

考题在线 1 —When will Mr. Green _____ Beijing?

—In a week. [贵港]

A. reach B. get C. arrive D. come

点拨：词语辨析法。reach，get 和 arrive 都有“到达”之意。reach 是及物动词，后可直接跟宾语；get 和 arrive 是不及物动词，不能直接跟宾语；come 来，也是不及物动词，后不能直接跟宾语。

★ I need neither my heavy winter coat nor my boots now!

② neither...nor 既不……也不

e.g. Neither his parents nor he was at home. 他父母和他都不在家。

[易错] 辨析：neither...nor..., both...and..., not only...but also..., either...or...

高频考点，易错点，牢记！敲黑板

辨析
- neither...nor... 既不……也不……
- both...and... 两者都……
- not only...but also... 不仅……而且……
- either...or... 或者……或者……

① neither...nor.../not only...but also.../either...or... 连接两个并列的主语时，谓语动词的单复数形式和邻近的主语保持一致。

② both...and... 连接两个并列的主语时，谓语动词用复数形式。

e.g. Neither he nor I am well-educated. 他和我都没受过良好教育。

Both you and he are wrong. 你和他都错了。

Not only you but also I am wrong. 不仅你错了，而且我也错了。

Either you or he is wrong. 不是你错就是他错了。

—Do you like Zhang Jie or Deng Ziqi?

你喜欢张杰还是邓紫棋？

—Neither. 两个都不喜欢。

neither 在句中作主语时，常与 of 连用，后跟复数名词或代词，谓语动词用单、复数形式均可。

Neither of them know / knows me. 他们两个都不认识我。

—He doesn't like fast food at all. 他一点儿也不喜欢快餐。

—Neither does Lily. 莉莉也不喜欢。

作副词时，意为“也不”，表示前面的否定情况也适用于另外一个人或物，而且句子用倒装语序。

考题在线 2 Neither my sister nor I _____ been to Xi'an before. [百色]

A. have never B. have ever C. has never D. has ever

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨：就近原则法。句意：我的妹妹和我从前都没有去过西安。neither…nor… 意为“既不……也不……”，它连接两个并列成分在句中作主语的时候，后面的动词遵循“就近”原则，因此横线处所填的谓语动词和 I 保持一致，排除 C 和 D。又因 neither…nor… 表示否定，而 never 又表示否定，二者不能重复出现。

考题在线 3 —Last summer holiday, I didn't go anywhere. How boring!
—_____. But I'm going somewhere for a holiday this summer.
[鄂州]
A. Neither I did　B. Neither did I　C. So did I　D. So I did

★ **…I saw some winter jasmine blossoming.** 敲黑板 高频考点，牢记！

③ **see sb./sth. doing sth. 看见某人 / 某物正在做某事**

e.g. When I was taking a walk in the park, I saw some girls dancing under the trees.
当我在公园散步时，我看到一些女孩正在树下跳舞。
I saw him hit Tom on the head with a ball.
我看见他用球打汤姆的头了。

辨析：see sb. doing sth. 与 see sb. do sth.
① see sb. doing sth. 看见某人正在做某事（强调动作正在发生）。
② see sb. do sth. 看见某人做了某事（强调看到动作发生的整个过程）。

考题在线 4 —Where is Mike?
—I saw him _____ with Mr. Smith in the hallway just now.
[内江]
A. to talk　B. talking　C. talked　D. talks

点拨：考查非谓语动词。句意：刚才我看到他与史密斯先生在走廊交谈。see sb. doing sth. 看到某人正在做某事。

★ **The days are getting longer and the sun rises earlier in the morning.** 敲黑板 高频考点，牢记！

④ **get** /get/ *linking verb* **变得**

e.g. I have to go. It's getting late.
我得走了。天越来越晚了。
He became a famous writer in the 1980s.
在二十世纪八十年代他变成了一个著名作家。
The meat goes bad. 肉变质了。
In winter the days get shorter.
冬季白天变得更短了。
Tree leaves turn green in spring.
树叶在春天变绿。

后可接形容词的原级或比较级形式作表语。

辨析：become，go，get 与 turn
① become 多指身份、职位等的变化，也可指天气或自然的变化，强调变化过程的持续性。
② go 通常指“由好变坏”的情况，后常接 wrong，mad，bad 等形容词。
③ get 后常接形容词的原级或比较级形式，多用于进行时态，表示渐变的趋势。
④ turn 常指事物颜色的变化。

考题在线 5 If I go to college, I will never _____ a great soccer player.
A. get　B. turn　C. go　D. become

点拨：句意：“如果我上大学，我将永远不会成为一名很棒的足球运动员。”根据句意可知空格处表示职业的变化，故用 become。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**Others sing and dance.**

⑤ **others** /ˈʌðərz/ *pron.* 其他的人或物

e.g. She likes to be with other people. 她喜欢与别人在一起。

I don't like this one; show me another. 我不喜欢这个，拿另一个给我。

There are lots of students in our class. Some are from America; others are from China.

我们班有许多学生。一些来自美国；另外一些来自中国。

There are two books on the desk. One is Lily's; the other is Lucy's. 课桌上有两本书。一本是莉莉的；另一本是露西的。

Of the six students, one is going home and the others are going to the cinema. 六个学生中，一个要回家；其余（五个人）要去看电影。

考题在线 6 Some people are too shy to say a word in public. However, _____ aren't. [淮安]

A. another B. the other C. others D. the others

点拨：固定结构法。固定句型"一些……，另外一些……"，应用 some … others…。

辨 析：other, the other, another, the others, others

①other 其他的（表示不定数目中）

②another 另一个（表示不定数目中）

③others 另一部分（表示不定数目中）

④the other 另一个（表示两者中的另一个）

⑤the others 其余的全体（表示确定数目中）

考题在线答案 1. A 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. D 6. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见283页）

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. Neither you nor I _____ (be) wrong.
2. I spent a lot of time practicing _____ (speak) English last weekend.
3. —Where are the twins?
   —I saw them _____ (take) a walk on the playground just now.
4. In spring, the days get _____ (long) and the weather gets warmer.
5. Please write to me as soon as you _____ (arrive) in Shanghai.

二、单项选择

6. When he _____ school, he saw his classmates playing volleyball. [绥化]
   A. arrived B. got to C. reach
7. Helen has got two brothers. _____ of them likes chocolate, but she loves it. [安徽]
   A. Neither B. None C. Each D. Any
8. The twins are in different classes. One is in Class One and _____ is in Class Two. [株洲]
   A. another B. other C. the other
9. Spring is coming. The weather _____ warmer and warmer.
   A. goes B. turn C. gets D. become
10. I could speak _____ French _____ Chinese, but luckily I could talk with them in English. [十堰]
    A. both; and B. neither; nor
    C. either; or D. not only; but also

三、连词成句

11. the, was, at, who, arrive, school, first, to
    _____?
12. I, am, a, neither, he, nor, doctor
    _____.
13. playing, always, practices, after, Danny, basketball, school
    _____.
14. the, saw, we, the, behind, rising, trees, sun,
    _____.
15. get, colder, the, will, weather, winter, in
    _____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 3 The Sun Is Rising

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- How do you feel about the air, flowers and birds in spring? 你感觉春天的空气，花和鸟怎么样?
- Do you know any songs or poems about spring? 你知道关于春天的一些歌或诗吗?

课文朗读

The sun is rising, Spring is coming,
太阳正在升起，春天就要来了，
The snow is melting /'meltɪŋ/, Come with me.
雪在融化，跟我来。
Climb the hillside /'hɪlsaɪd/, The weather is warming, 爬上小山坡，天气在变暖，
The wind ① /wɪnd/ blows gently /'dʒentlɪ/,
Through ② the trees. 风儿轻轻地吹，穿过树林。
One by one ③, The flowers blossom.
一个接一个，鲜花盛开。
Enjoy them One by one. 欣赏它们一个接一个。
The sun is rising, Spring is coming,
太阳正在升起，春天就要来了，
See it bring, The season's change.
看它带来，季节的变化。

Dig In 拓展

"The Sun Is Rising" is a song about spring. Spring is a favourite theme for songs and poems in all languages. Look at this poem:
《太阳正在升起》是一首关于春天的歌。在所有的语言中对于歌曲和诗歌来讲，春天是一个最受喜爱的主题。看这首诗:

Spring Dawn 春晓

Sleeping lazily at dawn in spring, 春眠不觉晓，
Sound of birdsong all around. 处处闻啼鸟。
Last night's wind and rain still ring,
夜来风雨声，
How many blossoms blown to the ground?
花落知多少?

This is a Chinese poem translated into English. Can you say this poem in Chinese?
这是一首被译为英语的中国诗。你能用汉语说这首诗吗?

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 **Read the song and underline the phrases that describe spring.Then listen and put the pictures in the correct order.**
读这首歌，并在描述春天的短语下面画线。然后听并把图片正确排序。

2 **Pick a spring word.Then use each letter in the word to start a sentence.**
挑选"spring"这个单词。然后用词里的每个字母开头造句子。

Example: 例如:
So many flowers blossom.
如此多的花开放了。
Pets come out and play.
宠物出来玩了。
Really big bears wake up from their dreams.
真正的大熊从睡梦中醒来了。
I enjoy going for walks with my friends.
我喜欢和我的朋友们去散步。
No tree is left standing without any leaves.
长了叶子的树木矗立在那里。
Go ahead, jump for joy because spring is here. 继续欢呼雀跃吧，因为春天在这里。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

PROJECT 课题

WHAT DO YOU LIKE TO DO OUTSIDE IN SPRING? 春天你喜欢在外面做什么?

The weather is warm in spring.Many people like to play outside and have fun.What do you like to do in spring? Write down your ideas.
春天的天气暖和。许多人喜欢在外面尽情地玩。你喜欢在春天做什么?写下你的想法。

What do your friends like to do outdoors in spring? Interview a friend in another school, another city or another country.
在春天,你的朋友们喜欢在户外做什么?采访另一所学校,另一座城市或另一个国家的一位朋友。

Write the activities you like to do.
写你喜欢做的活动。

Write the activities your friend likes to do.
写你的朋友喜欢做的活动。

Write the activities that you both like to do.
写你们两个都喜欢做的活动。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★ The wind blows gently…

① **wind** /wɪnd/ *n.* 风;气流

wind 常用作不可数名词,但可以用 a + 修饰词 + wind 来表示"一阵……的风",修饰词可以是 strong, light 等,说明风的强度或力量。

e.g. A warm gentle wind is blowing from the east.
一阵温暖的微风自东方吹来。

There is a strong wind in Beijing.
北京的风很大。

It's rather windy today.
今天风相当大。

windy adj. 有风的;多风的;风大的

Spring is a windy season and the wind is blowing strongly.
春天是个多风的季节,风正刮得很厉害。

考题在线 1 It will be _____ (wind) this afternoon.

点拨:由空前的 be 可知应填形容词。

★ Through the trees.

② **through** /θruː/ *prep.* 通过;穿过 敲黑板 高频考点,牢记!

e.g. He walked through the forest alone. 他独自穿过了森林。

Jim, if you want to climb over the mountain, you'll have to swim across the river first, and then walk through the forest.
吉姆,如果你想要翻过那座山,你得先游过这条河,接着步行穿过森林。

辨析:through, across 与 over

over 越过

across 横过

through 穿过



考题在线 2 —Look, there is a cute bird, Mom.
—It flew into our kitchen _____ the window just now, Alex.
[凉山]

A. across B. through
C. above D. under

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

点拨：词语辨析法。句意：——快看妈妈，那有一只可爱的小鸟。——Alex，它是刚才通过窗户飞进我们厨房的。above，在物体的上方，under，在物体的下面。很容易排除C D。across指的是从物体的表面穿过，而through指的是从物体的内部穿过。结合语境，小鸟穿过窗户。

★One by one…

类似结构的短语有：year by year 一年一年地，day by day 一天天，逐日，little by little 逐渐地，step by step 一步一步地。

③ **one by one 一个接一个**

这个短语中，one为代词，代替单数的人或物，该短语常用于句末作状语。

e.g. Don't jump the queue. Please get on the bus one by one.

不要插队。请一个接一个地上公交车。

year by year 一年一年地，强调每年都有变化。而year after year 年复一年，强调动作的重复性。

My parents become older and older year by year, so I go to visit them year after year.

我的父母年年都在变老，所以我每年都要去看望他们。

考题在线答案 1. windy 2. B

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见283页)

一、选词(组)填空(注意词形变化)

one by one　through　windy　gentle　melt

1. When the bell rings, the students come into the classroom _____.
2. Miss Li is a kind teacher and she always talks to us _____. [南京改编]
3. The River Thames flows _____ London.
4. Spring is coming, and the snow is _____.
5. The strong _____ blew the leaves off the trees last night.

二、单项选择

6. The _____ blew hard.
   A. windy　B. sun
   C. wind　D. sunny
7. We will build another new Great Green Wall _____ the northern part of China.
   A. among　B. across
   C. through　D. between
8. —Bill, did you see Tom?
   —Yes, he just parked his car here and then hurried _____ the street. [连云港]
   A. through　B. over
   C. past　D. across
9. The bird's singing came into our room _____ the window and woke me up in the early morning.
   A. down　B. from
   C. through　D. across
10. School is over. The students go out of the schoolyard _____.
    A. one by one　B. first by first
    C. one with one　D. first with first

三、连词成句

11. here, weather, windy, the, is
    _____.
12. blow, did, yesterday, the, wind
    _____?
13. deal, with, these, problems , you, can, one, by, one
    _____.
14. a, river, through , the, city, goes
    _____.
15. little, the, grew, year, girl , up, by, year
    _____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 4 The Spring City

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Would you like to live in a place where there are no winters? 你想要在一个没有冬天的地方生活吗?
- What do you enjoy most about spring? 关于春天你最喜欢什么?

课文朗读

When we think of spring, we think of① a season of fine, warm weather and clear, fresh air. We think of new life, green plants and budding /'bʌdɪŋ/ trees all around us.

当我们想起春天时，我们会想起一个有晴朗、暖和的天气和干净、清新的空气的季节。我们想起我们周围的新生命，绿色的植物和正发芽的树。

Everyone longs for② spring. Spring is a short season in many places around the world. But in my hometown, it feels like③ spring nearly④ /'nɪəlɪ/ all year round.

每个人都向往春天。春天在世界各地的许多地方都是个短暂的季节。但是在我的家乡，感觉几乎四季如春。

The weather here is neither too hot nor too cold. The average winter temperature is 15℃. In summer it never gets too hot. The average temperature is 24℃. The city gets about 1 000 millimetres /'mɪlɪˌmiːtəz/ of rain every year. There's plenty /'plentɪ/ of⑤ sunshine too, with⑥ about 2 250 hours of sunshine every year. Because of⑦ the spring-like weather, you can find hundreds of⑧ beautiful flowers and trees anytime /'enɪtaɪm/ of the year.

这儿的天气既不太热也不太冷。冬天的平均温度是 15 摄氏度。夏天从不会变得太热。平均气温是 24 摄氏度。每年这座城市的降雨量大约是 1 000 毫米。还有大量的阳光照射，每年大约有 2 250 小时的日照。因为有春天般的天气，你在一年中的任何时候都能找到成百上千的漂亮的花和树木。

Can you guess my hometown? Yes, it's Kunming—"the Spring City".

你能猜出我的家乡了吗? 是的，它是昆明——"春城"。

I love my hometown. 我爱我的家乡。

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and answer the questions.

阅读课文并回答问题。

1. What's the average temperature in winter/summer in Kunming?
   昆明冬天或夏天的平均气温是多少?
2. How much rain does the city get every year?
   这个城市每年的降雨量是多少?
3. How many hours of sunshine does the city get every year?
   这个城市每年的日照时间是多少小时?
4. Why are there many flowers all year round in Kunming?
   为什么昆明全年都有许多花?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2 Listen to people talking about their hometowns and match the names with the sentences.

听人们谈论他们的家乡，并把名字和句子连起来。

Susan 苏珊	Spring begins in April and ends in June. The temperature is between 4℃ and 15℃. 春天开始于四月结束于六月。气温在 4 摄氏度到 15 摄氏度之间。
Mike 迈克	It is warm and wet. Spring begins in November. 天暖和又潮湿。春天开始于十一月。
Zhang Jing 张静	The average spring temperature is 5℃. It is very cold. 春天的平均气温是 5 摄氏度。非常冷。
Tom 汤姆	The weather is neither too hot nor too cold.The average spring temperature is 20℃. 天气既不太热也不太冷。春天的平均气温是 20 摄氏度。
Dong Chao 董超	They celebrate the Festival of Colours to greet the coming of spring. 他们庆祝颜色节来迎接春天的到来。

3 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the phrases in the box.

用方框中短语的正确形式填空。

课文听力

long for 渴望	think of 想起	feel like 感觉像	because of 因为

1. She didn't go to school _____ her illness. 她没去上学 _____ 她的病。
2. He always _____ his friend when he is in trouble. 当他有困难时，他总是 _____ 他的朋友。
3. They _____ sunshine during the long rainy days. 在长时间的雨天里他们 _____ 阳光。
4. It's so hot today. It _____ summer. 今天如此热。_____ 夏天。

4 Work in pairs. Talk about the spring in your hometown. 结对合作。谈论一下你家乡的春天。

Task tips: You can talk about the weather, the temperature and your favourite activities.

任务提示：你可以谈论天气、气温和你最喜欢的活动。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

①think of 相当于 come up with。

②think of 也可意为"认为"常用于句型：What do you think of...? =How do you like...? 你觉得/认为……怎么样？用于询问某人对某事物的看法、观点。

★When we think of spring,... think about 考虑 think over 再三考虑

① think of 想起；想到

e.g. We have thought of three ways to solve the maths problem.

我们已经想到了三种解这道数学题的方法。

What do you think of this movie?=How do you like this movie?

你觉得这部电影怎么样？

★Everyone longs for spring. long 在此是不及物动词，意为"渴望，盼望"。

② long for 渴望；向往；盼望

e.g. People long for peace. 人们向往和平。long to do sth. 渴望做某事

He longed to return home again. 他渴望再次回到家中。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★ **…it feels like spring nearly all year round.**

③ **feel like 感觉像；想要**

e.g. With these people, he feels like a fish out of water.
与这些人在一起，他感到不自在。

I feel like having a drink. Have you got any beer?
我想喝点东西。你有啤酒吗？

feel like 想要，like 为介词，后常跟动词的-ing形式，相当于"want to do sth."或"would like to do sth."。

拓展：常接动名词作宾语的动词有：enjoy（喜欢），finish（完成），practice（练习），consider（考虑），mind（介意），spend（花费）等。

e.g. They enjoy living there. 他们喜欢住在那里。

④ **nearly** /'nɪəlɪ/ *adv.* **几乎；差不多**

辨析：nearly 与 almost

① almost 强调"差一点……就"（= very nearly）。almost 可用于 no, none, nothing 等前面，但 nearly 不可。

② nearly 表示"接近"。常可与 almost 换用，但在具体数字前常用 nearly。

e.g. He almost knocked me down before he saw me.
他看到我之前差点把我撞倒。

Almost no one(= Hardly anyone) believes her. 几乎没有人相信她。not 修饰 nearly 意为"远非；远不及"。

He said almost nothing worth listening to.
他几乎没说什么值得听的东西。

They are nearly at the end of their journey. 他们快结束旅行了。

★ **There's plenty of sunshine too, with about 2 250 hours of ...**

⑤ **plenty of 许多；大量** plenty of 多用在肯定句中，后加不可数名词或加可数名词复数。相当于 a lot of/lots of

e.g. There's plenty of furniture in the shop. 在商店里有很多家具。

There are plenty of eggs in the fridge. 在冰箱里有许多鸡蛋。

⑥ **with** /wɪð/ *prep.* **具有；带有** 反义词为 without

e.g. Do you know the man with a suitcase? 你认识那个提手提箱的男人吗？（作定语）

I went to Hong Kong Disneyland with my parents.
我和我的父母一起去了香港迪士尼乐园。 → 作伴随状语

My American friend is learning to eat with chopsticks.
我的美国朋友正在学着用筷子吃饭。

My fingers were numb with cold. 我的手指冻麻木了。

with 的用法小结

① with 意为"和……一起"。

② with 表示"使用（某种工具）"。

③ with 意为"由于；因为"，表示原因。

★ **Because of the spring-like weather, you can find hundreds of beautiful flowers and trees anytime of the year.**

⑦ **because of 因为**

辨析：because of 与 because

because of	意为"因为"，后面接名词、代词、动名词或what引导的名词性从句等。
because	意为"因为"，作连词，引导原因状语从句，可用于回答 why 提出的问题。

e.g. Sue didn't come to school because of her illness.=Sue didn't come to school because she was ill. 苏没有来上学是因为她生病了。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

⑧ [高频] **hundreds of** 数以百计的 敲黑板 高频考点，易混点！

e.g. There are eight hundred students in our school.
我们学校有 800 名学生。
There are hundreds of people in the park. 公园里有数百人。
This vase is worth several hundred dollars. 这只花瓶值几百元。

拓展：和 hundred 用法类似的还有 thousand，million，billion 等。thousands of 意为“数以千计的”；millions of 意为“数以百万计的”；billions of 意为“数以十亿计的”。

e.g. Animals of that kind have been extinct for millions of years.
那种动物已经灭绝数百万年了。

考题在线 Every year, _____ books are given away to the poor children in the countryside. [郴州]
A. thousand　　B. thousands of　　C. thousand of

考题在线答案 B

小贴士：当 hundred，thousand，million，billion 等词前有 a few，several 等词修饰时，这些数词也要用单数形式。

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见283页）

一、用适当的介词填空

1. There are many people learning English _____ the world.
2. It feels _____ rain.
3. We didn't go fishing because _____ the heavy rain.
4. There is plenty _____ water.
5. _____ a lot of sunshine, it is bright in the house.

二、用方框中所给短语的适当形式填空

hundreds of　all year round　think of because of　long for

6. Lucy is absent _____ her illness.
7. Don't you ever _____ other people?
8. He _____ meeting his parents; he missed them very much.
9. I like living in a place where there are no winters _____.
10. Some of the things are _____ years old.

三、单项选择

11. My mother _____ for a relaxing job now.
A. long　　B. longs
C. is longing　　D. longed

12. _____ nobody knows him.
A. Nearly　　B. Almost
C. Hardly　　D. Mostly

13. They had to change their plan _____ the weather.
A. for　　B. like
C. because　　D. because of

14. Mount Tai is so famous that _____ people visit it every day. [永州]
A. hundred of
B. seven hundreds of
C. hundreds of

15. My mother is sick. She doesn't feel like _____ anything.
A. eat　　B. to eat
C. eating　　D. eats

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 5 Babysitting on a Spring Day

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What outdoor activities do you usually do in spring? 春天你通常做什么户外活动呢?
- Have you ever been a babysitter? 你曾当过临时保姆吗?

课文朗读

Danny is babysitting ① /'beɪbɪsɪtɪŋ/ his cousin Debbie /'debɪ/ on the playground. Brian is with them.

丹尼正在操场上照看他的表妹黛比。布赖恩和他们在一起。

Danny: Thank you for ② helping me, Brian. This is my first time babysitting.

布赖恩，谢谢你帮助我。这是我第一次当临时保姆。

Brian: You're welcome, Danny. But where is Debbie?(Danny turns around. Debbie is on the monkey bars /bɑ:z/. She is climbing very high.)

不客气，丹尼。但是黛比在哪里？（丹尼转过身。黛比在猴架上。她正在往高处爬。）

Danny: Hold on ③, Debbie! Don't fall off!

抓紧，黛比！不要摔下来！

(Danny runs towards Debbie.)

（丹尼向黛比跑过去。）

Danny: Come down ④, please! 请下来!

Debbie: I want to climb higher!

我想爬得更高!

Brian: Come down, Debbie. You're too high up. Let's play on the swings instead ⑤ /ɪn'sted/, OK? Danny will push you.

下来，黛比。你爬得太高了。咱们荡秋千来代替，好吗？丹尼会推你的。

Debbie: OK, I love swings! 好的，我喜欢秋千!

(She climbs down, runs to the swing and climbs on.)

（她爬了下来，跑向秋千并且爬了上去。）

Debbie: Push /pʊʃ/ me, Danny! Push me up higher! 推我，丹尼！把我推得更高些!

Danny: OK. (He gives her a push.)

好的。（他推了她一下。）

Debbie: (She laughs.) Push harder!

（她笑了。）再使劲推!

Brian: Can I give you a push ⑥? 我可以推你吗?

Debbie: No, I want Danny to! Higher, Danny!

不，我想要丹尼推！丹尼，推得更高些!

Danny: (He is tired and hot.) It's time to ⑦ stop swinging ⑧, Debbie.

（他又累又热。）黛比，到停止荡秋千的时候了。

Debbie: (She gets off the swing.) Let's run! Let's play catch. Or soccer /'sɒkə/? What about basketball? Let's play!

（她下了秋千。）咱们跑吧！咱们玩接球游戏。或者足球？篮球怎么样？咱们玩吧!

Danny: I know a good game. Let's play "Lie on the Grass".

我知道一个好游戏。咱们玩“躺在草地上”吧。

Brian: Shall /ʃæl/ we ⑨ look at the clouds, Debbie? 黛比，我们看看云好吗?

Debbie: OK! That one looks like a big, white rabbit /'ræbɪt/! It's jumping up and down! I want to jump, too! Come on, Danny! Danny?

好吧！那朵看起来像一只大白兔！它正在上上下下地跳！我也想跳！来吧，丹尼！丹尼?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and answer the questions.

阅读课文并回答问题。

1. Who is Danny taking care of?

丹尼在照看谁？

2. Is it Danny's second time babysitting?

这是丹尼第二次做临时保姆吗？

3. What activities does Debbie like?

黛比喜欢什么活动？

4. Why does Danny fall asleep on the grass?

丹尼为什么在草地上睡着了？

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the phrases in the box.

用方框中短语的正确形式填空。

thank...for 为……而感谢　hold on 抓住 look like 看起来像　fall off 摔下来

1. This dress fits you very well. You _____ a movie star in it.

这件连衣裙非常适合你。你穿上它_____一位电影明星。

2. Be careful! _____ to that bar! I'm coming to help you.

小心！_____那个架子！我来帮你。

3. Jenny, _____ you _____ helping me practice my spoken English.

詹妮，_____你帮我练习我的英语口语。

4. Lily, look after your little sister. Don't let her _____ the bed.

莉莉，照顾你的小妹妹。不要让她_____床。

3 Danny wrote in his diary about his day as a babysitter. Put the paragraphs in the correct order. 丹尼在他的日记里写了他当临时保姆的一天。把段落按照正确的顺序排列。

Dear Diary, 亲爱的日记：

(1) I woke up before the sun rose this morning. Today I would be a babysitter! I thought about it all day at school.

今天早上我在太阳升起前就醒了。今天我将要做一个临时保姆！我在学校一整天都在思考它。

(　)Next, I pushed her on the swing. Brian wanted to give her a push, but Debbie said no. She loves her big cousin!

然后，我推她荡秋千。布赖恩想推她一下，但是黛比说不。她喜欢她的大表兄！

(　)When the sun set, I took Debbie home. I helped her brush her teeth and climb into bed. I read her a story. At 9:30 p.m., my aunt and uncle came home.

当太阳落下时，我带着黛比回家了。我帮她刷牙并爬上床。我给她读了一个故事。在晚上 9：30，我阿姨和叔叔回家了。

(2) After school, Brian came with me. We went to the playground. I thought that it would be easy to babysit there. I was wrong!

放学后，布赖恩和我一起来了。我们去了操场。我认为在那里当临时保姆很容易。我错了！

(　)I wanted to lie on the grass, but Debbie wanted to play games.We ran, we climbed, we played catch and we played soccer. Finally, we had supper. Debbie ate hers in about one minute! Then she was running again! So was I!

我想躺在草地上，但是黛比想玩游戏。我们跑，我们爬，我们玩接球游戏，我们踢足球。最后，我们吃晚饭。黛比在约一分钟内把她的饭吃完了！然后她又跑！我也是！

(　)First, Debbie climbed up very high. I was scared that she would hurt herself, but she held on well.

首先，黛比爬得很高。我害怕她会伤到她自己，但她抓得很紧。

(　)I can't write any more tonight. I'm too tired. Anyway, it was a good day.

今晚我不能再写了。我太累了。不管怎样，今天是美好的一天。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★Danny is babysitting his cousin Debbie on the playground.

babysit — babysat — babysat — babysitting

① [高频] **babysit** /ˈbeɪbɪsɪt/ *v.* (to take care of babies or children for a short time while their parents are out) 照顾婴儿；当临时保姆

e.g. I have to babysit my little sister when my mother is away.
妈妈不在时，我得照顾我的妹妹。

双写末尾的辅音字母再加-ing构成的现在分词还有：swimming、running、getting、putting、beginning等。

★Thank you for helping me, Brian.

② [高频] **thank sb. for doing sth.** 因为做某事感谢某人

e.g. Thank you for your flowers. 谢谢你（给我）的花。
Thank you for inviting me to your birthday party.
谢谢你邀请我参加你的生日聚会。

for是介词，后跟名词、代词或动名词。

考题在线 1 —Helen, thanks for _____ me.
—It's my pleasure. [湘西改编]
A. help　　B. to help　　C. helping

点拨：考查非谓语动词的用法。句意：——海伦，感谢你帮助我。——不客气。本题考查固定句型“因为做某事而感谢你”用“thanks/thank you for doing sth.”，其中的for是介词，后需要接名词或动名词。

★Hold on, Debbie!

③ **hold on** 抓住；抓紧

e.g. Hold on to the rope, or you will fall off. 抓紧绳子，否则你会摔下去的。

hold on意为“抓住；抓紧”。表示“紧紧抓住某物”时其后要加介词to。

He told me to hold on to the bar. 他告诉我抓紧那个门闩。
Hold on. Everything will be all right. 坚持住，一切都将会好的。

hold on还可表示“（在困境或危险中）坚持住”。

—Can I speak to Mr. Brown?
我可以和布朗先生通话吗?
—Hold on, please. He will be here in a minute.
请别挂断。他马上就来这儿。



它也可用在电话用语中，意为“别挂断”。

考题在线 2 —May I speak to Mr. Smith?
—_____, please. Here he comes. [烟台]
A. Hang out　　B. Pick up
C. Take up　　D. Hold on



点拨：短语辨析法。句意：——我可以和史密斯先生通电话吗？——请_____。他过来了。Hang out闲逛；Pick up捡起；Take up占有；Hold on稍等，不要挂电话。结合句意可知答语第一句为“请不要挂电话”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

核心素养之文化意识

培养“跨文化交际”素养

◆近来有一个词，红遍了华人世界。它是英文与汉语的结合体——“hold住”。它采用中英混搭形式，将英文意思和中文意思巧妙结合，赋予其新的意义。在英语中，“hold”有拿、抱、握住、掌控等意思。“hold住”就是指无论面对什么状况都要稳住、保持住、把持住、撑得住、坚持住，从容应对一切。“要hold住”也有给力、加油的意思。

◆【素养行动】面对生活中的种种压力(pressure)与挑战(challenge)，我们要相信自己，让我们拥有一颗“hold住”的心，勇敢前行！

◆【素养行动结果】了解英语词汇的发展与演变，培养前卫精神，注重跨文化交际。

★ Come down, please!

④ come down 下来

e.g. He will come down from the upstairs soon.

他将马上从楼上下来。

The price of gas will come down soon.

煤气价格不久会下降。

come down 下降；降低

His new book came out last week.

他的新书上周出版了。

The sun is coming out. 太阳就要出来了。

Do you come from America? 你来自美国吗？

Come on! You can do better. 加油！你能做得更好。

He can always come up with good ideas.

他总能想出好主意。

其他与come有关的短语：
- come out 出现；出版
- come from 来自
- come on 快点；加油
- come up with 想出

考题在线3 —Summer vacation is coming! I am thinking about visiting some places of interest.

—Why not _____ Jingzhou and have a look at the ancient city wall? [荆州]

A. come out　B. come along　C. come up with　D. come over to

点拨：短语辨析法。come out 出版，发行，出来；come along 出现，到来；come up with 想出，提出；come over to 过来，顺便来访。根据句意“我正考虑参观一些名胜古迹”可知提出建议“为什么不来荆州看看古城墙呢？”。

★ Let's play on the swings instead, OK?

⑤ instead /ɪn'sted/ *adv.* 代替，更换

e.g. Tom was ill so I went instead.

汤姆病了，所以我替他去了。

I didn't have a pen, so I used a pencil instead.

我没有钢笔，因此我就用铅笔代替了。

辨析：instead与instead of
① instead 代替，顶替，常用于句尾。
② instead of 代替，后接名词、代词、介词短语或动名词。

知识微课

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

I will go instead of you. 我将代替你去。

They went there on foot instead of by bike.

他们没骑自行车而是步行去了那里。

考题在线 4 —How will she deal with the work?

—She doesn't want to do it herself. She wants to ask someone else to do it _____.

A. yet B. instead C. also D. either

点拨：答语句意“她不想自己做这份工作。她想让别人代替她做它。”

★Can I give you a push?

⑥ **push** /pʊʃ/ *v.* & *n.* 推；按下

e.g. You push and I'll pull. 你推，我拉。

The car won't start. Can you give it a push?

汽车发动不起来。你推一下，好吗？



pull



push

★It's time to stop swinging, Debbie.

敲黑板 高频考点！

⑦ **It's time to do sth.** 到做某事的时间了。to 为动词不定式符号，后接动词原形。

e.g. It's time to go to school. 到了该去上学的时间了。

It's time for us to have lunch.

到我们吃午饭的时候了。

It's time for lunch. 该吃午饭了。

① It's time for sb. to do sth.
到某人做某事的时间了。

② It's time for sth.
到做某事的时候了。

⑧ **stop doing sth.** 停止做某事

敲黑板 中考高频考点，易混点！牢记！

辨析：stop doing sth. 与 stop to do sth.

stop doing sth.	停止做某事，表示停止正在做的事
stop to do sth.	停下来去做某事，表示停下手头上的事，去做另一件事

e.g. They stopped having a rest. 他们停止了休息。

They stopped to have a rest. 他们停下来去休息了一下。

★Shall we look at the clouds, Debbie?

⑨ **Shall we...?** 是用来征求对方意见时常用的句型之一，意思为“我们……好吗？”。

e.g. Shall we go to the park tomorrow?

我们明天去公园好吗？

Well begun is half done.
良好的开端是成功的一半。

[重点] 英语中表示提建议的几种句型：

① Shall I/we + 动词原形？意思为“我（们）……好吗？”肯定回答可用“OK./All right./Good idea.”等。

e.g. —Shall we go swimming? 我们去游泳好吗？

—Good idea. 好主意。

② Let's + 动词原形。

e.g. Let's have a rest! 我们休息一会儿吧！

③ Why not + 动词原形？意思为“为什么不……？”

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. Why not join us? 为什么不加入我们呢?

④ What/How about + (doing)sth.? 意为“(做)某事怎么样?”

e.g. What/How about (drinking) some milk?

(喝)一些牛奶怎么样?



考题在线 5 —Shall we go to the supermarket after school? I need to buy something.

—_____ Let's meet at the school gate at 5:00 p.m. [内江]

A. It doesn't matter. B. Are you OK?

C. Why not? D. That's all right.

点拨:考查情景交际。——放学后,我们去超市好吗?我需要买点东西。——为什么不呢?让我们下午五点在学校大门口见面吧。It doesn't matter. 没关系。Are you OK? 你还好吗? Why not? 为什么不呢? That's all right. 没关系。根据句意可知答案。

考题在线答案 1. C 2. D 3. D 4. B 5. C

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见283页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. Shall I _____ (送) you the book?
2. We have got no apples,so let's have some bananas _____ (代替).
3. Thank you for _____ (帮助) me with my English.
4. We _____ (将;会) look after each child very well.
5. This is my first time _____ (照顾婴儿).

二、用方框中所给短语的适当形式填空

hold on	come down	look at
thank you for	instead of	

6. Shall we _____ the clouds?
7. _____, Ann. Let's go shopping.
8. _____ your help. I finished my work on time.
9. She had to spend nearly four months away from her son last year, _____ the usual two.
10. _____! Wait until I get my camera.

三、单项选择

11. —What a fine day! Let's go fishing.

—_____. When shall we go?

A. Very well B. Good idea

C. Well done D. My pleasure

12. It's very late now. It's time _____ goodbye.

A. of B. say

C. to say D. with

13. It's sunny. Let's go sightseeing _____ watching TV in our hotel room. [青海]

A. thanks to

B. instead of

C. as well as

14. —Can I speak to Mr. Brown, please?

—_____.

A. I'm Mr. Brown B. Hold on, please

C. No, you can't D. Yes, you can

15. We feel tired. Let's stop _____ a rest.

A. have B. having

C. has D. to have

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 6 Stories about Spring

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What clothes do you wear in spring? 春天你穿什么衣服?
- What interesting things do you see in spring? 在春天你看到什么有趣的事?

课文朗读

Dear Wang Mei, 亲爱的王梅:

It isn't snowing today, but there is still snow on the grass.

In Edmonton, the weather in March can be cold and snowy or warm and sunny. It's a little wild.The temperature can be as low① /ləʊ/ as① -15 ℃ , but it can also reach 15℃. Still, sometimes it snows in April and May! The temperature drops below② /bɪ'ləʊ/ zero /'zɪərəʊ/ on those snowy days. We probably won't see any flowers until② /ən'tɪl/ May or June!

今天没下雪，但是草地上仍有雪。在埃德蒙顿，三月的天气可能会是冷且有雪的或者温暖晴朗的。有点混乱。气温可能会低到零下 15 摄氏度，但是也会达到 15 摄氏度。但有时在四月和五月仍然会下雪！在那些下雪的日子里气温会下降到零下。我们可能直到五月或六月才能看到一些花!

After school today, we played outside. We played "snow" soccer. We had to wear our jackets and boots, but it was fun. Danny fell into the snow! Maybe next month we will play in our shorts and T-shirts!

今天放学后，我们在外面玩。我们踢“雪”球。我们必须穿上我们的夹克衫和靴子，但是它很有趣。丹尼掉进了雪里！也许下个月我们会穿着我们的短裤和 T 恤衫玩!

I like the Chinese name for winter jasmine. It's interesting. Here, we have Groundhog /'graʊndhɒg/ Day on February 2 for the coming of spring. In spring, many families drive to the countryside on weekends. A popular place to go is a sugar bush /bʊʃ/. It's so much fun to make syrup.

我喜欢迎春花这个中文名字。它很有趣。在 2 月 2 日我们这儿有为庆祝春天的到来的土拨鼠日。在春天，许多家庭周末驾车去乡下。流行去的一个地方就是枫糖林。制作糖水是如此有趣。

I love spring because of all the fun activities. Also, summer follows it!

因为所有这些有趣的活动，我喜欢春天。而且，夏天随后就到!

Talk to you soon! 以后再聊!

Jenny 詹妮

Culture Tip 文化提示

Groundhog Day is on February 2. On that day, a small animal called a groundhog comes out of a hole in the ground. If it sees its shadow, then spring won't come for another 6 weeks. But if the groundhog does not see its shadow, then spring is very close. How does a groundhog know? It doesn't! It's just a very old tradition in North America. 土拨鼠日是在 2 月 2 日。在那天，一种叫土拨鼠的小动物从地洞里钻出来。如果它看到它的影子，那么春天还有 6 个星期才会来临。但是如果土拨鼠看不到它的影子，那么春天不久就会来临。土拨鼠是怎样知道的呢? 它不知道！这仅仅是北美的一个很古老的传统。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and answer the questions.

阅读课文并回答问题。

1. Why does Jenny think the weather in Edmonton is a little wild?

   为什么詹妮认为埃德蒙顿的天气有点混乱呢?

2. What activities do people in Canada do in spring? 春天加拿大的人们进行什么活动?

3. Why does Jenny love spring?

   为什么詹妮喜欢春天?

2 Fill in the blanks with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词填空。

low 低的	until 直到……为止
zero 零	drop 降低

1. The boy didn't stop running _____ he reached the finish line.

   这个男孩没有停止跑 _____ 他到达终点线。

2. Water turns into ice at _____ degrees Celsius. 水在 _____ 摄氏度变成冰。

3. The temperature in Shijiazhuang can be as _____ as -3℃ in spring.

   春天石家庄的气温能 _____ 零下3摄氏度。

4. In my hometown, the temperature can _____ below zero at night.

   在我的家乡,晚上的气温会 _____ 零下。

3 Read the passage and fill in the blanks with the sentences below.

阅读短文,并用下面的句子填空。

Winter is long, cold and dark, so people stay inside most of the time. When spring arrives, people turn their thoughts to the outdoors. _____ They like to wear light shirts and blouses on warm spring days. 冬天又长又冷又黑,因此人们大多数的时间呆在屋子里。当春天到来时,人们把他们的思想转移到了户外。_____ 在温暖的春日里,他们喜欢穿单薄的衬衫。_____ There are lots of activities: cycling, in-line skating and picnicking in the park. Many schools have soccer teams and other clubs for their students.Spring is a time to look forward to ⑤ flowers and fresh food from the garden. Many people go outside and work in their gardens. _____ 有许多活动:骑自行车,轮滑和去公园里野餐。许多学校为他们的学生成立了足球队和其他俱乐部。春天是一个期望从花园里得到鲜花和新鲜食物的季节。许多人走出家门,在他们花园里工作。

_____ Everyone loves spring.

_____ 每个人都喜欢春天。

A. What fun outdoor activities do people like to do in spring?

   在春天人们喜欢做什么有趣的户外活动?

B. Spring is a season of hope. 春天是希望的季节。

C. People don't need to wear heavy clothes to keep warm. 人们不必穿着厚重的衣服来保暖。

I like cycling! Oops! 我喜欢骑自行车!哎哟!

4 Think about things you can do in spring and why you do them. Write a short passage to share with your classmates.

想一想你在春天可以做的事和你为什么做它们。写一篇小短文和你的同班同学一起分享。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

as...as... 用于两者间的比较,表示"和……一样……",中间要用形容词或副词的原级。

★ **The temperature can be as low as -15℃, but it can also reach 15℃.**

① [高频] **as...as...** 和……一样……　高频考点!牢记!敲黑板

e.g. He is as busy as his brother.

他和他哥哥一样忙。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

I am not as/so old as you.=I am younger than you.

我没有你年龄大。as...as... 结构的否定形式是 not as...as... 或 not so...as... 表示“不如/不及……”，该结构通常可和比较级进行互换。

考题在线 1 Does the dish taste as _____ as it looks? [黔南]

A. well B. best

C. good D. better

点拨：考查形容词的用法。as...as... 意为“和……一样……”，空格处应用形容词或副词原形。taste 为系动词，应用形容词来修饰。

② **low** /ləʊ/ *adj.* (less than normal in degree or intensity or amount) 低的

e.g. The woman likes talking in a low voice.

那个妇女喜欢低声说话。

The building is lower than that one.

这座大楼比那座大楼低一些。



★ **The temperature drops below zero on those snowy days.**

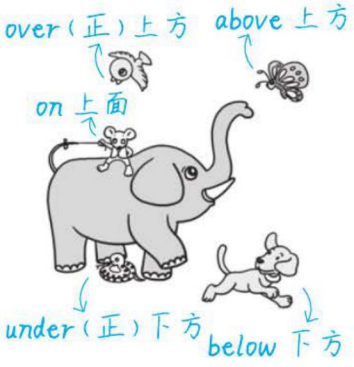
③ **below** /bɪ'ləʊ/ *prep.* & *adv.*(in a lower place or position, or on a lower level) 在……下面；低于

e.g. Shall I write my name below the line?

我把我的名字写在这条线下面好吗？

[难点] 辨析：above, over, on, below 与 under

above 表示在某物体的上方，与某物体不接触。反义词 below。	Planes fly above the white clouds. 飞机在白云上面飞行。 All the fields are below the planes. 所有的田地都在飞机的下面。
over 表示在某物体的正上方，与某物体垂直但不接触，反义词为 under。	There is a bridge over the river. 河上有座桥。 My shoes are under the bed. 我的鞋在床下面。
on 表示在物体的表面之上，与物体既垂直又接触。	My books are on the desk. 我的书在书桌上。



考题在线 2 Ice is not often seen here in winter as the temperature normally stays _____ zero. [无锡]

A. up B. down C. above D. below

★ **We probably won't see any flowers until May or June!**

④ **not...until...** 直到……才……

e.g. He didn't go to bed until 11 o'clock last night.

昨晚他直到 11 点钟才上床睡觉。

I won't leave here until my mother comes.

直到我母亲来我才会离开这儿。

表示某一动作或状态一直到 until 所表示的时间为止才发生，谓语动词通常为终止性动词。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 3 —Lucy, you can't use the phone _____ we are far from the gas (天然气) station.

—OK, I won't do that again. [宜昌]

A. after B. when C. though D. until

点拨：考查连词。句意：——露西，_____我们离加气站很远，你才能使用手机。——好吧，我再也不那样做了。after 在……之后；when 当……时；though 虽然；until 直到。not…until… 意为"直到……才……"，符合句意。

★**Spring is a time to look forward to flowers and fresh food from the garden.**

⑤ **look forward to 盼望；期望**

to 是介词，其后常接名词、代词或动名词作宾语。

e.g. I'm looking forward to seeing you again.

我期盼着与你再次见面。

考题在线答案 1. C 2. C 3. D

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见 284 页)

一、根据句意及所给提示完成句子

1. The temperature tonight is l_____.

2. Please do not write b_____ this line.

3. It was 37 degrees above z_____.

4. He wasn't here u_____ one o'clock.

5. _____ (有时) I go by car.

二、用方框中所给短语的适当形式填空

as good as	below zero	not...until...
look forward to	some times	

6. I _____ leave _____ you come back.

7. I think this book is _____ that one.

8. He has been to the UK _____.

9. The temperature outside is _____ now.

10. We are all _____ your reply.

三、单项选择

11. —You look so tired. What's wrong?

—I didn't go to bed _____ I finished watching *In the Name of People* last night. [十堰]

A. until B. if

C. though D. unless

12. Though Betty and Lily are twins, Betty isn't so _____ as Lily. [郴州]

A. more outgoing

B. most outgoing

C. outgoing

13. —Can I join Oxfam Trailwalker?

—Only if you are _____ eighteen.

A. over B. on

C. under D. below

14. My shirt needs _____.

A. wash B. washed

C. washing D. to wash

15. We all look forward to _____ you again soon. [宜宾]

A. see B. seeing C. seen

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit Review

I. 课文原文、译文

Building Your Vocabulary 构建你的词汇库

Ⅰ. Unscramble the words and discover the answer to the riddle.

整理单词，找出谜语的答案。

insteda ＿＿○＿＿＿＿

shup ○＿＿＿

lynear ＿＿＿○＿＿

dwin ＿○＿＿

plntey ＿＿＿○＿＿

gonl ＿＿＿○

Riddle: 谜语：

It is a season. People always think of it as a time of rebirth, renewal and regrowth.

它是一个季节。人们总是把它当作是一个万物复苏的时节。

Answer: It's _____.

答案：它是 _____。

Ⅱ. Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words or phrases in the box.

用方框中的单词或短语的正确形式填空。

push 推　plenty of 大量的
not...until 直到……才
neither...nor 既不……也不
average 平均的　activity 活动

1. Don't worry. We have _____ time to get ready for the trip.

   别担心。我们有 _____ 时间来准备旅行。

2. _____ Lucy _____ her sister passed the English exam.

   _____ 露西 _____ 她的妹妹通过了英语考试。

3. This year, our school organized lots of _____ to enrich our lives.

   今年，我们学校组织了许多 _____ 来丰富我们的生活。

4. Brian _____ the door open and went into the room.

   布赖恩 _____ 开门，走进了房间。

5. He did _____ watch TV _____ 10:00 p.m.

   他 _____ 晚上 10 点 _____ 看电视。

6. The _____ age of these workers is 20.They are really active.

   这些工人们的 _____ 年龄是 20 岁。他们真的很积极。

Grammar in Use 语法应用

Match the words to make compound words. Then make sentences using the new words.

把单词搭配起来组成复合词。然后用新单词造句。

news 消息　home 家　country 国家　thunder 雷
any 一些　play 玩　hill 小山　sun 太阳　week 周
side 边　storm 暴风雨　town 城镇　paper 纸
set 落下　end 结束　more 更多的（地）
ground 地面　side 边

Listening and Speaking 听说练习

Ⅰ. Listen and repeat. Pay attention to the letters in red.

听并重复。注意标红字母。



1. Tell us the exact time!

   告诉我们准确的时间！

2. I know a good game.

   我知道一个好游戏。

3. When it snows, it's not hot.

   下雪时，天不热。

4. I love spring because of all the fun activities.

   因为这些所有有趣的活动，我喜欢春天。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. Listen to the dialogue and answer the questions. 听对话，回答问题。

1. What is Steven going to do this Saturday?
这周六斯蒂文打算干什么?
2. Who will go to the countryside together with Steven? 谁将和斯蒂文一起去乡下?
3. What time will they meet at the park gate?
他们几点将在公园门口见面?

Ⅲ. What season do you enjoy most? What do you like about it? Talk about it with your partner. You can use the ideas below.
你最喜欢什么季节? 你喜欢它什么? 和你的搭档谈谈它。你可以用下面的想法。

The Weather 天气

It is too hot/cold/windy/snowy.
天太热 / 冷 / 多风的 / 多雪的。

The weather is just right. 天气正好。

It gets warmer/colder.
天变得更暖和 / 更冷。

Environment 环境

Flowers blossom and trees turn green.
花开了，树变绿了。

There are many fresh fruits and vegetables.
有许多新鲜的水果和蔬菜。

It is cold and there is snow and ice everywhere.
天冷了并且到处都是雪和冰。

Sunrise/Sunset 日出 / 日落

The sun rises early/late. 太阳早早 / 很晚升起。

The sun sets at about 6:00 p.m.
太阳大约在下午 6 点落山。

The days get longer/shorter.
白天变得更长了 / 更短了。

Activities 活动

I love swimming in the sea. 我喜欢在海里游泳。

I can go boating with my parents.
我可以和我的父母一起去划船。

We go skiing during the winter holiday.
我们在寒假期间去滑雪。

Putting It All Together 综合练习

Read the passage and answer the questions.
阅读文章，回答问题。

Festivals in Spring
春天里的节日

The Spring Festival: The Spring Festival, the Chinese New Year, falls on the first day of the first lunar month, and ends on the fifteenth day. There are all kinds of cultural activities during this festival. Firework shows, dragon dancing and lion dancing are very common. It is a time for families to get together. No matter where they are, people come home to celebrate the festival with their families.

春节：春节，中国的新年，开始于农历第一个月的第一天，结束于第十五天。在这个节日期间有各种各样的文化活动。放烟花、舞龙和舞狮是很常见的。它是一个家人团聚的时刻。不管他们在哪里，人们会回到家和他们的家人一起庆祝这个节日。

Maslenitsa: Maslenitsa draws its roots from religious activities, but now it is about the new birth of nature. Pancakes are an important part of the celebration because they are round, yellow and hot, just like the sun. The festival lasts for a week. There are special activities. It is perhaps the most cheerful holiday in Russia.

送冬节：送冬节起源于宗教活动，但是现在它代表自然的新生。薄饼是庆祝活动的一个重要部分，因为它们是圆的、黄色的并且是热的，就像太阳。节日持续一周。有特别的活动。它可能是俄国最令人愉快的节日。

The Festival of Colours: Every year, Indian people celebrate this festival to greet the coming of spring. During the celebration, people pray, dance and share special food. They throw bright, colourful powders at friends and strangers. Hugs and smiles are also a part of the celebration. Everyone has fun.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

颜色节：每年，印度人庆祝这个节日来欢迎春天的到来。在庆典期间，人们祈祷、跳舞和分享特色食物。他们把鲜艳夺目的、五彩缤纷的粉末扔向朋友和陌生人。拥抱和微笑也是庆祝活动的一部分。每个人都玩得很高兴。

1. How long does the Spring Festival last in China? 中国的春节持续多长时间?
2. What are some common cultural activities during the Spring Festival?
   春节期间一些常见的文化活动是什么?
3. Why are pancakes an important part of the celebration of Maslenitsa in Russia?
   为什么薄饼在俄国的送冬节是庆祝活动的一个重要组成部分?
4. Who celebrates the Festival of Colours?
   谁庆祝颜色节?

Self-Evaluation

自我评价

Find more examples from this unit. Then mark your stars.

从这个单元中找出更多的例子。然后标记你的星星。

I. Talking about the Weather and Spring

谈论天气和春天

It's quite warm today. Spring is coming.

今天很暖和。春天要来了。

I can describe the weather and spring in English.

我会用英语描述天气和春天。

II. Talking about Outdoor Activities

谈论户外活动

Children run around or play on the swings.

孩子们到处跑或者荡秋千。

I can describe outdoor activities in English.

我会用英语描述户外活动。

III. Word Building 构词法

maybe 可能 thunderstorm 雷雨 sunrise 日出

I know a lot of English compound words.

我知道许多英语复合词。

Enjoyment

享受

Hills, loud with new water,

小山中喧哗的流水，

Running swiftly under ice

从冰下轻快地划过

As clear as glass.

如玻璃一样透明清澈。

Flowers, tiny, brave and

渺小而勇敢的花朵

Bright in the old snow.

在残雪中绽放。

Trees, smelling fresh with life.

树木散发着新生的生命气息。

Leaves opening slowly

叶子慢慢地舒展开来

Under the pale blue sky.

在淡蓝色的天空下。

The sun, warm and golden,

温暖而金黄的太阳，

Softly kissing the earth.

温柔地亲吻着大地。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

合成词

合成词：由两个或两个以上的词合成的一个新词。最常见的有合成名词、合成形容词、合成代词等。

考点1 合成名词

- 动名词 + 名词 reading room 阅览室
- 形容词 + 名词 blackboard 黑板
- 副词 + 动词 outbreak 爆发
- 介词 + 名词 afternoon 下午
- 名词 + 名词 weekend 周末
- 副词 + 名词 onlooker 旁观者
- 名词 + 动名词 handwriting 书法
- 名词 + 动词 haircut 理发

e.g. My father's handwriting is very good.
我爸爸的书法很好。
They often go shopping at the weekend.
他们常在周末去购物。

考题在线1 老师让李明在黑板上写出这道题的答案。（根据汉语提示完成句子）
The teacher asked Li Ming to write the answer to the question on the _____.

考点2 合成形容词

- 名词 + 形容词：snow-white 雪白的；
- 名词 + 现在分词：English-speaking 讲英语的
- 名词 +to+ 名词：face-to-face 面对面的；
- 名词 + 过去分词：man-made 人造的
- 数词 + 名词：one-way 单行的；
- 数词 + 名词 + 形容词：two-year-old 两岁的
- 副词 + 过去分词：well-known 著名的
- 副词 + 现在分词：hard-working 勤劳的
- 副词 + 名词：outdoor 户外的

e.g. England is an English-speaking country.
英国是一个讲英语的国家。

考题在线2 —What are you doing here?
—Oh, my teacher asked me to write a passage of about _____ in English.
—You can write _____ passage in English?
A. 600 words; a 600-words
B. 600-word; a 600-words
C. 600 words; a 600-word
D. 600-words; a 600-words

小贴士： 在构成合成词时，有的需加连字符，如 hard-working；有的不加连字符，如 sunrise。但由三个或三个以上的单词构成的合成词一般加连字符，如 ten-year-old。

考点3 [重点] 合成代词

考向一：反身代词：myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, himself, herself, itself, themselves。

e.g. The boy teaches himself English.
这个男孩自学英语。

考题在线3 —Did anyone call me when I was out?
—Yes. A man who called _____ Tom.
A. myself B. himself C. herself D. yourself
点拨：考查反身代词。一个称他自己 (himself) 为汤姆的男士。

考向二：[重点] 不定代词

somebody	anybody	nobody	everybody
someone	anyone	no one	everyone
something	anything	nothing	everything

e.g. Do you want anything else?
你还想要其他的东西吗？

考题在线4 —What a bad day!
—Everyone has one of those days when _____ goes right. [河南]
A. nothing B. anything
C. everything D. something
点拨：nothing 没有事情；anything 任何事情；everything 一切事情；something 有些事情。

考题在线答案 1. blackboard 2. C 3. B 4. A

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见284页)

听力技巧

预读定位法(利用导言和题与题之间的间隙，预读选项信息，定位出题方向，以便等录音内容开始播放时有目的地捕捉所需信息。)

听力过程

听 **Listening and Speaking** Ⅱ，回答问题

课文听力

1. What is Steven going to do tomorrow?

A. Go for a picnic.

B. Go to the zoo.

C. Go to the park.

2. We can meet _____ tomorrow morning.

A. at the park gate

B. at the zoo gate

C. at the school gate

3. They will meet at _____ tomorrow morning.

A. 8 o'clock

B. 9 o'clock

C. 10 o'clock

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

交代了文章的体裁

This is a letter from Wang Mei to Jenny. In her letter, she tells Jenny the spring in Shijiazhuang. 交代内容 That morning, the weather was warm and the air was fresh. Winter jasmine blossomed. The days are getting longer and the sun rises earlier in the morning. Every morning. Wang Mei sees lots of people exercising in the park and children run around and play on the swings.

In Wang Mei's school, a basketball game will be held and her class is also planning a field trip to the countryside. She can't wait.

单元话题

以"Spring—My Favourite Season"为题写一篇关于春天的短文。

要求：

①说明你喜欢春天的原因(包括天气、景象、活动等)；

②词数：70词左右。

审题指导(把握中心，得方向分)

1. 注意写此类文章一般使用一般现在时。
2. 要注意使用表示天气状况的形容词。如：rainy, snowy, windy, cloudy, sunny 等。

写作技法(学会方法，巧得高分)

"三步法"介绍季节

"三步法"写自己喜欢的季节：可以使用"提出话题——具体阐述——总结提升"进行写作。

写作模板(学会套路，得基本分)

提出话题	提出所要讲的话题；要简明扼要，开门见山。
具体阐述	写出自己喜欢这个季节的原因。
总结提升	针对所叙述的话题进行总结。

经典词句(妙用句式，得出彩分)

单词	become, turn, wear, cycling
短语	warmer and warmer, turn green, come out, the beginning of, from now on
句子	1. We don't need to wear winter clothes. 2. In the open air, we can do lots of activities.

范文赏析(书写工整，得印象分)

Spring—My Favourite Season

Of all the seasons, I like spring best.

In spring, the weather becomes warmer and warmer. All the trees turn green and flowers come

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

out. Animals begin to go out for food. We don't need to wear winter clothes. In the open air, we can do lots of activities, like walking, cycling and flying kites①.

I like spring. It's the beginning of a year. And I'll study harder from now on.

名师点评：

本文运用了"三步法"介绍最喜欢的季节——春天。第一步提出话题（第一段），第二步具体阐述（第二段），第三步总结提升（最后一段）。

添彩点：一些高级短语和句式的运用为本文增色不少。如：warmer and warmer 越来越温暖，turn green 变绿，the beginning of ……的开始，from now on 从今以后；①处的句子从举例的形式，具体描述了在春天进行的活动。



V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见284页）

一、语法专练

将A栏单词与B栏单词重新组合成一个新单词，并写出汉语意思。

A	B
snow	man
out	light
day	board
black	mother
grand	door

1. _____ _____
2. _____ _____
3. _____ _____
4. _____ _____
5. _____ _____

二、单元知识浓缩

根据短文内容及所给提示，补全文中单词或用所给单词的正确形式填空。

There are four seasons in a year in my hometown.They are spring, summer, autumn and winter.

In spring, grass and trees t_____[6] green. The weather is n_____[7] too cold nor too hot. The w_____[8] blows gently. The flowers _____[9] (blossom) one by one. I can play on the s_____[10] in the park and have a field trip with my classmates on _____[11] (sun) days. I like this season best.

In summer, it is often very hot. I go swimming _____[12] (near) every day because it is cool in the water. It usually rains a lot in late July and early August. _____[13] (sometime) it rains heavily. When it rains, I stay at home. I don't like rainy days.

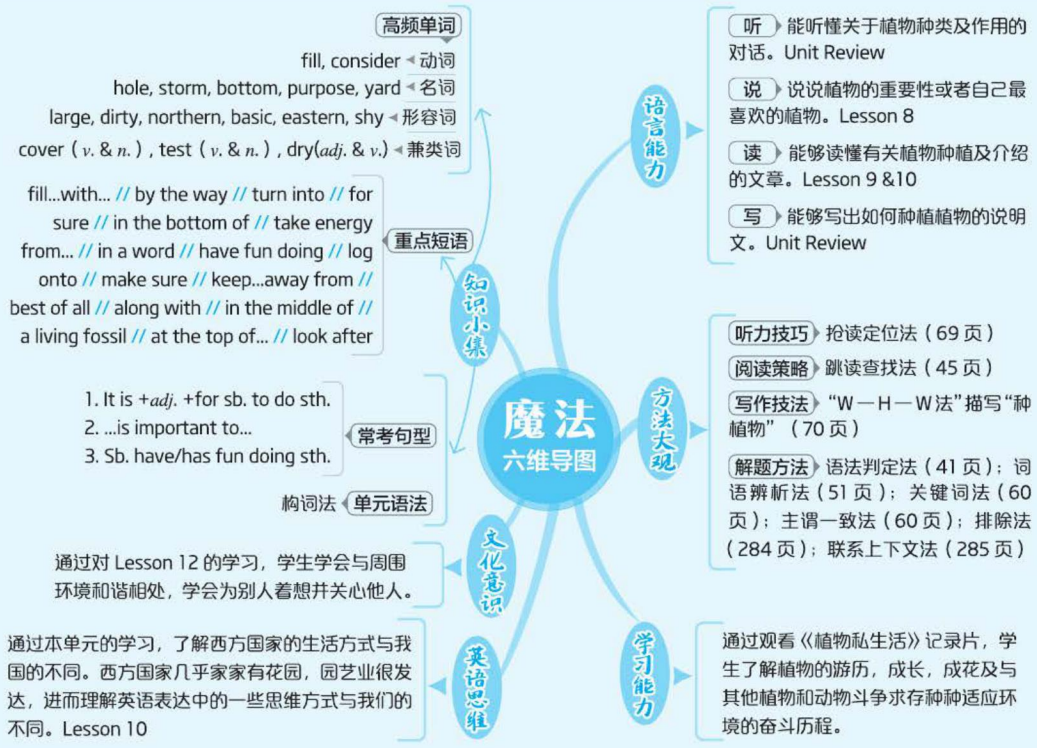
In autumn, it's fine. Leaves turn yellow. The sky is blue. The farmers are busy with their crops. I often go out with my friends to enjoy the pleasure of the harvest（丰收）.

In winter, the temperature _____[14] (drop) below zero. It is often snowy. I need to _____[15] (wear)my jackets and boots. I don't like this season. Do you like it?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Plant a Plant!

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Lesson 7

必背单词

1. hole *n*. 洞

2. large *adj*. 大的；巨大的

→big *adj*. 大的（近）

→small *adj*. 小的（反）

3. cover *v*. 覆盖； *n*. 盖子

→cover…with… 用……覆盖……

4. fill *v*. 装满；充满

→fill sth.with sth. 用某物把某物装满

→be filled with 装满；盛满

5. storm *n*. 暴风雨

6. dirty *adj*. 不干净的；肮脏的

→ untidy *adj*. 不整洁的（近义）

→clean *adj*. 干净的（反义）

7. northern *adj*. 北方的；北部的

8. bottom *n*. 底部；最下部 →top *n*. 顶部（反义）

→at the bottom of… 在……的底部

必背短语

9. by the way 顺便说一下

10. make + sb. /sth. + 宾补 使某人 / 某物……

11. turn into 变成

12. for sure 肯定地；确定地

必背句子

13. Maybe you should **make** the hole a little **bigger**. 也许你们应该把坑挖得更大些。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

14. It must be **large enough** to hold the roots of the seedling. 它必须足够大，才能装下树苗的根。

Lesson 8

必背单词

1. **basic** *adj.* 基本的；基础的→ basics *n.* 基本原则
→ basically *adv.* 基本上

必背短语

2. take energy from... 从……获取能量
3. be made from 由……制成
4. in a word 总之→ in one word 一句话；总之
→ in other words 换言之；换句话说

必背句子

5. In a word, we **can't** live **without** plants!
总之，没有植物我们不能生存！

Lesson 9

必背短语

1. TV channel 电视频道
2. the best way to do sth. 做某事最好的方法
3. have fun doing 做……有趣→ have a good time 玩得开心→ enjoy oneself 过得愉快
4. have to 必须；不得不

必背句子

5. Mary Green will **show** you the best way to grow all kinds of plants. 玛丽格林将给你展示种植各种各样植物的最佳方法。
6. Roses **smell** so wonderful. 玫瑰很好闻。

Lesson 10

必背单词

1. **consider** *v.* 仔细考虑
→ consider doing sth. 考虑做某事
2. **test** *v.* & *n.* 测验；考查
3. **dry** *adj.* 干的； *v.* 使干；变干
4. **purpose** *n.* 目的；目标；意图
→ purposeful *adj.* 有目的的；坚决的
→ on purpose 故意地
→ for the purpose of… 为了……的目的

必背短语

5. make sure 确信；查明；弄清楚
6. keep…away from… 使……远离……

必背句子

7. You must **consider** many things when you **decide** to begin gardening.
当你决定开始做园艺时，你必须考虑很多事情。
8. That is the whole **purpose** of growing a garden. 那是种植花园的全部目的。

Lesson 11

必背单词

1. **eastern** *adj.* 东方的；东部的
2. **shy** *adj.* 害羞的

必背短语

3. open up 张开；打开
4. hear sb. doing sth. 听到某人正在做某事
→ hear sb. do sth. 听到某人做了某事
5. as long as 长达；与……一样长
6. in the middle of 在……中间；在……中部

必背句子

7. What **makes** a tree **laugh**? 什么使一棵树发笑?
8. Its two leaves **continue to** grow for its whole life. 它的两片叶子持续生长一生。

Lesson 12

必背单词

1. **yard** *n.* 院子；场地→ yard *n.* 码
→ courtyard *n.* 庭院→ backyard *n.* 后院

必背短语

2. at the top of... 在……顶端
3. look after 照顾；照看
→ take (good) care of… 照顾 / 照看（好）……

必背句子

4. Now, **something new** is growing at the top of the stem. 现在，茎的顶部正长出新的东西。
5. I'll **send** some seeds **to** Li Ming.
我会给李明寄一些种子。

单元必背语法

1. A **worker** is there helping them.
一位工人在那帮他们。
2. They help us **fulfill** our basic needs.
它们帮助满足我们的基本需求。
3. Gardening is a very **enjoyable** hobby.
园艺是一个很令人愉快的爱好。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 7 Planting Trees

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- When is Tree Planting Day in China? 在中国，植树节是什么时候?
- What are the basic steps for planting a tree? 种树的基本步骤是什么?

课文朗读

It's March 12. Li Ming and his classmates are on a hillside. They are planting trees as a school project. A worker is there helping them.
今天是三月十二日。李明和他的同班同学们在一个山坡上。作为学校的一个任务，他们正在种树。一名工人在那里帮助他们。

Li Ming: Excuse me, sir. We are digging a hole /həʊl/. Is it big enough?
打扰一下，先生。我们正在挖坑。它足够大吗?

Worker: Maybe you should make ① the hole a little bigger. It must be large /lɑːdʒ/ enough ② to hold the roots /ruːts/ of the seedling.
也许你们应该把坑挖得更大些。它必须足够大，才能装下树苗的根。

Li Ming: I see. Thank you. 我知道了。谢谢你。

Worker: Now, put the seedling /'siːdlɪŋ/ inside, cover ③ /'kʌvə/ the roots and fill ④ /fɪl/ the hole with dirt. Then pack /pæk/ the dirt /dɜːt/ around the new tree with your feet.
现在，把树苗放到里面，用泥土把根盖住并且把坑填满。然后用你的双脚把新树周围的泥土压实。

Wang Mei: OK. By the way ⑤, there is another group of people down the hill. Are they also coming to plant trees?
好的。顺便问一下，山下还有一群人。他们也是来种树的吗?

Worker: Yes. Many people are worried because the environment is changing, and they want to do something to help.
是的。许多人很担心，因为环境正在改变，并且他们想做些事情来帮忙。

Li Ming: These changes are serious. When there is a dust /dʌst/ storm /stɔːm/ in spring, it gets windy and dirty /'dɜːtɪ/ everywhere.
这些改变很严重。当春天有沙尘暴时，处处都会变得多风而且很脏。

Wang Mei: Ms. Liu told us the wind blows the dirt and the sand here from the north. Nothing can stop the wind because there are not many trees left. 过去分词作后置定语
刘老师告诉我们风把泥土和沙子从北方刮到这里。没有什么可以阻挡风(的侵蚀)，因为剩下的树不多了。

Worker: Exactly. A lot of rich lands in the northern ⑥ /'nɔːðən/ area have turned into ⑦ desert. 正是如此。在北方地区许多肥沃的土地已变成了沙漠。

Li Ming: I suppose tree planting is very important work. 我认为种树是非常重要的工作。

Wang Mei: For sure. I really like this project. It's also a great way to learn about nature.
肯定的。我真的喜欢这个任务。它也是一种了解大自然的好方法。

Worker: Yes. It's fun and important to plant plants. Oh, and please remember to ⑧ put a little water in the bottom /'bɒtəm/ of the hole.
是的。种植物很有趣也很重要。噢，请记住往坑的底部浇些水。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and write true(T) or false(F).

阅读课文并写出对(T)错(F)。

1. Li Ming and Wang Mei were having a picnic on a farm.
   李明和王梅在农场上野餐。 (　　)
2. They asked a teacher for help.
   他们向一位老师请求帮助。 (　　)
3. Li Ming saw another group of people on the hillside.
   李明看见另一组人在山坡上。 (　　)
4. Wang Mei really liked the project.
   王梅真的喜欢这个任务。 (　　)

2 Fill in the blanks with the words in the box. Then put the steps for planting a tree in the correct order.

用方框中所给的词填空。然后按种树的步骤正确排序。

bottom 底部　hole 洞　around 周围 cover 覆盖　roots 根

☐ Put the _____ of the seedling into the hole.
把秧苗的 _____ 放进坑里。

☐ Put a little water in the _____ of the hole.
在坑的 _____ 浇一些水。

☐ _____ the roots and fill the hole with dirt.
_____ 根部，用泥土把坑填满。

☐ Pack the dirt _____ the new tree with your feet.
用你的双脚压实在新树 _____ 的泥土。

☐ Dig a _____ big enough to hold the roots of the seedling.
挖一个足够大的 _____ 来容纳秧苗的根。

3 Complete the passage with the missing phrases.

补空缺的短语，完成短文。

The Green Great Wall was built across _____ of the country. What is the Green Great Wall? It is made up of strips of human-planted forest.

贯穿国家 _____ 的绿色长城被建立。绿色长城是什么？它是由人工林组成的带状地带。

Each year _____ blow a lot of soil off the land. Things are getting more and more serious. About 3 600 square kilometres of grassland are taken by the Gobi Desert every year.

每年 _____ 吹走许多陆地上的土壤。情况正在变得越来越严重。每年大约有 3 600 平方公里的草地被戈壁沙漠所代替。

The Green Great Wall project started in 1978.By _____, people hold back the expansion of the desert and raise northern China's forest coverage by 5% to 15%. By the year 2050, _____ will be about 2 800 miles long.

绿色长城工程开始于 1978 年。通过 _____，人们阻挡了沙漠的扩张，中国北部的森林覆盖率提高了百分之五到百分之十五。到 2050 年，_____ 将达到大约 2 800 英里长。

A. the Green Great Wall 绿色长城
B. planting more trees 种植更多的树
C. dust storms 沙尘暴
D. the northern part 北部

4 Work in pairs. Read the lesson and the passage above again. Why should we plant trees? Talk about it and list at least three reasons.

结对练习。再次阅读课文和上面的文章。我们为什么应该种树？讨论这个话题并列出至少三个原因。

1. _____　2. _____　3. _____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

宾语

★ **Maybe you should make the hole a little bigger.** 宾语补足语

① **[高频] make+sb./sth. +宾补　使某人 / 某物……**

e.g. They made him captain. 他们选他当队长。名词作宾语补足语

The news made him sad. 那条消息使他悲伤。形容词作宾语补足语

He made me repeat it. 他让我将它重述一遍。动词原形（不带 to 的动词不定式）作宾语补足语

When I first came to New York, I had a lot of trouble making myself understood. 过去分词作宾语补足语

我刚到纽约时，想让别人听懂我的话非常困难。

The children must be made to clean their own room. → make sb. do sth. 的被动形式为 sb. be made to do sth.（某人被迫做某事）

必须叫孩子们打扫他们自己的房间。

考题在线 1 Though he often made his little sister _____, today he was made _____ by her. [岳阳]

A. cry; to cry　　B. cried; crying　　C. to cry; cry

点拨：语法判定法。主动语态中，用省掉 to 的动词不定式作宾补，但在被动语态中不省略动词不定式符号 to，动词不定式作主语补足语。

★ **It must be large enough to hold the roots of the seedling.**

② **[高频] enough** /ɪ'nʌf/ *adj.* 充足的；*adv.* 足够地；充足地

敲黑板 中考高频考点，牢记！

e.g. He is old enough to go to school.

他（年龄）足够大，可以上学了。

The ice isn't thick enough for you to walk on.

这冰不够厚，你不能在上面走。

He has enough money/money enough to buy a car.

他有足够的钱买一辆汽车。

The box is too heavy for me to carry. =

The box is so heavy that I can't carry it. =

The box isn't light enough for me to carry.

这个箱子太重，我搬不动。

too...to... 表示"太……而不能……"，so...that... 表示"如此……以至于……"，它们有时可与 ...enough to do sth. 互换。

考题在线 2 —We shouldn't worry about Mary.

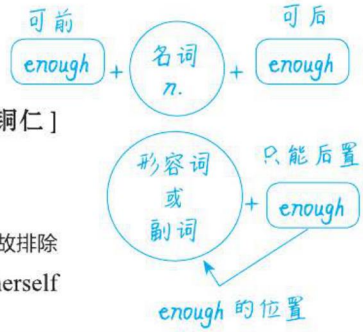
—You are right. She is _____ to look after _____. [铜仁]

A. old enough; herself　　B. big enough: herself

C. enough old; her　　D. enough big; her

点拨：enough 修饰形容词，需要放在后面，即形容词 +enough，故排除 C 和 D。这里的足够大，指的是年龄大，应该用 old，故排除 B。herself 是反身代词，指她自己。

be adj. enough to do sth. 意为"足够……做某事"，动词不定式表示结果，其逻辑主语可用介词 for 引出。



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 3 It's not _____ to be friendly. You have to be a friend. Go and talk to Sam. [无锡]

A. good enough B. late enough C. too good D. too late

点拨: 考查形容词及固定用法。句意: 友好相处怎么都不算晚，你必须像个朋友的样子，去跟 Sam 谈谈。此处用到固定短语 too…to… 表示“太……而不能……”。

★Now, put the seedling inside, cover the roots and fill the hole with dirt.





cover 封面　cover 盖子

③ **cover** /'kʌvə/ *v.* 覆盖 *n.* 盖子；封面 be covered with 被……覆盖

e.g. She covered her face with her hands. 她双手掩面。

The book needs a new cover. 这本书需要一个新封面。

The road is usually covered with snow. 这条路通常被雪覆盖。

一语辨异：She used a cover to cover a box. 她用一个盖子盖一个箱子。

考题在线 4 Please _____ the seed _____ soil.

A. covered; in B. cover; with

C. covered; with D. cover; on

点拨:cover…with…“用……来覆盖……”，为主动形式；其被动形式为 be covered with 被……覆盖。此句是祈使句，动词用原形。

辨析：fill...with... 与 be filled with

① fill...with...“用……装满……”，主语是人，强调动作的过程。

② be filled with 装满；充满。同 be full of。

④ **fill** /fil/ *v.* (to make sth. full of sth.) 充满；装满

e.g. He filled the cup with tea. 他把杯子里装满了茶。

The cup was filled with/ full of tea. 杯子里装满了茶。

考题在线 5 If you read a lot, your life will be filled _____ pleasure.

A. by B. of C. for D. with

★By the way, there is another group of people down the hill.

⑤ **by the way** 顺便问一下　常用来表示说话人要转入一个新话题。

e.g. By the way, where is he? 顺便问一下，他在哪里?

He ran to school all the way. 他一路跑着去上学。

In a way, the problem is a little difficult to solve.

从某种程度上说，这个问题解决起来有点儿棘手。

The little boy is on his way to the zoo.

这个小男孩正在去动物园的路上。

由 way 构成的其他词组：

① all the way 一路上；自始至终

② in a way 在某种程度上

③ on one's way to... 在某人去……的路上

考题在线 6 顺便问一下，你在去上学的路上看到了什么？（补全句子）

_____, what did you see _____ to school?

★A lot of rich lands in the northern area have turned into desert.

⑥ **northern** /'nɔ:ðən/ *adj.* 北方的；北部的

north（北方）— northern（北方的）

west（西方）— western（西方的）　east（东方）— eastern（东方的）

south（南方）— southern（南方的）

“-ern”加在表示方位的名词之后，表示“……（方位）的”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. He has traveled in some northern cities.
他在北方的一些城市旅游过。
Beijing lies in the north of China. It is a northern city.
北京位于中国北部。它是一个北方的城市。

⑦ **turn into 变成**

e.g. Water can turn into ice. 水可以变成冰。
How can we turn water into water vapor?
我们如何能把水变成水蒸气?

turn 构成的短语
turn off 关掉
turn around 转身；翻转
turn back 折回；回来
turn down 把……调低
turn on 打开
turn over 移交；翻过来
turn up 把……调高；出现
turn out 出席；证明是

★**Oh, and please remember to put a little water in the bottom of the hole.**

⑧ **remember to do sth. 记住去做某事**

e.g. I'll remember to mail these letters. 我会记得去寄这些信。
When you leave the room, remember to turn off the light.
当你离开房间的时候记得要关灯。
My sister remembered locking the door. 我妹妹记得锁过门了。

辨析：remember to do sth. 与 remember doing sth.
① remember to do sth. 记得要做某事（事情还未做）
② remember doing sth. 记得做过某事（事情已经做了）

考题在线 7 — Daniel, do you know that bees never get lost.
—Yes. Bees always remember _____ the same way as they went.
A. come back B. came back C. coming back D. to come back
点拨：固定短语 remember to do sth. 记得去做某事（未做）。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. D 6. By the way; on the/your way 7. D

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞（答案见284页）

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成句子

1. The man dug a _____（洞）in the garden.
2. He has a _____（大量的）number of books.
3. I really like the _____（封面）of the book.
4. There will be a _____（暴风雨）this afternoon.
5. Please wash your _____（脏的）hands.

二、用方框中所给词（组）的适当形式填空

north	by the way	turn into
cover with	fill with	

6. The desk is _____ books.
7. _____, is there a bank near here?
8. The traffic is heavy now. The streets are often _____ too many cars.
9. The haze（雾霾）often happens in the _____ part of China.
10. In the sun, the ice in the glass will _____ water. 【导学号：6505386】

三、单项选择

11. How time flies! We should show love to our parents and make them _____ how much they mean to us. [十堰]
A. to know B. knowing
C. knew D. know
12. What can we cover the roof _____? The rain is too heavy.
A. in B. with C. of D. for
13. —_____, do you go to school by bike?
—Yes, I do.
A. On the way B. In this way
C. In the way D. By the way
14. —Sally, I went to the concert last night. How big the symphony hall is!
—So it is. It is _____ to hold more than one thousand people. [玉林]
A. big enough B. enough big
C. too big D. too small
15. Look out! The cup is _____ hot water.
A. full of B. fill with C. full D. fill

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 8 Why Are Plants Important?

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What plants grow near your home? 你家附近长着什么植物?
- Why do we need trees? 我们为什么需要树木?

Danny, Jenny and Brian are walking in a forest. 丹尼、詹妮和布赖恩正在森林里散步。

课文朗读

Jenny: I love this forest. There are so many trees and plants. The air is always clean and fresh.
我喜欢这片森林。有如此多的树木和植物。空气总是很干净、很清新。

Brian: Yes. Trees and other plants help clean the air. 是的。树木和其他植物帮助清洁空气。

Jenny: That's true. It's pleasant ① /'pleznt/ to walk in the forest. When the weather is sunny and hot, you can sit in the shade ② /ʃeɪd/ under a tree. It's nice and cool.
对的。在森林里散步令人愉快。当天气晴朗而且炎热时，你可以在树下的阴凉处坐着。这很凉爽宜人。

Danny: I'm hungry! Maybe I can eat a plant!
我饿了！也许我可以吃植物！

Brian: Sure, Danny! Look, there is an apple tree over there! 当然，丹尼！看，那儿有一棵苹果树！

Danny: Is there a donut tree? 有面包圈树吗?

Brian: Donuts don't grow on trees!
面包圈不长在树上！

Jenny: Trees and other plants are important to people. They help ③ us fulfill /fʊl'fɪl/ our basic ④ /'beɪsɪk/ needs. 树木和其他植物对人们很重要。它们帮助我们满足我们的基本需要。

Brian: That's for sure. People use trees and other plants in many ways. The trees and plants take energy from ⑤ the sun and turn it into food. Medicine and clothing are also made from ⑥ trees and plants.
那是肯定的。人们在许多方面使用树木和其他植物。树木和植物从太阳那里获取能量，并且把它变成食物。药和衣服也是由树木和植物制成的。

Jenny: The forest is important to animals, too. Many animals live in the forest and eat the fruit from the trees. They eat other plants, too.
森林对动物也很重要。许多动物住在森林里并且吃树上的水果。它们也吃其他植物。

Brian: And plants cover the soil /sɔɪl/. That way, the wind and water don't carry the soil away ⑦. Plants also make everything look beautiful.
植物覆盖着土壤。那样的话，风和水不会把土壤带走。植物也使一切事物看起来很美丽。

Danny: In a word ⑧, we can't live without plants! 总之，没有植物我们不能生存！

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and tick the items mentioned. 阅读课文并把提到的项目打对钩。

- ☐ People can eat plants or use them as medicine. 人们可以吃植物或把它们用作药。
- ☐ Plants help make the air clean and fresh. 植物有助于使空气干净、清新。
- ☐ Many animals live in the forest. 许多动物住在森林里。
- ☐ Books, paper, pencils and erasers all come from plants. 书、纸、铅笔和橡皮都来自植物。
- ☐ Animals eat the fruit from the trees. 动物吃树上的水果。
- ☐ The plants cover the soil and can stop the

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

dust. 植物覆盖着土壤并且能阻挡灰尘。

□ When the weather is sunny and hot, people can sit in the shade under a tree. 当天气晴朗而且炎热时，人们可以坐在树下的阴凉处。

□ The plants make everything look beautiful. 植物使一切事物看起来很美丽。

□ People use wood from trees to build houses and furniture.
人们用来自树林的木材来建造房子和家具。

2 Complete the passage with the correct forms of the words in the box.
用方框中的词的正确形式完成短文。

basic 基本的	shade 阴凉处	forest 森林
cover 覆盖	pleasant 令人愉快的	

There are many trees and plants. It's _____ to walk in the forest. When the weather is sunny and hot, you can sit in the _____ under a tree. Trees and other plants are one of our _____ needs for life. Many things are made from trees and plants. Most animals live in the _____ and eat the fruit from the trees. And plants _____ the soil. That way, the wind and water don't carry the soil away.

有许多的树木和植物。在森林里散步很_____。当天气晴朗而且炎热时，你可以坐在树下的_____。树木和其他的植物是我们生存的_____需求之一。许多东西是由树木和植物制成的。大多数的动物住在_____里并且吃树上的水果。植物_____土壤。那样的话，风和水就不会把土壤带走。

3 Work in pairs. Think about why we need plants. Discuss it and fill in the mind map. You can use some ideas from Activity 1.
结对练习。想一想我们为什么需要植物。讨论一下并填到思维图中。你可以用活动 1 中的一些想法。

Functions of trees (plants) 树木（植物）的功能

Food or medicine 食物或药：_____

Shelter 居所：_____

Clothing and school things 衣服和学校用品：_____

Environment 环境：_____

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

（答案见 284 页）

阅读策略

跳读查找法（先读题干，再读文章，这样能加强阅读的针对性，提高做题的准确率。比如，细节题主要考查考生对某句话的理解，我们可以根据题干内容从原文中找到相关的句子，然后进行比较和分析，确定最佳答案。）

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读 Lesson 8，回答问题

1. What have you learned from this text?
（主旨大意题）

A. We should plant more trees.

B. Plants are important.

C. Plants make the air clean.

D. Animals like to eat plants.

二、细读文章，完成下列任务

2. ⊙ Trees and other plants help us _____.
（细节理解题）

A. fulfill our basic needs

B. live sadly

C. look beautiful

D. destroy the environment

3. Why do we need trees? （推理判断题）

A. Because trees help clean the air.

B. Because trees can provide shade for people.

C. Because trees can offer food to people.

D. All of the above.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

·考点批注　·考点应用

辨析：pleasant 与 pleased

① pleasant 既可作表语也可作定语，多用于描述人或事物的性质

② pleased 多描述人的感情，表示“某人对某事（或某人）感到高兴的或满意的”。

★ **It's pleasant to walk in the forest.**

① **pleasant** /'pleznt/ *adj.* 使人愉快的；舒适的

e.g. This is a pleasant journey.
这是个令人愉快的旅行。
If you jump the queue, others will not be pleased.
如果你插队，别人会不高兴的。

pleased adj. 高兴的
pleasant adj. 令人愉快的
pleasure n. 快乐
pleasing adj. 使人愉快的

考题在线 1 Miss Green is really a _____ teacher. Her lessons are interesting.

A. pleasure　B. pleased　C. pleasant　D. please

★ **When the weather is sunny and hot, you can sit in the shade under a tree.**

② **shade** /ʃeɪd/ *n.* (an area that is dark and cool under or behind sth., for example a tree or building, because the sun's light does not get to it) 树阴；阴凉处 in the shade 在树阴下；在阴凉处

e.g. Some girls are playing games in the shade. 一些女孩正在树阴下玩游戏。

★ **They help us fulfill our basic needs.**

③ **help (sb.) (to) do sth.** 帮助（某人）做某事 其中 to 可以省略

e.g. The cleaner helps clean the floor.
这台除垢器有助于清洁地板。
Jack likes to help his sister learn English.=
Jack likes to help his sister with English.
杰克喜欢帮助他的妹妹学习英语。

help sb. with sth.（在某方面帮助某人）常与 help sb.(to)do sth.（帮助某人做某事）进行同义句转换。

④ **basic** /'beɪsɪk/ *adj.* 基本的；基础的 basic 在句中可作定语或表语，常与介词 to 连用。

e.g. These are the basic rules of playing basketball. 这些是打篮球的基本规则。
Drums are basic to African music. 鼓是非洲音乐的基本乐器。

★ **The trees and plants take energy from the sun and turn it into food.**

⑤ **take...from...** 从……获取…… from 是介词，后面可接名词、代词或动名词。

e.g. We can take energy from the food and drinks.
我们能从食物和饮料中获取能量。

辨析：be made from 与 be made of

① be made from 从成品中看不出原材料，制成物已改变了原材料的性质。

★ **Medicine and clothing are also made from trees and plants.**

⑥ **[高频] be made from** 由……制成

e.g. The cake is made from a mixture of flour, sugar and eggs.
这个蛋糕是由面粉、糖和鸡蛋的混合物做成的。
The desks are made of wood. 这些桌子是由木头制成的。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 2 Your gloves should be made _____ leather, for they feel soft and smooth. [宿迁]

A. in B. on C. for D. of

点拨：考查介词。句意：你的手套应该是皮革制成的，因为它们摸起来又柔软又光滑。be made in 在……制造，后接制造的地点；B 和 C 项无此搭配；be made of 由……制成，后接制作的原材料，leather 为制作的原材料。

② be made of 由……制成，指从原料到制成品，原有性质不变。

That way, the wind and water don't carry the soil away.

⑦ **carry...away 把……带走 / 搬走**

e.g. Would you please help me carry the heavy bag away?
请你帮我把这个沉重的袋子搬走好吗？

与 away 有关的其他短语
take...away 把……带走
put...away 把……收起来 / 放好
go away 走开

In a word, we can't live without plants!

⑧ **in a word 总而言之，相当于** in one word

e.g. In a word, I can't go out as I have many things to do.
总而言之，我不能出去，因为我有许多事情要做。

Can I have a word with you? 我能和你谈一谈吗？

He had words with his wife last night.
昨晚他和他的妻子吵了一架。

In other words, you'll come instead of him. Right?
换句话说，你将代替他来。对吗？

与 word 有关的其他短语：
① have a word with... 与……谈一谈
② have words with... 与……争吵
③ in other words 换言之，换句话说

考题在线答案 1. C 2. D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见 284 页）

一、根据提示及句意完成句子

1. Food is our _____ (基本的) need.
2. They have a _____ (令人愉快的) trip.
3. People like to have a rest in the _____ (阴凉处) of the tree.
4. Trees and other plants help us _____ (满足) some needs.
5. The air is always clean and fresh in the _____ (森林).

二、用方框中所给短语的适当形式填空

be made from	turn...into
carry...away	in a word
take energy from	

6. _____, man can't live without water.
7. The storm _____ the house _____.
8. Paper _____ wood.
9. The trees _____ the sun and turn it into food.
10. They're going to _____ the playing fields _____ a car park.

三、连词成句

11. wheat, flour, made, from, is
_____?
12. fulfill, basic, what, needs, our, can
_____?
13. a, it's, have, pleasant, trip, to
_____.
14. ways, help, in, trees, many, people
_____.
15. eggs, we, energy, take, could, milk, and, from
_____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 9 Gardening with Mary

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注　　原文译文 · 导读

Pre-reading（读前）

批 体裁：说明文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What's your favourite TV program? 你最喜欢的电视节目是什么?
- Have you ever watched a program about gardening on TV?
  你曾经在电视上看过关于园艺的节目吗?

批 文章结构：并列式

While-reading（读中）

- What does Mary Green think of gardening?
  玛丽格林认为园艺怎么样?
- How many popular books about gardening has Mary Green written? What are they?
  玛丽格林写了多少本受欢迎的有关园艺的书? 它们是什么?

批 句子：用疑问句开头能更吸引读者，引起读者的阅读兴趣。

Show: Gardening with Mary 节目：《和玛丽一起做园艺工作》
Time: Saturdays, 2: 00 p.m. 时间：星期六，下午两点
TV channel /'tʃænl/: ABS (channel 53) 电视频道：ABS(53 频道)

课文朗读

Do you like gardening? Don't miss"Gardening with Mary" on Saturday afternoons. Mary Green will show① you the best way to grow all kinds of plants. She has lots of good advice② for every gardener /'gɑ:dnə/! 你喜欢园艺吗? 别错过星期六下午的《和玛丽一起做园艺工作》。玛丽格林将给你展示种植各种各样植物的最佳方法。她有许多好的建议给每个园艺家!

批 句子：（画"～"处）三个特殊疑问句连续使用，与下文的 all the answers 相呼应，起到了一个很好的效果，让观众期待该节目的播出。同时也让人们看到了一个精通园艺、热爱园艺的 Mary Green.

What kinds of flowers will grow best in your garden? When is the best time to plant vegetables? How much water do new trees need? Mary knows. She has all the answers! 什么种类的花将在你的花园里长得最好呢? 种植蔬菜最好的时间是什么时候? 新树需要多少水? 玛丽知道。她有所有的答案!

批 句子：一句话概括了 Mary Green 对园艺的总体评价。

"Gardening is a very enjoyable hobby," says Mary Green."First, you have fun③ working in your garden. I just love to dig in the soil! Then, you can enjoy fresh flowers, vegetables and fruit from your own④ garden." "园艺是一个非常有趣的爱好，" 玛丽格林说。"首先，你在你的花园里工作很有趣。我只是喜欢挖土! 然后，你可以在你自己的花园里享受新鲜的花朵、蔬菜和水果。"

Mary Green has written many popular books about gardening: *Grow Your Own Food*, *Green Is My Favourite Colour*, *Smell the Roses* and more. Now she has a TV show! Watch Mary at work in her own garden.She will

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

plant an apple tree. She will show you the best place to grow potatoes. She will tell you about her favourite flowers: roses. 玛丽格林已经写了许多受欢迎的关于园艺的书：《种你自己的食物》、《绿色是我最喜欢的颜色》、《嗅玫瑰芬芳》，甚至更多。现在她有一个电视节目！观看玛丽在她自己的花园里工作。她将种一棵苹果树。她将给你展示种植土豆的最佳地方。她将给你讲述她最喜欢的花：玫瑰。

批 词语赏析：（画"～"处）just 的正确使用，与前一句的回答"No"衔接得体、恰当，使文章结构紧凑。

"I have a special show about roses," says Mary Green."I love roses! Roses smell ⑤ so wonderful. Are roses difficult to grow? No! You just have to ⑥ choose the right kinds of roses for your garden." "关于玫瑰我有一个独特的节目，"玛丽格林说。"我喜欢玫瑰！玫瑰很好闻。玫瑰种起来困难吗？不！你只需为你的花园选择适当的玫瑰品种。"

批 修辞：（左边画"～"处）运用了设问的修辞手法，起到了强调的作用，即强调了种植玫瑰花并不困难。

Log ⑦ /lɒg/ onto our website and post your questions there. In every show, she will read the posts and answer your questions. 登录我们的网站，把你的问题发送到那里。在每期的节目中，她将读邮件并回答你的问题。

批 句子：（画"="处）用祈使句来结尾，简洁明了，且语气中肯，既起到了提示的作用又可以给读者留下深刻的印象。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 （见70页）

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and choose the correct answers. 阅读课文选择正确的答案。

1. "Gardening with Mary" is on _____.
   《和玛丽一起做园艺工作》是在 _____。
   ☐ Saturday afternoons 星期六下午 ☐ Saturday evenings 星期六晚上
2. Mary Green will show us the best way to grow _____ on the show.
   玛丽格林将在节目中给我们展示种 _____ 最好的方法。
   ☐ roses 玫瑰 ☐ all kinds of plants 各种各样的植物
3. Mary Green thinks roses are _____ to grow. 玛丽格林认为玫瑰种植是 _____。
   ☐ easy 容易的 ☐ difficult 困难的

2 Are the books below written by Mary? Listen to the names of the books and tick the ones mentioned. 下面的这些书是玛丽写的吗？听这些书的名字并把提到的那些打上钩。

课文听力

A Guide to Planting Roses《玫瑰种植手册》○
Green Is My Favourite Colour《绿色是我最喜欢的颜色》○
Planting for Fun《种植为了消遣》○
Secrets to Farming《耕作的秘诀》○
Grow Your Own Food《种你自己的食物》○
Creating a Forest Garden《创造一个森林公园》○
Smell the Roses《嗅玫瑰的芬芳》○

3 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in the box. 用方框中所给词的正确形式填空。

answer 回答 / 答案	plant 种植 / 植物	water 浇水 / 水	garden 花园 / 做园艺工作	show 节目 / 展示

1. They especially like _____ flowers.They have a garden full of _____.
   他们尤其喜欢 _____ 花。他们有一个栽满 _____ 的花园。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. This flower needs lots of _____. You should _____it every day.
这种花需要许多 _____。你应该每天给它 _____。

3. Who can _____ this question? The _____ is very easy.
谁能 _____ 这个问题？ _____ 很容易。

4. Mary likes _____ so much. She spends most of her time in the _____.
玛丽非常喜欢 _____。她大部分的时间都花在 _____ 里。

5. Yesterday, Mr.Cox _____ us the best way to make noodles on the TV _____.
昨天，考克斯先生在电视 _____ 里为我们 _____ 了制作面条的最好方法。

Learn to learn 学会学习

The words in the box play different roles in each sentence above. How are they different? Can you find more words like those? 方框中的单词在上面的每个句子中都有不同的作用。它们怎样不同？你能找出更多的像那些词一样的单词吗？

4 **Suppose you are writing to Mary, what questions would you like to ask her about gardening?** 假设你正在给玛丽写信，关于园艺你想要问她一些什么问题？

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注

show+ +

show+ + to +

当 是人称代词时，应用人称代词的宾格形式。

advice 的同义词是 suggestion，但 suggestion 是可数名词。

advise 是 advice 的动词形式，意为“建议；劝告”，后接名词、代词、动词的-ing 形式或 that 从句。advise sb. to do sth. 意为“建议某人做某事”。

•考点应用

★ **Mary Green will show you the best way to grow all kinds of plants.**

① **show** /ʃəʊ/ *v.* 展示

e.g. This boy will show you the way.
这个男孩会给你带路。
I showed my driving license to the policeman. =
I showed the policeman my driving license.
我向警察出示了我的驾驶执照。

考题在线 1 Lucy showed me a useful book in the library.(改为同义句)
Lucy _____ a useful book _____ in the library.

★ **She has lots of good advice for every gardener!**

② **advice** /əd'vaɪs/ *n.* 建议；劝告

advice 是不可数名词。一条建议：a piece of advice。

e.g. We must take the advice from the masses.
我们一定要听取群众的意见。
He gave me a piece of advice on how to learn English.
他给了我一条有关如何学习英语的建议。
I made a few suggestions about how we could spend the afternoon.
我提了几条关于我们怎样度过下午 (时光) 的建议。
I advised meeting at 4:30 p.m. 我建议下午 4：30 见面。
She advised her husband to give up smoking, but he wouldn't.
她建议她的丈夫戒烟，但他不会 (戒烟)。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 2 —Could you please give me some _____ on how to learn English _____?

—Sure. Practice makes perfect. [齐齐哈尔]

A. advice; well B. advice; good C. advices; well

点拨：词语辨析法。advice 为不可数名词，没有复数形式；learn English well 意为“学英语学得好”，此处用副词 well 修饰动词 learn。

First, you have fun working in your garden.

③ **have fun doing 做……有趣**

e.g. We have fun with our friends.
我们和我们的朋友一起很开心。

I have fun dancing. 我跳舞跳得很开心。

They have fun in the park. = They have a good time in the park. = They enjoy themselves in the park.
他们在公园里玩得很开心。

have fun 常用于：
- have fun with sb./sth.
- have fun doing sth.

have fun 可以和 have a good time，enjoy oneself 互换使用。

Then, you can enjoy fresh flowers, vegetables and fruit from your own garden.

④ **own** /əʊn/ *adj.* & *pron.* **自己的（东西）**

e.g. This book is my own. 这本书是我自己的。（作代词）

I want to own the house. 我想拥有这个房子。（作动词）

This is my own car. 这是我自己的车。（作形容词）

I have no house of my own. 我没有自己的房子。

The house was built on his own last year.
这所房子是去年他独自建的。

辨析：of one's own 与 on one's own

① of one's own 是（某人）自己的，一般用作定语。of 前常接名词或不定代词。

② on one's own 独自地；独立地；一般用作状语。

Roses smell so wonderful.

⑤ **smell** *link v.* **闻起来**

e.g. The dinner smells good. Enjoy yourself!
晚饭闻起来不错。尽情品尝！

Please smell these sweet flowers!
请闻闻这些芬芳的花朵！

Bob and Sally hate the smell of onions.
鲍勃和萨莉讨厌洋葱的气味。

后常接形容词作表语。

smell 还可作名词，意为“气味”。

与 smell 有相同用法的还有：look（看起来），feel（摸起来），taste（尝起来），sound（听起来）。

You just have to choose the right kinds of roses for your garden.

⑥ **have to 意为“必须；不得不”。**

辨析：have to 与 must

辨析		
	have to	着重于客观需要，含有“不得不”的意味。有时态变化。否定形式意为“不必”。
	must	强调主观看法，认为有义务、有必要。无人称、数和时态变化。否定形式意为“禁止”。

have to/has to → had to → will have to

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



e.g. I have to study for a test. 我不得不为考试学习。
I must study hard. 我必须努力学习。

考题在线 3 You _____ wear sports shoes when you climb a mountain. [枣庄]

A. can't B. shouldn't C. mustn't D. have to

点拨:can't 意为“不能”; shouldn't 意为“不应该”; mustn't 意为“禁止”; have to 意为“必须”。句意为:当你爬山的时候,你必须穿运动鞋。

log onto 是动词短语,意为“登录,登入”,后面常接网站等名词。

★**Log onto our website and post your questions there.**

⑦ **log** *v.* (to put information in an official record or write a record of events) 登录

e.g. I like movies. I often log onto some websites about movies.
我喜欢电影。我经常登录有关电影的网站。

考题在线答案 1. showed; to me 2. A 3. D

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见284页)

一、用方框中所给词或词组的适当形式填空

advice	log	swim	nice	on one's own

1. The children had fun _____ in the river in summer.
2. The chicken smells _____.
3. Yesterday Lucy gave us some _____ to make noodles.
4. She often _____ onto the QQ in her free time.
5. I have very strict parents who won't let me do anything _____. [杭州改编]

二、单项选择

6. —Could you please offer me some _____ in my research? [达州]
—Yes, sure.
A. idea B. message
C. suggestion D. advice
7. Excuse me,can you _____ me the way to the Zhongshan Park?
A. show B. pick
C. call D. invite
8. —Dad, must we wait until the light becomes green?
—Yes, I'm afraid we _____. That's the traffic rule. [河南]
A. can B. may
C. have to D. need
9. —The cheese doesn't _____ good. Why don't we go to buy some fresh cheese?
—Sounds great! [天津]
A. see B. find
C. sound D. taste
10. They have fun _____ with their friends on the Internet.
A. chat B. to chat
C. chats D. chatting

三、连词成句

11. flowers, good, the, smell
_____.
12. English, he, fun, learning, has
_____.
13. log, the, let's, onto, website
_____.
14. have, a, we, special, about, show, sports
_____.
15. you, please, give, me, some, advice, would
_____?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 10 Make Your Garden Grow!

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Do you like gardening? 你喜欢园艺吗?
- What is fun about growing a garden? 种植花园有什么乐趣吗?

课文朗读

There are many ways to grow a garden. You must consider ① /kən'sɪdə/ many things when you decide ② to begin gardening. 种植花园有很多方法。当你决定开始做园艺工作时你必须考虑许多事情。

Does your garden get enough sun? That's important. Most plants need a lot of sunlight /'sʌnlaɪt/ to grow well. 你的花园里的阳光充足吗?那很重要。大多数的植物需要许多阳光才能成长得好。

Does your garden have good soil? You can test /test/ it to make sure. ③ To make the soil rich enough, you can put compost /'kɒmpɒst/ in your garden. It is the best food for plants. 你的花园里有肥沃的土壤吗?你可以通过检测它来确定。为了使土壤足够肥沃,你可以在你的花园里撒一些混合肥料。它是植物的最好养料。

Is it easy to water your garden? Plants need water to grow strong and stay healthy. Usually, rain waters ④ plants, but sometimes there is not enough rain, and the garden gets dry ⑤ /draɪ/. You need to keep water nearby /'nɪəbaɪ/.

给你的花园浇水容易吗?植物需要水来生长得强壮并保持健康。通常,雨水灌溉植物,但是有时没有足够的雨水,花园会变干。你需要附近有水源。

What else do you need to consider for your garden? Think about animals. Rabbits, squirrels /'skwɪrəlz/ and many other animals will try to ⑥ get into your garden and eat your plants. You need to make a fence /fens/. It can help keep these small animals away from ⑦ your garden.

你需要为你的花园考虑其他的什么吗?考虑一下动物。兔子、松鼠和许多其他的动物会试图进入你的花园,吃你的植物。你需要做一个栅栏。它能帮助使这些小动物远离你的花园。

Finally, don't forget to have fun. That is the whole purpose ⑧ /'pɜːpəs/ of growing a garden. You have fun planting it. You have fun taking care of it. And best of all, you have fun eating all the great food from it.

最后,别忘了玩得开心。那是种植花园的全部目的。你种它是有趣的。你照顾它是有趣的。最好的是,你吃到来自花园的所有可口的食物是有趣的。

Hands-on Activity 实践活动

Plant your own seed in a pot. Just follow these steps:

在一个罐子里种你自己的种子。就按照这些步骤:

- Dig a small hole. Put the seed in it.
  挖一个小坑,把种子放进去。
- Cover your seed with soil.
  用土壤把你的种子盖住。
- Water your seed every day. It can't water itself! 每天给你的种子浇水。它不会自己浇水!
- Put it in the sun.Plants need sunshine!
  把它放在阳光下。植物需要阳光!

Soon, your seed will grow roots and a stem. Then it will grow a leaf and then another leaf. Your seed will grow into a plant. 不久,你的种子将长出根和茎。然后它会长出一片叶子,然后又长出一片叶子。你的种子将会长成一株植物。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 What do you need to consider to grow a good garden? Read the lesson and tick the factors mentioned.

种植一个好的花园你需要考虑些什么?阅读课文并把涉及的因素打上钩。

☐ heat 热量　☐ light 光线
☐ space 空间　☐ a fence 一个栅栏
☐ temperature 气温　☐ climate 气候
☐ water 水　☐ air 空气
☐ soil 土壤　☐ sunlight 阳光

2 Read the lesson again and write true(T) or false (F).

再阅读课文并写出对(T)或错(F)。

1. Before we begin gardening, there are many things we need to consider.
我们开始园艺工作前,有许多我们需要考虑的事情。 (　)
2. Few plants need a lot of sunlight to grow well.
很少有植物需要许多阳光才能长得好。 (　)
3. Sometimes there is not enough rain, and the garden gets dry.
有时没有足够的雨,花园会变干。 (　)
4. A fence can help keep small animals away from your garden.
一个栅栏能帮助使小动物远离你的花园。(　)
5. Getting exercise is the whole purpose of growing a garden.
种植花园的全部目的是得到锻炼。 (　)

3 The words in italics are from this unit. Tick the correct answers to complete the sentences.

斜体单词来自这个单元。给正确的答案打钩来完成句子。

1. If you put one thing _____ another thing to hide it or keep it safe and warm, you *cover* it.
如果你放一个东西 _____ 另一个东西来隐藏它或使它安全和温暖,你盖住它。
☐ over 在……上面　☐ under 在……下面
2. Before you plant a garden, you should *consider* or _____ carefully about something.
在你种植花园前,你应该考虑或认真地 _____ 某件事情。
☐ look 看　☐ think 想
3. The *purpose* means the _____ for something.
目的的意思是某事的 _____。
☐ reason 原因　☐ time 时间
4. The engineer *tests* the machine to _____ if it works well.
工程师测试机器来 _____ 它是否工作良好。
☐ check 检查　☐ make 制造

PROJECT 方案

WHAT DO YOU WANT TO PLANT?

你想种植什么?

Suppose you have a garden, what do you want to plant? Write a passage and present it to your classmates.

假设你有一个花园,你想种什么?写一篇文章并把它展示给你的同学。

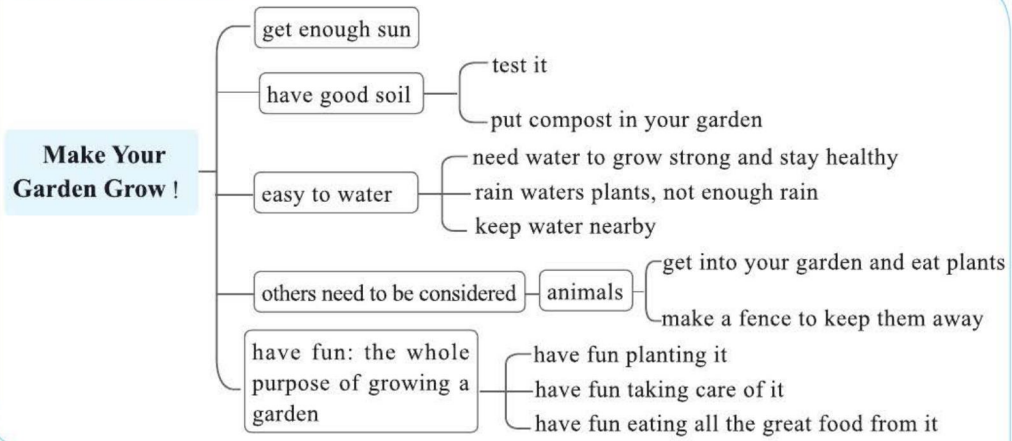
Example: 例子:

I want to plant vegetables in my garden. I'd like to plant tomatoes and eggplants. I will water them on time. My grandpa is good at farming. I will ask him for advice. I will have fresh vegetables. Gardening is fun!

我想在我的花园里种蔬菜。我想种西红柿和茄子。我将按时给它们浇水。我祖父擅长干农活。我将向他征求意见。我将拥有新鲜的蔬菜。园艺很有趣!

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★ **You must consider many things when you decide to begin gardening.**

① **consider** /kən'sɪdə/ *v.* (to think about sth. carefully, especially in order to make a decision) 认为；仔细考虑

难点，重点！牢记！敲黑板

e.g. We should consider the environmental problems carefully.

我们应该认真考虑环境问题。

We consider him honest.

我们认为他诚实。

consider 作“认为”讲时，常用于 consider sb./sth.+形容词 /(as+) 名词结构及其被动语态 be considered as。

Mo Yan is considered as one of the greatest writers in the world.

莫言被认为是世界上最伟大的作家之一。

I'm considering going on a trip to Chengde this summer.

我正在考虑今年夏天去承德旅游。

We have to consider what to do(= what we should do) next.

我们必须得考虑下一步做什么。

consider 作“考虑”讲时，常用于以下结构：
① consider +名词 / 代词 / 动名词
② consider +从句 / 疑问词+不定式

考题在线 1 杨绛被她的丈夫钱钟书视为最贤的妻，最才的女。

Yang Jiang was _____ _____ the most virtuous wife and the most talented female by her husband, Qian Zhongshu. [烟台]

② **decide** /dɪ'saɪd/ *v.* 决定

decide 后接动词不定式。“decide to do sth.”相当于“make up one's mind to do sth.”，表示“决定做某事”。

e.g. He decided to work harder to catch up with other students.

他决定更加努力地学习，赶上其他学生。

They decided not to watch the football match on Sunday.

他们决定星期天不去看足球比赛了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

名词形式 decision
make a decision
做决定；下决心

We made a decision to go to Beijing next week.
我们决定下周去北京。

考题在线 2 —Do you have any plans for the coming vacation?
—Sure. We decide _____ Sansha in July. [重庆A卷]
A. visit B. visiting C. visited D. to visit

★ **You can test it to make sure.**

③ **make sure 确信；查明；弄清楚**

e.g. She looked around to make sure that she was alone.
她环视四周，来确保只有她一个人。

与 sure 有关的短语：
① be sure of/that 确信；有把握
② be sure to do sth. 一定/务必做某事
③ for sure 肯定；无疑

He is sure of his success. 他确信他会成功。
He is sure that he will succeed. 他确信他会成功。
He is sure to succeed. 他一定会成功。
No one knows for sure the reform of NMET now.
现在没有人确切地知道高考英语的变革情况。

考题在线 3 There aren't any tickets left for the concert. You'd better _____ that you get one today.
A. make sure of B. make a decision
C. make sure D. make plans

★ **Usually, rain waters plants, but sometimes there is not enough rain, and the garden gets dry.**

④ **water** /ˈwɔːtə/ *v.* **给……浇水；给……供水**

e.g. You can water the flowers every three days.
你可以每三天给花浇一次水。
There is a lot of water in the river. 河里有很多水。 → 用作不可数名词

⑤ **dry** /draɪ/ *adj.* **干的**

e.g. The soil is too dry to plant. 这土壤太干燥，不宜种植。（作表语）
Store onions in a cool dry place. 将洋葱存放在凉爽干燥的地方。（作定语）

辨析：try to do sth. 与 try doing sth.
① try to do sth. 强调付出努力，但不一定成功。其否定形式是 try not to do sth. 尽量不做某事。
② try doing sth. 尝试着做某事

★ **Rabbits, squirrels and many other animals will try to get into your garden and eat your plants.**

⑥ **try to do sth. 设法/尽量做某事**

e.g. He tries to eat less meat. 他尽量少吃肉。
I tried gardening but didn't succeed.
我试着做园艺，但未成功。


try doing 尝试着去做


try to do 努力去做

★ **It can help keep these small animals away from your garden.**

⑦ **keep...away from... 使……远离……**

e.g. You'd better keep the child away from the fire. 你最好让孩子远离火。
Keep away from the edge of the cliff. 不要靠近悬崖边。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Keep the enemy out of the country. 御敌人于国门之外。

China is trying to keep up with the pace of the world. 中国正努力跟上世界的脚步。

Please remember to keep in touch with us. 请记得和我们保持联系。

考题在线 4 Some of the tired students keep their eyes _____ in breaks.

A. opened B. close C. closed D. open

与 keep 有关的短语：

① keep away (from) 远离；避免接近

② keep...out (of sth.) 使……不进入（……）；把……关在外面

③ keep up with 跟上

④ keep in touch (with) （与……）保持联系

That is the whole purpose of growing a garden.

⑧ **purpose** /'pɜ:pəs/ *n.* 目的；目标；意图

e.g. Our campaign's main purpose is to raise money.

我们这次活动的主要目的就是筹款。

Parents go to the city for the purpose of making money. 父母去城里是为了挣钱。

I didn't hurt you on purpose. 我不是故意伤害你的。

与 purpose 有关的短语：

① for the purpose of 目的；为了

② on purpose 故意

考题在线答案 1. considered as 2. D 3. C 4. C

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见285页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示完成单词

1. Now they must c_____ what to do next.
2. Our class is having a t_____.
3. She d_____ her eyes and continued to work.
4. What is the p_____ of your visit?
5. She looked up the word in the dictionary to make s_____.

二、单项选择

6. It is sure _____.

A. raining B. rains C. to rain D. rained

7. What is your purpose _____ learning French?

A. in B. at C. of D. on

8. The fridge doesn't work. Why not consider _____ a new one? [兰州]

A. buy B. bought

C. to buy D. buying

9. We should _____ the children away from the drugs.

A. do B. let C. keep D. run

10. —May I use your MP4 today, Paul?

—_____. I will not use it.

A. No, you can't B. I've no idea

C. Sure, go ahead D. Not at all

三、根据汉语提示完成句子

11. 没有足够的雨水，花园变得干燥。

There is not _____ rain, and the garden _____ _____.

12. 你可以检测土壤来确定它是否肥沃。

You can _____ the soil to_____ _____whether it is rich.

13. 你需要为你的花园考虑其他的什么吗?

What _____ do you need to _____ _____ your garden?

14. 他父亲给了他一些远离吸烟的建议。

His father gave him some advice on _____ _____ from cigarettes.

15. 为什么你不试着骑自行车去学校呢？

Why didn't you _____ _____ a bike to go to school?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 11 Amazing Plants

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- How many plants can you name? 你能说出多少植物的名字?
- Have you ever heard about any special plants? 你曾经听说过一些特别的植物吗?

A flying flower? 会飞的花?

课文朗读

Look at this plant. Its flowers look like egrets /'i:grɪts/. What are egrets? They are a kind of bird. Because this plant's flowers look like flying egrets, people call it the egret flower. It grows in eastern /'i:stən/ Asia. Isn't it beautiful? 看这个植物。它的花看起来像白鹭。白鹭是什么? 它们是一种鸟。因为这个植物的花看起来像飞着的白鹭，人们叫它白鹭花。它生长在东亚。难道它不漂亮吗?

Can plants be shy? 植物会害羞吗?

We all know that people can be shy. But how can a plant be shy /ʃaɪ/? When something touches this plant's leaves, they close up tightly /'taɪtlɪ/. After a few minutes, the leaves open up again. This plant is fun for small children to play with. 我们都知道人会害羞。但是一株植物怎么会害羞呢? 当有东西碰到这个植物的叶子时，它们紧紧地合起来。几分钟后，叶子又张开。这个植物对小孩子来说玩着很有趣。

What makes a tree laugh? 什么使一棵树发笑?

When it comes to laughing, this tree is really funny. This is because the fruit of this tree has a hole in it. If the wind blows, this amazing tree "laughs". When people first hear① it laughing, they are usually quite surprised and begin to laugh along with② the tree. It grows in the middle of Africa. 当提到笑时，这棵树真的很有趣。这是因为这棵树的果实上有个洞在里面。如果风吹的话，这棵令人惊奇的树就"笑"。当人们第一次听到它笑时，他们通常会感到相当奇怪，然后开始和这棵树一起笑。它生长在非洲的中部。

Can a fossil /'fɒsl/ be alive③? 化石会是活着的吗?

Look at this plant. It grows in the southwest /ˌsaʊθ'west/ of Africa. Like most plants, it has roots. But it has only two leaves and a stem. Its two leaves continue to grow for its whole life. Does it look old? This plant can live as long as④ 1 500 years, so people call it a living /'lɪvɪŋ/ fossil. 看这个植物。它生长在非洲的西南部。像大多数植物一样，它有根。但是它只有两片叶子和一枝茎。它的两片叶子在它整个生命中一直成长。它看起来老吗? 这个植物能活长达 1 500 年，因此人们叫它活化石。

课文听力

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Listen and number the sentences. 听并给句子排序。

☐ When you touch this kind of plant, it closes up tightly. 当你碰这种植物时，它紧紧地合住。

☐ This plant can live as long as 1 500 years. It really is a fossil.
这个植物能活长达 1 500 年。它真的是个化石。

☐ Look at these flowers! They look like flying egrets! 看这些花! 它们看起来像飞着的白鹭!

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

□ This amazing tree laughs when the wind blows. 当风吹时这棵令人惊奇的树发笑。

2 Read the lesson and fill in the table. 阅读课文并填表。

Plant 植物	Place 地点	Feature 特征
	South America, China and other countries. 南美洲，中国和其他国家。	When something touches its leaves, they close up tightly. After a few minutes, they open up again. 当有东西碰到它的叶子时，它们紧紧地合住。几分钟后，它们又张开。

3 Fill in the blanks with the correct words. The first letter is given. 用正确的词填空。首字母已给出。

1. Don't t_____ the dish! It's very hot! 不要 _____ 盘子！它很烫！
2. China is a country in e_____ Asia. 中国是 _____ 亚的一个国家。
3. He was too s_____ to talk to others. 他太 _____ 而不能和别人谈话。
4. She cut her hair very short and everyone was s_____ by her new look.
   她把她的头发剪得很短，每个人都对她的新外表 _____。

4 Look for more amazing plants and talk about one of them.You can talk about the following aspects. 寻找更多的令人惊奇的植物，并谈论它们中的一个。你们可以谈论下面的几个方面。

Task tips: 任务提示：

What is it? Where does it live? What does it look like? Why do you think it is amazing?
它是什么？它生长在哪里？它看起来像什么？你认为它为什么令人惊奇？

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用

★ When people first hear it laughing, they are usually quite surprised and begin to laugh along with the tree.

① [高频] hear sb. doing sth. 听到某人正在做某事 敲黑板 高频考点，易混点，牢记！

e.g. I hear someone knocking at the door. Please go and see who it is.
我听到有人在敲门。请去看一下是谁。

I heard them talk about that matter yesterday.
昨天我听见他们谈论那件事了。

I often hear the child cry at home.
我经常听见那个孩子在家哭。

•考点批注

① hear sb. doing sth. 意为"听到某人正在做某事"，强调听见的动作正在进行。

② hear sb. do sth. 表示"听到某人做了某事"，强调听到某人做某事的全过程。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线1 Listen! I hear someone _____ in the classroom.

A. sing　　B. sings

C. to sing　　D. singing

点拨：运用关键词法。hear sb. do sth. 意为“听到某人做某事”；hear sb. doing sth. 意为“听到某人正在做某事”。根据 Listen 可知听到的动作正在发生。

② **along with 和……一起**

当主语后跟 with, along with, together with 等修饰成分时，谓语动词不受这些修饰成分的影响，仍与前边的主语保持一致。

e.g. I want to go to the party. Can you go along with me?

我想去参加那个聚会。你能和我一起去吗？ 相当于 together with

The boy along with his parents has been to the Great Wall twice.

(主语为 The boy) 这个男孩和他的父母一起去过两次长城。

Linda's parents along with her want to go to Sanya for a holiday.

(主语为 Linda's parents) 琳达的父母和她想去三亚度假。

考题在线2 My sister with my parents _____ dumplings when I got home yesterday evening. [兰州]

A. are making　　B. is making

C. was making　　D. were making

方法真题练

点拨：运用主谓一致法。句意：我昨晚到家时，我妹妹和我父母在包饺子。A 主语为复数，现在进行时；B 主语为单数，现在进行时；C 主语为单数，过去进行时；D 主语为复数，过去进行时。主语 My sister 为单三，时间为 yesterday evening。

辨析：alive, living, live 与 lively

① alive 活着的
既可指人，也可指物，可作表语或后置定语。

② living 活着的；健在的
既可用于指人，也可用于指物。在句中可作表语或前置定语。

③ live 活的
一般仅用于指物，只作前置定语。

④ lively 充满活力的；生气勃勃的
既可指人，也可指物，在句中作表语或定语。

★ **Can a fossil be alive?**

③ **alive** /ə'laɪv/ *adj.* **活着的；有生气的**

e.g. The poor village was alive because of so many tourists.

这个贫困的村庄由于众多的游客而有了生气。

The artist is still alive.

这位艺术家仍然活着。

知识微课

He is the greatest man alive.

他是在世的最伟大的人。

He is dead, but his parents are still living.

他死了，但他的父母仍然健在。

These are all living fish.

这些都是活鱼。

They carry out an experiment with a live monkey.

他们用活的猴子做实验。

Jenny is a lively girl.

詹妮是个精力充沛的女孩。

考题在线3 We must take care of _____ (活着的) things.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★ **This plant can live as long as 1 500 years, so people call it a living fossil.**

④ [高频] **as long as** 长达；与……一样长　否定形式为 not so/as long as。

e.g. You can stay as long as you like.

你想呆多久就呆多久。

As long as we work hard, the Chinese Dream is sure to come true.

只要我们努力工作，中国梦就一定会实现。　as long as 还有"只要"的意思。

考题在线 4 We'll achieve our dreams someday _____ we keep trying and never give up.　[长沙]

A. as long as　　B. even though　　C. so that

点拨：考查连词的用法。句意：_____我们不断努力，永不放弃，我们的梦想总有一天会实现。as long as 只要，表条件；even though 即使，表让步；so that 为了，表目的。该从句是表条件的。

考题在线答案　1. D　2. C　3. living　4. A

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练　稳拿中考基础 20分

☞（答案见285页）

一、单项选择

1. —Look! A woman with three children _____ crossing the street.　[郴州]

—Let's help them.

A. is　　B. are　　C. was

2. There are no _____ things on the moon.

A. alive　　B. life

C. living　　D. All of the above.

3. —I really want to join the square dance. Can I learn the dance well?

—Yes, Mom! Nothing is impossible _____ you put your heart into it!　[随州]

A. as long as　　B. as soon as

C. even if　　D. unless

4. They didn't hear the door _____.

A. closes　　B. to close

C. close　　D. closing

5. I heard Tom _____ when I walked past his room yesterday.

A. sing　　B. singing

C. to sing　　D. sang

二、连词成句

6. plants, heard, how, have, many, you

_____?

7. pencil, this, that, one, is, as, long, as

_____.

8. fish, alive, the, is, still

_____.

9. play, children, to, cats, with, like

_____.

10. this, living, people, plant, fossil, call, a

_____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 12 Danny's Plant

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What is agriculture? 农业是什么?
- What kind of plants do you want to grow? 你想种植什么种类的植物?

Date: March 28

日期：三月二十八日

Weather: Sunny and warm

天气：晴朗，温暖

课文朗读

Dear Diary, 亲爱的日记：

I have a lot to write about this week!

关于这周我有许多要写的东西!

I want to write a report about agriculture /'ægrɪkʌltʃə/. Agriculture is all about growing plants and raising ① animals for food.

我想写一个关于农业的报告。农业是关于培育动植物以获取食物的产业。

To learn more about plants ②, we planted some seeds /si:dz/. I planted one in a small pot /pɒt/.I gave it plenty of water, and it sprouted /spraʊtɪd/ a few days later. Soon, it grew a stem and a leaf.

为了对植物有更多的了解，我们种了一些种子。我在一个小罐子里种了一粒。我给它浇大量的水，几天后它发芽了。不久，它长出了一枝茎和一片叶子。

Now, something new ③ is growing at the top of the stem /stem/. It's a flower bud /bʌd/. It will open up and turn into a flower. Later, the flower will become a head, and the head will turn into seeds.

现在，茎的顶部正长出新的东西。它是一个花苞。它会开，变成一朵花。之后，花就会变成一个头状物，然后头状物就会变成种子。

I'm going to look after ④ my plant carefully ⑤ /'keəfəlɪ/. I'll put the pot in the yard /jɑ:d/.There, it can get some sunshine. I'll cover it when the weather is cold. I'll send ⑥ some seeds to Li Ming. I think he will love them.

我打算精心照料我的植物。我将把罐子放在院子里。在那里，它能得到一些阳光。当天气冷的时候我将把它盖住。我将给李明寄一些种子。我认为他会喜欢它们。

Now I'm going to draw a beautiful picture of my plant. 现在我打算为我的植物画一幅漂亮的图画。

Danny 丹尼

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and answer the questions.

阅读课文并回答问题。

1. What did Danny and his classmates do to learn more about plants?
   为了更多地了解植物，丹尼和他的同班同学们做了什么?
2. What happened after Danny watered the seed of his plant?
   丹尼给他的植物种子浇了水后发生了什么?
3. Why will Danny put the pot in the yard?
   丹尼为什么将把罐子放在院子里?
4. What does Danny want to send to Li Ming?
   丹尼想给李明寄什么?

2 Complete the sentences and label the plant. 完成句子，并用标签标明植物。

A. A bud opens up and becomes a _____.
一个花苞张开变成一朵 _____。

B. A _____ grows under the ground and gets water from the soil.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

_____ 在地下生长，从土壤中吸取水分。

C. A _____ is the long thin part of a plant.

_____ 是一株植物又长又细的部分。

D. _____ are parts of a plant. They grow from a stem, from a branch or directly from the root. 是植物的部分。它们从茎，从枝或者直接从根部生长。

3 What parts of plants do we usually eat? Group them into the baskets. 我们通常吃植物的什么部分？把它们分类放到篮子里。

Parts of Plants We Eat

我们所吃的植物的部分

leaves 叶　roots 根　fruits 果实　seeds 种子　stems 茎

celery 芹菜　cabbage 洋白菜

sugarcane 甘蔗　pea 豌豆　carrot 胡萝卜

apple 苹果　sunflower 向日葵　onion 洋葱

peanut 花生　potato 土豆　eggplant 茄子

corn 玉米　lettuce 莴苣

tomato 西红柿　watermelon 西瓜

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★Agriculture is all about growing plants and raising animals for food.

① **raise** /reɪz/ *v.* (to care for a child or young animal until it is able to take care of itself; to lift or move sth. to a higher level) **饲养，养育；升起；举起；募集，筹集**

e.g. This farm raises about twenty sheep and five horses.

这个农场上饲养大约 20 只绵羊和 5 匹马。

We have raised 3,000 dollars for the sick child.

我们已经为那个生病的孩子筹集了 3000 美元。

辨析：raise 与 rise

① raise 及物动词，主要指举起、抬高。

② rise 不及物动词，主要指某物自然升高，如：太阳的升起，价格的上涨等。

★ To learn more about plants, we planted some seeds.

② **to learn more about plants 为了了解更多关于植物的知识**

e.g. To pass the exam, I study hard.=I study hard to pass the exam.

为了通过考试，我努力学习。

动词不定式短语，在句中作目的状语，放在句首表示强调。动词不定式短语也可放在句尾。

★ Now, something new is growing at the top of the stem.

③ **[高频] something new 形容词修饰不定代词**

e.g. There is something important in today's newspaper.

今天的报纸上有重要内容。

There is nothing serious. 没什么严重的。

Do you have anything else to say?

你还有其他的话要说吗？

形容词修饰不定代词时，要放在不定代词之后。

考题在线 1 —Did Qingdao show _____ to the world during the SCO Summit (上海合作组织峰会)?

—Sure! Her beauty, high technology and rapid development.[黄冈]

A. something special　　B. anything special

C. special something　　D. special anything

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨：考查不定代词的使用规则。句意：——青岛在上合峰会期间展示特殊的东西吗？——当然，展示了她的美丽、高科技和飞速发展。something 一般位于肯定句或表示请求的疑问句中，anything 用于疑问句或否定句中，修饰不定代词的形容词要位于不定代词之后。问句为一般疑问句，不表示请求。

★ **I'm going to look after my plant carefully.**

④ **look after** 照顾；照看

e.g. Don't worry. I can look after myself. 别担心，我会照顾我自己。

Stop touching it. Look at the sign. 不要触摸它。看那个警示牌。

That mountain in Guilin looks like an elephant.
桂林的那座山看起来像一头大象。

Are you still looking for a job? 你还在找工作吗？

When you meet new words, you'd better look them up in a dictionary.
当你遇到新词时，你最好在词典里查一查它们。

Look out! Here comes a bus. 当心！公交车过来了。

考题在线 2 Grandmother lives with my parents. They _____ her every day. [益阳]

A. look at　　B. look after　　C. look for

与 look 有关的短语：
- look forward to 盼望
- look the same 看起来一样
- look up 向上看
- look back 回顾
- look through 浏览
- look around 环顾
- look over 检查
- look at 看
- look out 当心
- look for 寻找

核心素养之文化意识

培养"关心他人"素养

◆照顾他人和照顾自己二者相关联，想要照顾好别人，必须要学会照顾自己。照顾自己就要学会独立，学会生活。中国人做事首先要顾全大局（*consider the overall situation*），考虑周全。做事成功后，千万不能洋洋得意，自吹自擂（*boast*）。因此，中国人历来主张踏实做事，低调做人（*keep a low profile*）。俗话说，有花自然香。

【素养行动】同学们与人交往时，应谦虚谨慎，低调做人，尊重别人，考虑别人感受，做乐于助人和受欢迎的学生。

【素养行动结果】学会与周围环境和谐相处，学会为别人着想并关心他人。

⑤ **carefully** /'keəfəlɪ/ *adv.* **仔细地；小心翼翼地**　高频考点，牢记！敲黑板

e.g. He answers the question carefully.
他谨慎地回答问题。

Be careful not to make mistakes.
小心不要犯错误。

A careless driver can cause a traffic accident easily.
粗心的司机容易引起交通事故。

You must do your work with more care.
你必须更加小心地工作。

I don't care about it. 我并不在意它。

carefully 的词形转化：
① careful *adj.* 小心的，谨慎的
② careless *adj.* 粗心的
③ care *n.* 小心 & *v.* 关注，关心，在意

考题在线 3 She is a _____ girl, and she does everything _____.

A. careful; careful　　B. carefully; carefully

C. careful; carefully　　D. carefully; careful

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★I'll send some seeds to Li Ming.

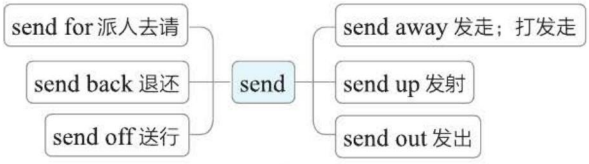
⑥ **send** /send/ *v.* 寄；发送

e.g. Mother sent her a big parcel of clothes and food.
妈妈给她寄了一大包衣服和食物。

send sb. sth. 相当于"send sth. to sb."，意为"给某人寄某物"。

I sent a present to my friend last week.
上周我给我的朋友寄了一件礼物。

send 相关短语





考题在线答案 1. B 2. B 3. C

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见285页)

一、用所给单词的正确形式填空

1. My uncle _____ (raise) many sheep and chickens on his farm.

2. I want _____ (look) after my dog by myself.

3. Li Ming sowed some seeds _____ (learn) more about plants.

4. Please do your homework as _____ (care) as you can.

5. Danny _____ (send) a birthday gift to Jenny last week.

二、单项选择

6. I want to write an e-mail _____ some plants and send it to you.
A. in B. with C. about D. at

7. —Who _____ your pet dogs while you were out for a holiday?
—My neighbor—a warm-hearted woman. [德州]
A. put on B. looked after
C. gave up D. turned off

8. Emma listened to the teacher _____ of all the students.
A. careful B. most careful
C. more carefully D. most carefully

9. —What's the meaning of "The Belt and Road"?
—Let me _____ the words in the new dictionary.
A. look at B. look for
C. look after D. look up

10. Jenny, you should practice as often as you can _____ the piano competition. [宁波]
A. fail B. to fail C. win D. to win

三、连词成句

11. top, new, at, is, of, something, stem, the, growing, the
_____.

12. going, plant, after, I'm, look, carefully, to, my
_____.

13. have, to, say, important, I , something
_____.

14. careless, final, he, to, the, too, is, exam, pass
_____.

15. more, insects, Tom, to, books, know, about, reads
_____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit Review

I. 课文原文、译文

Building Your Vocabulary 构建你的词汇库

Complete the clues and do the crossword.

完成提示并做这个纵横字谜。

ACROSS 横向

1. This project is challenging, but it's good for everyone.If you have time, you should c_____ it.
   这项任务有挑战性，但是它对每个人都有好处。如果你有时间，你应该 _____ 它。
5. You should never judge a book by its c_____, but should you judge a story by its title?
   你从不应该从它的 _____ 来判断一本书，但是你应该通过它的标题来判断一个故事吗?
6. The stone is brown and round. It has a h_____ in the centre.
   这块石头是棕色的而且是圆的。它中间有一个 _____。

DOWN 纵向

2. The e_____ sky turned pink as the sun rose.
   当太阳升起时，_____ 天空变成了粉红色。
3. A g_____ is a place outside. You grow plants in it.
   一个 _____ 是在外面的一个地方。你在它里面种植物。
4. She was supposed to be on a trip.So when I saw her here, I was s_____.
   她应该在旅行。因此当我在这里看到她时，我 _____。
7. They have learned English in school. M_____ of them understand English well.
   他们在学校已经学习了英语。他们中的 _____ 很懂英语。

Grammar in Use 语法应用

Ⅰ. Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the given words. 用所给词的正确形式填空。

1. We had a _____ (please) journey to England this summer. 今年夏天我们去英国进行了一次 _____（使愉快）旅行。
2. It is _____ (amaze) that this tree laughs when the wind blows. 当风吹时这棵树发笑，这很 _____（使惊讶）。
3. The children are drawing with their _____ (colour) markers.
   孩子们正在用他们的 _____（颜色）记号笔画画。
4. Be _____ (care) with your handwriting.
   _____（小心）你的书写。
5. After the earthquake, they became _____ (home) people.
   地震过后，他们变成了 _____（家）人。
6. They are _____ (happy) about the bad news.
   对于这个坏消息他们 _____（高兴的）。

Ⅱ. Write out the words according to the requirements. 按要求写出单词。

1. hope _____ (*adj.*) 希望 _____（形容词）
2. water _____ (*v.*) 水 _____（动词）
3. useful _____ (*adv.*) 有用的 _____（副词）
4. dirt _____ (*adj.*) 泥土 _____（形容词）
5. warm _____ (*v.*) 暖和的 _____（动词）
6. book _____ (*v.*) 书 _____（动词）
7. sun _____ (*adj.*) 太阳 _____（形容词）
8. danger _____ (*adj.*) 危险 _____（形容词）
9. cover _____ (*v.*) 盖子 _____（动词）
10. lazy _____ (*adv.*) 懒惰的 _____（副词）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Listening and Speaking 听说练习

Ⅰ. Listen and repeat.

听并重复。



1. I drew a picture of my plants.
   我画了一幅我的植物的图画。
2. Are they also coming to plant trees?
   他们也要来种树吗?
3. What makes a tree laugh?
   什么使一棵树发笑?
4. When something touches this plant's leaves, they close up tightly.
   当有东西碰到这棵植物的叶子时，它们紧紧地合住。

Ⅱ. Listen to the sentences and circle the words or phrases you hear.

听句子，圈出你听到的单词或短语。

1. A. dust storm 沙尘暴
   B. TV channel 电视频道
   C. a flower bud 花苞
2. A. dry 干燥的
   B. shy 害羞的
   C. cry 哭
3. A. eastern 东部的
   B. northern 北部的
   C. southern 南部的
4. A. at the top of 在……顶端
   B. in the bottom of 在……底部
   C. in the middle of 在……中间
5. A. by the way 顺便说一下
   B. in a word 总之
   C. best of all 最好的是

Ⅲ. Suppose you are Danny. Bring a photo of a plant to class and talk about it with a partner. Answer the following questions:

假设你是丹尼。把一棵植物的图片带到班上，和一个搭档谈论它。回答下面的问题：

1. What kind of plant is it?
   它是什么种类的植物?
2. What is it used for?
   它是用来做什么的?
3. Is it important to us?
   它对我们重要吗?
4. How can we protect this plant?
   我们怎么保护这棵植物?

Putting It All Together 综合练习

Ⅰ. Read the passage and answer the questions.

阅读短文并回答问题。

Are Plants Important to All Animals?

植物对所有的动物都重要吗?

Plants and animals are living things. All living things need food for energy. Without a way to get energy, they would die. Plants and animals get their food in different ways. A plant uses the energy in sunlight to make food for itself. Without sun or oxygen, small plants would not be able to grow into bigger plants. If you put a seed in the ground and give it water and energy from the sun, it will grow. It will grow into good food for other living things, mainly animals. Some animals, such as cows and pandas, eat plants. Some animals eat other animals. We call these animals carnivores. Still, plants feed all animals! How? Think of a tiger. The tiger eats animals that eat plants. Without plants, the tiger would have nothing to eat. 植物和动物都是生物。所有的生物都需要食物来获取能量。没有一种得到能量的方式，它们就会死亡。植物和动物用不同的方式获取食物。一棵植物利用阳光里的能量为它自己获取养料。没有太阳或氧气，小植物将不能长成更大的植物。如果你把一粒种子种在土里，给它浇水，让它从太阳那里获取能量，它会成长。它会长成其他生物的好养料，主要是动物。一些动物，例如奶牛和大熊猫，吃植物。一些动物吃别的动物。我们把这些动物称为食肉动物。不过，植物喂养着所有的动物！怎么说呢？想一想老虎。老虎吃那些吃植物的动物。没有植物，老虎会没东西吃。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. What are living things? 生物是什么?
2. Do plants and animals get their food in the same way? 植物和动物获取它们食物的方式一样吗?
3. How does a plant make food for itself?
植物是怎样为它自己获取养料的?
4. What do animals eat? 动物们吃什么?

II. How do you plant a plant? Write down your answer and discuss it with your partner.
你如何种植一棵植物? 写出你的答案并与你的搭档谈论它。

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

Self-Evaluation 自我评价

Find more examples from this unit. Then mark your stars.
从这个单元中找出更多的例子。然后标出你的星星。

I. Talking about Plants and Gardening 谈论植物和园艺

Please remember to put a little water in the bottom of the hole. 请记住往坑的底部浇些水。

I can discuss plants and gardening in English. 我会用英语来讨论植物和园艺。

II. Word Building 构词法

Plant a plant! 种一棵植物!

It gets windy and dirty everywhere. 处处都会变得多风而且很脏。

I know a lot of English prefixes, suffixes and conversion words. 我知道许多英语前缀、后缀和转化词。

Pretty Little Plant 漂亮的小植物

There was a plant.
有一棵植物。
There was a plant.
有一棵植物。
A pretty little plant.
一棵漂亮的小植物。
A pretty little plant.
一棵漂亮的小植物。
The prettiest plant,
最漂亮的植物,
The prettiest plant,
最漂亮的植物,
That you ever did see.
你曾经的确见到过的。
That you ever did see.
你曾经的确见到过的。

And the plant in the hole,
在坑里的植物,
And the plant in the hole,
在坑里的植物,
And the hole in the ground,
在地里的坑,
And the hole in the ground,
在地里的坑,
And the green grass grew all around,
四周长满了绿草,
All around,
四周都是,
And the green grass grew all around.
四周长满了绿草。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

构词法

考点1 派生法

所谓派生，即在原词上加前缀或后缀构成另一个与原来词义略有不同或截然相反的词。

考向一：后缀

（1）构成名词的后缀，常用的有：-er, -or, -ist, -ness, -ment, -tion, -ess, -ing 等。

e.g. illness 疾病；government 政府；hostess 女主人；meeting 会议

（2）构成形容词的后缀，常用的有：-ful, -less, -able, -ous, -y 等。

e.g. helpful 有用的；cloudy 多云的；enjoyable 令人愉快的；dangerous 危险的；careless 粗心的

（3）构成副词的后缀，常用的有：-ly。

e.g. slow—slowly 缓慢地

考题在线1 Wild animals which are now in danger need our _____ (protect). [南京]

点拨：句意：现在濒危野生动物需要我们的保护。our 是形容词性物主代词，后接名词。

考向二：前缀

前缀一般不造成词性的转变，而只引起意思上的变化，前缀中有相当一部分可构成反义词，常用的有 un-，dis-，im- 等。

e.g. unhappy 不高兴的；dislike 不喜欢；impossible 不可能的

考题在线2 I think it's _____ (fair) to judge a person before you really know him. [上海]

点拨：句意：我认为在你真正认识一个人之前对他进行评价是不公平的。be 动词后面应用形容词，fair“公平的”，是形容词，其前加 un- 构成 unfair“不公平的”。

考点2 转化法

常见的有名词转化为动词，形容词转化为动词等。

（1）名词转化为动词

e.g. water 水→water 浇水

plant 植物→plant 种植

（2）形容词转化为动词

e.g. cool 凉爽的→cool 使变凉；冷却

dry 干燥的→dry 使变干

（3）动词转化为名词

e.g. look 看；瞧→look 看；瞧

swim 游泳→swim 游泳

考题在线3 —What was Linda doing at that time?

—Oh, she was going for a _____ (walk). [南宁]

点拨：句意：——琳达那时在做什么？——哦，她正在散步。考查词的转化。walk 作动词时是“走路”的意思，此句中应用名词。

考题在线答案 1. protection 2. unfair 3. walk

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力20分

☞（答案见285页）

听力技巧

抢读定位法（利用导言和题与题之间的间隙，提前扫视选项，预测出题方向，以便等录音内容开始播放时可以有目的地捕捉所需信息。）

听力过程

听 Listening and Speaking Ⅱ，回答问题

1. It _____ windy and dirty everywhere.

A. gets B. turns C. becomes

2. A lot of rich lands in the _____ area turned into desert.

A. northern

B. eastern

C. western

课文听力

3. What plant can be shy in the passage?

A. Trees. B. Flowers.

C. I don't know.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

The passage mainly tells about a program about gardening with Mary. She has lots of good advice for gardeners. She knows the best way to grow all kinds of plants. She thinks gardening is a very enjoyable hobby. She has written many popular books about gardening. Her favourite flowers are roses. She considers it easy to grow if you choose the right kinds of roses. 条件状语从句运用得恰当

单元话题

假如你是花草爱好者，即将在学校为国际交流生讲解如何养花，请你根据以下提示写一篇 80 词左右的发言稿。

要点：(1) 养花是一种爱好；(2) 如何养花；(3) 养花的益处。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

认真阅读写作内容要求，可获得以下写作信息：

(1) 体裁：说明文 (2) 人称：第一人称

(3) 时态：一般现在时

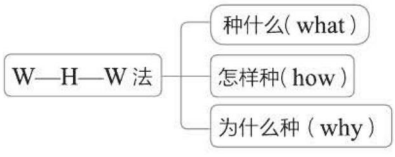
(4) 提示：最好用上序数词

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“W—H—W 法”描写“种植物”。

本单元是关于种植物的写作，可以从“种什么 (what)”，“怎样种 (how)”和“为什么种 (why)”来入手。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	hobby; seed; soil; step; fresh
短语	in one's free time; have patience with; cover...with...
句子	1. Here are some steps. 2. It's pleasant to plant flowers.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Boys and girls,

I'm very happy to speak here and I'd like to share my planting experience with you.

I like planting flowers in my free time. Planting flowers is a very enjoyable hobby and teaches me to have patience with everything.

But how can we plant a flower? Here are some steps. First, put the seed in a pot and cover it with good soil. Second, water it every day. Third, put it in the sun so that it can grow strong and stay healthy.

It's pleasant to plant flowers. They can bring us fresh air and make us relaxed.

That's all. Thank you!

名师点评：

本文是一篇关于养花的文章。运用了“W—H—W 法”描写“养花”。第二段点出养花；第三段描写如何养花；第四段描写为什么养花。文章前后呼应，相得益彰。

添彩点：①用 first，second，third 增强顺序性、层次性和逻辑性。②一些高级短语和句式的运用，为本文增色不少。如重点短语：in my free time（在我的空闲时间），have patience with...（对……有耐心），stay healthy（保持健康），make us relaxed（使我们放松）。重点句式：It's pleasant to plant flowers.（养花令人愉快。）



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见285页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. On weekends, my mother often does some _____ (shop) after finishing the housework. [包头]

2. When spring comes, the snow _____ (appear).

3. I _____ (sudden) remembered that I hadn't locked the door. [包头]

4. It rained _____ (heavy) on my way home yesterday afternoon. [青岛]

5. The advice was to prove _____ (value).

二、按要求完成句子

6. The head of the plant will turn into wheat seeds. (改为同义句)

The head of the plant will _____ _____ wheat seeds.

7. I'm going to look after my wheat. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ you going to do?

8. I'll cover it when the weather is cold. (改为否定句)

I'll _____ _____ it when the weather is cold.

9. I gave it plenty of water. (改为同义句)

I gave it _____ _____ of water.

10. I want to write a report about agriculture. (改为一般疑问句)

_____ _____ _____ to write a report about agriculture?

三、连词成句

11. something, there, new, in, newspaper, today's, is

_____.

12. write, top, your, page, name, at, the, of, the

_____.

13. Joe, turned, into, famous, has, a, singer

_____.

14. I, ago, some, bread, baked, an, hour

_____.

15. look, holiday, after, my, dog, please, during, my

_____.

四、单元知识浓缩

根据汉语提示完成下面的短文。

All _____[16] (活 着 的) things on earth depend on each other. At the same time, they all need sunlight. But only plants can _____[17] (转变) sunlight into food for itself. Plants make food from sunlight, water and things in the _____[18] (土 壤) and air. They also help to clean the air. Plants are _____[19] (重要的)to people. They help us fulfill our _____[20] (基本的) needs. So we should plant plants.

There are some steps for planting. First, we make a hole and make sure it is _____[21] (大的) enough to hold the roots of the seedling. Then put the seedling inside, _____[22] (覆 盖)the roots and _____[23] (填满) the hole with dirt. We must look after the plants _____[24] (小心地), or they will die.

In a word, it's _____[25] (令人愉快的) to plant. We should plant many plants around us.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Animals Are Our Friends

词汇表听写

魔法六维导图

高频单词
- 动词：lay, shake, avoid, protect, kill, cut, warn
- 名词：sofa, vacation, mouse, danger, bamboo, giraffe, century, courage, reason, friendship, relationship
- 形容词：tiny, dangerous, brave

重点短语：on a vacation // be afraid of // be famous for // up to // instead of // wait a minute // April Fools' Day // at the beginning of // drop to // food chain // in balance // in danger // cut down // as well // touch one's heart

常考句型
1. Would you like...?
2. What do/does+ 主语 +look like?
3. Why can't we do sth.?
4. What will happen if + 从句?

单元语法：不定代词 some，any 的用法

知识小集

文化意识：通过对 Lesson 17 的学习，在日常生活中，我们要关爱、保护动物，学会与动物和谐相处。

英语思维：在平时的英语学习中，我们应注意关注国外的稀有动物，重视它们，还要学会用英语思维表达自己保护动物的决心。

语言能力
- 听：能听懂关于介绍熊生活习性的英语文章。Unit Review
- 说：说说自己最喜欢的动物或介绍一下自己的宠物。Lesson 13
- 读：阅读关于千奇百怪的动物的文章。Lesson 14
- 写：能写出关于最喜欢的动物的英语作文。Unit Review

方法大观
- 听力技巧：见缝扫题法（106 页）
- 阅读策略：细节定位法（81 页）
- 写作技法："三步法"描写动物（106 页）
- 解题方法：情景交际法（76 页）；短语辨析法（86 页，91 页等）；主谓一致法（95 页，287 页）；词语辨析法（96 页，97 页）；语法判定法（101 页，286 页等）；代入法（286 页）；语境暗示法（286 页，287 页）；固定搭配法（286 页）

学习能力：通过观看纪录片 *Last Chance to See*，希望大家能珍惜最后一次见到濒危动物的机会，也希望能唤起大家保护动物的意识。

记忆大师

Lesson 13

必背单词

1. **tiny** *adj.* 微小的→ small *adj.* 小的（近义词）
2. **sofa** *n.* 长沙发→ on the sofa 在沙发上
3. **vacation** *n.* 假期；休假→ on a vacation 在度假

必背短语

4. be afraid of 害怕

必背句子

5. **Would** you and Brian **like to** go to the zoo this Saturday?
   这周六你和布赖恩想去动物园吗?
6. He **hasn't been to** the zoo in Edmonton yet.
   他还没去过埃德蒙顿的动物园呢。

Lesson 14

必背单词

1. **mouse** *n.*（*pl.* mice）老鼠
   →作"鼠标"讲时，复数形式是 mouses。
2. **lay** *v.*（laid/ laid）产卵；放置
3. **shake** *v.*（shook/ shaken）摇动；抖动
4. **avoid** *v.* 躲开；躲避
   → avoid doing sth. 避免做某事

必背短语

5. remind sb. of sth. 使某人想起某事 / 物
6. up to 达到；是……的职责；取决于……

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

必背句子

7. They **are famous for** their large noses.
它们因为它们的大鼻子而出名。

Lesson 15

必背单词

1. danger *n.* 危险；风险→ safety *n.* 安全（反义词）
→ be in (great) danger 处于（极大的）危险之中
→ out of danger 脱离危险

2. dangerous *adj.* 危险的

3. bamboo *n.* 竹子　**4. giraffe** *n.* 长颈鹿

必背短语

5. instead of 代替；是……而不是……

6. feed…to… 给……喂……

7. point to 指向　**8.** lots of 许多；大量

必背句子

9. I see. **But** we have **lots of** grass here.
我明白了。但是我们这儿有许多草。

Lesson 16

必背单词

1. protect *v.* 保护→ protection *n.* 保护
→ protect…from/against… 保护……免受……

必背短语

2. hear about 听说→ hear of（同义短语）

3. play a joke on sb. 和某人开玩笑

必背句子

4. What will happen **if** he comes to our neighbourhood？
如果他来到我们社区，会发生什么呢?

5. There's a fierce bear **coming**.
有只凶猛的熊要来了。

Lesson 17

必背单词

1. century *n.* 世纪→ centuries（复数）
→ in the ＋序数词＋ century 在……世纪

2. courage *n.* 勇气；胆量

3. brave *adj.* 勇敢的；无畏的→ bravely *adv.* 勇敢地

4. reason *n.* 原因；动机；理由
→ reasonable *adj.* 合理的；公道的

5. kill *v.* 杀死→ killer *n.* 杀手；杀人者

6. cut *v.* (cut/ cut) 砍；割；剪；切→ cut up 切碎

必背短语

7. at the beginning of… 在……之初

8. the number of...……的数目 / 数量
→ a number of 许多；大量

9. as well（除某事或某人外）还；也

10. drop to 下降到；跌至

11. in balance 保持平衡

12. cut down 把……砍倒；减少

必背句子

13. For this reason, tigers **are important to** the environment.
因为这个原因，老虎对于环境来说很重要。

14. In recent years, tigers have been **in danger of** disappearing.
在近几年，老虎已经处于消失的危险中。

Lesson 18

必背单词

1. friendship *n.* 友情；友谊
→ friendly *adj.* 友好的；友善的

2. warn *v.* 警告；提醒

3. relationship *n.* 关系；关联

必背短语

4. used to 过去常常

5. touch one's heart 打动某人

单元必背语法

1. I hear there are **some** new animals at the zoo.
我听说公园里有一些新的动物。

2. We don't have **any** pandas at the Edmonton Zoo, Danny. 丹尼，我们埃德蒙顿公园没有熊猫。

3. We don't have **any** bamboo here in Edmonton.
我们埃德蒙顿公园这里没有竹子。

4. Maybe the pandas could eat **some** grass instead of bamboo.
也许这些熊猫可以吃一些草而不是竹子。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 13 Danny's Big Scare /skeə/

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Do you have a pet? What is its name? 你养宠物吗？它的名字是什么？
- What kind of pets would you like to have? 你想养什么类型的宠物？

The doorbell /'dɔ:bel/ is ringing. Jenny goes to open the door.

课文朗读

门铃响了。詹妮去开门。

Jenny: Hello Danny. Come in, please.

你好，丹尼。请进。

Danny: I ran all the way to your house. Would you and Brian like to ① go to the zoo this Saturday? I hear there are some new animals at the zoo. 我一路跑着到你家的。这周六你和布赖恩想去动物园吗？我听说动物园里有一些新动物。

Jenny: Good idea. Brian isn't at home. He hasn't been to ② the zoo in Edmonton yet. I think he will be glad to go. 好主意。布赖恩没在家。他还没去过埃德蒙顿的动物园呢。我想他会很高兴去的。(Danny screams!)(丹尼尖叫！)

Jenny: Danny, what happened ③ ? Why did you scream /skri:m/?

丹尼，发生什么事了？你为什么尖叫？

Danny: I tried to sit down, but a tiny /'taɪnɪ/ tiger jumped off the sofa /'səʊfə/!

我想要坐下，但是一只小老虎从沙发上跳了下来！

Jenny: That's my new friend—Zoe /'zəʊɪ/. She is Aunt Jane's cat. Her family went on a vacation /və'keɪʃən; veɪ'keɪʃən/ and she asked me to take care of Zoe. You almost sat on her. She's afraid of you now. 那是我的新朋友——佐伊。她是简阿姨的猫。她们一家去度假了，她让我照顾佐伊。你几乎坐在她身上了。她现在怕你。

Danny: Sorry, Zoe. Don't be afraid of ④ me. Come here! I have some donuts for you. 对不起，佐伊。别怕我。过来！我给你一些面包圈。

Jenny: Danny! Zoe likes to eat fish. She doesn't like donuts. 丹尼！佐伊喜欢吃鱼。她不喜欢面包圈。

Danny: She's gentle ⑤ /'dʒentl/ and quiet. I'd love to have a pet, too.

她又温和又安静。我也想养一只宠物。

Jenny: What pet would you like to have?

你想养一只什么宠物？

Danny: I'd like to have a dog. Dogs are friendly and loyal /'lɔɪəl/. 我想养一只狗。狗既友好又忠诚。

Jenny: Yeah. They even help people sometimes.

是的。它们有时候甚至会帮助人。

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and underline the sentences that describe pets.

阅读课文，在描述宠物的句子下面画线。

Example: 例子：

Zoe likes to eat fish. 佐伊喜欢吃鱼。

2 Read the lesson again and fill in the blanks. 再次阅读课文并填空。

One day, Danny _____ all the way to Jenny's house. He _____ the doorbell, and Jenny welcomed him. Danny asked Jenny and Brian to go to the zoo on Saturday. Jenny thought it was a good idea. Suddenly, Danny screamed! He told Jenny he saw a _____ tiger jump off the _____. 有一天，丹尼一路_____去詹妮的家。他 _____ 门铃，詹妮欢迎他。丹尼让詹妮和布赖恩在星期六去动物园。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

詹妮认为这是一个好主意。突然，丹尼尖叫！他告诉詹妮他看见一只 _____ 老虎从 _____ 跳下来。

3 Look at the list of popular pets. Match each pet with the reasons why people might have it as a pet. Finally, tick the pets you have or would like to have.

看这张受欢迎的宠物的清单。把每一个宠物和人们可能把它当作宠物的原因匹配起来。最后，在你有的或你想要有的宠物旁打钩。

The most popular pets in the world 世界上最受欢迎的宠物	Reasons 原因
☐ cats 猫	quiet 安静的
☐ dogs 狗	kind 友好的
☐ fish 鱼	loyal 忠诚的
☐ birds 鸟	lovely 可爱的
☐ other small mammals (rabbits, ferrets...) 其他小的哺乳动物（兔子，雪貂……）	cute 机灵的；可爱的
	helpful 有帮助的
	good companions 好的伙伴
☐ others 其他（的宠物）	

4 Work in groups. Interview your group members about their pets and complete the survey. 分组学习。采访你的小组成员关于他们的宠物的事情并完成调查。

Do you have a pet?

你有一只宠物吗?

If yes, what is it?

如果有，它是什么?

If no, what pet would you like to have?

如果没有，你想拥有什么宠物?

Can you describe your pet?

你能描述一下你的宠物吗?

- What does it look like? ⑥

  它看起来像什么?

- What does it eat?

  它吃什么?

- What does it like/dislike doing?

  它喜欢 / 不喜欢做什么?

- How do you look after it?

  你怎样照顾它?

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★Would you and Brian like to go to the zoo this Saturday?

① [高频] Would you like to do...? 你想要 / 愿意做……吗?

高频考点，牢记！敲黑板

e.g. —Would you like to go shopping with me?

你愿意和我一起去购物吗?

—Yes, I'd love to. 是的，我愿意。

—Would you like to play football with us?

你愿意和我们一起踢足球吗?

—I'd like to, but I must finish my homework first.

我愿意，但是我必须首先完成我的家庭作业。

该句型的肯定回答用"Yes, I'd like/love to."；否定回答可用"I'd like/love to, but..." 或"I'm sorry, but..."或"I'm afraid not."等。

I would like an apple. 我想要一个苹果。

Tom would like to buy a book. 汤姆想要买本书。

I would like you to go swimming with us.

我想要你和我们一起去游泳。

would like
- +n. 想要……
- +to do... 想要做……
- +n./pron. +to do... 想要 / 希望……做……

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 1 —Would you like to go to Shanghai Disneyland with me in July?

—_____

A. Yes, I'd like to. B. It doesn't matter.

C. Have a good time! D. You're welcome.



点拨：用情景交际法。由 Would you like... 引导的问句“七月你想与我一起去上海迪斯尼乐园吗？”可知用 I'd like to 回答。B 项意为“没有关系”；C 项意为“祝你玩得愉快！”；D 项意为“不用谢”。

★ He hasn't been to the zoo in Edmonton yet.

敲黑板 中考高频考点，牢记！

② [高频] have/has been to + 地点 去过某地

e.g. I have been to America twice.

我去过美国两次。

He has just been to the library.

他刚刚去过图书馆。

—Where's your brother?

你哥哥在哪里?

—He has gone to the post office.

他去了邮局。

The Greens have been in China for two years.

格林一家在中国呆了两年了。

辨析：have been to, have gone to 与 have been in

① have been to 去过某地，人现在不在该地，已经回来了。

② have gone to 去了某地，人在该地或在去该地的途中，但不在说话时的地点。

③ have been in 在某地呆了一段时间，与时间段连用。

have/has been to 强调现在人已经回来了，其后可接 once, twice, three times 等，但不能与时间段（如 for three days, since last week 等）连用。

考题在线 2 —Where is your uncle?

—He _____ America and he _____ New York for two weeks.

[遂宁]

A. has been to; has been in B. has gone to; will stay in

C. has been in; has been to D. has stayed in; has gone to

点拨：句意：——你叔叔在哪呢？——他去美国了，他将会在纽约呆两周。has been to 曾经去过（现在已经回来了，不在那里了）；has gone to 去某地了（可能已经到了，也可能在去的路上）；has been in 一直在某地；根据语境排除 A、C 两项，再根据关键词“for two weeks”可知，他叔叔将在纽约呆两周，故第二个空应用一般将来时。

★ Danny, what happened?

③ **happen** /'hæpən/ *vi.* 发生

e.g. There are many people over there. What happened?

那儿有很多人。发生什么事了?

happen 不能用于被动语态。

“What happened?”意为“发生什么事了？”常用来询问出了什么状况。

辨析：happen 与 take place

happen	指偶然或未能预见的客观情况的发生。
take place	指事先有计划或能预料到的事情的发生。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. No one could predict what would happen next.
没有人能预料到接下来会发生什么。

Many changes have taken place since then.
从那以后，发生了许多变化。

He happened to meet his uncle on his way home.
他碰巧在回家的路上遇见了他叔叔。

happen 表示“碰巧”，后常接动词不定式。
happen to do sth. 意为“碰巧做某事”，句中的主语通常是“人”。

考题在线 3 —I still don't know what_____ while I was away from home.
—You'll know it all some day, I believe. [武汉]

A. had happened　　B. would happen
C. has happened　　D. happened

点拨：考查动词时态。句意：——我仍然不知道当我不在家时发生什么事了。——我相信总有一天你会知道所有的。“我不在家时”是过去的时间，所以用一般过去时。

辨析：be afraid of (doing) sth. 与 be afraid to do sth.
be afraid of falling
害怕（担心）掉下去



be afraid to go
因害怕而不敢去

★ Don't be afraid of me.

④ **be afraid of 害怕**

e.g. I am afraid of snakes. 我怕蛇。

He is afraid of losing face.
他担心丢面子。

He is afraid to go to Beijing by himself.
他不敢独自去北京。

考题在线 4 The boy is _____ see the teacher because he _____ a mistake.

A. afraid of; has　　B. afraid to; has made
C. afraid to; make　　D. afraid of; made

点拨：句意：这个男孩不敢见到老师，因为他犯了个错误。be afraid to do sth. 不敢做某事；make a mistake 犯错误。

gentle — gently — gentleman
温和地　　绅士

★ She's gentle and quiet.

⑤ **gentle** /ˈdʒentl/ *adj.* (calm and kind;doing things in a quiet and careful way; not strong) **温和的**

e.g. My mother is a kind and gentle person.
我母亲是一位心地善良、性情温和的人。

★ What does it look like?

⑥ **What do/does+ 主语 +look like? ……看上去什么样？**

e.g. —What does your teacher look like?
你的老师长什么样？

—He has short black hair and he is very tall.
他留着黑色的短发并且他很高。

常用“主语 +be+ 描述人物外貌特征的形容词”或“主语 +have/has+ 名词（名词前可以有多个形容词修饰）”两种方式回答。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

辨析：look like 与 be like

look like	指外观或外貌上像
be like	指人的性格、品质像

e.g. My younger brother looks like my father.
我的弟弟长得像我的爸爸。
What is your mother like?
你的妈妈是什么样的人？



考题在线答案 1. A 2. B 3. D 4. B

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见285页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示写出单词

1. The army has remained _____ (忠诚的) to the government.

2. The _____ (门铃) is ringing.

3. This plant has _____ (微小的) blue flowers.

4. The _____ (长沙发) in her house is beautiful.

5. The cat cried and _____ (尖声喊叫) during the whole night.

二、用方框中所给单词或短语的适当形式填空

be	ask	gentle	drink	happen to

6. Sanya is a beautiful city. I have _____ there twice.

7. Would you like _____ some tea?

8. Simon is crying. Do you know what _____ him?

9. Danny is afraid of _____ questions.

10. The wind in spring blows _____.

三、单项选择

11. —Would you like to play basketball with us this afternoon? [武汉]
—_____, but my mother is ill.
A. I don't care
B. It's very nice of you
C. Of course not
D. My pleasure

12. —May I speak to Mr. Lee?
—Sorry, he _____ Harbin; he _____ the city for two days.
A. has been to; has been in
B. has gone to; has been to
C. has gone to; has been in
D. has been to; has gone to

13. An accident _____ in the small town yesterday.
A. take place
B. happened
C. was happened
D. took place

14. I am afraid of _____ mistakes.
A. make B. making
C. to make D. makes

15. —Has Lucy finished her homework _____?
—No, not yet.
A. just B. already
C. ever D. yet

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 14 Amazing Animals

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Can you name some animals you have never seen before?
  你能列出你以前从未见过的一些动物的名字吗?
- What animals do you think are amazing? Why? 你认为什么动物令人惊奇? 为什么?

课文朗读

Long-eared① jerboas /dʒɜ:'bəʊəz/ look like mice② /maɪs/. With their long ears, they also remind people of③ rabbits. Their ears are much④ longer than their heads. They live in the deserts of Asia. On the sand, they jump like kangaroos! What a cute animal! 长耳朵跳鼠看起来像老鼠。有长耳朵，它们也使人们想起兔子。它们的耳朵比它们的头长得多。它们生活在亚洲的沙漠里。在沙子上，它们跳起来像袋鼠！多么可爱的动物啊！

Kiwis /'ki:wi:z/ are birds, but they can't fly. Kiwis can be as big as chickens. Like all birds, they lay⑤ /leɪ/ eggs—big eggs. People call them Kiwis because they make the sound: keee-weee. Kiwis live in New Zealand and are a national animal of the country. Do you like them? 几维是鸟，但它们不会飞。几维可能和鸡一样大。像所有的鸟一样，它们产蛋——大大的蛋。人们叫它们几维是因为它们发出这样的声音：几 - 维。几维生活在新西兰，而且是这个国家的国宝级动物。你喜欢它们吗?

Long-nosed monkeys live in Southeast Asia. They are famous for their large noses. Their noses are as big as eggplants /'egplɑ:nts/! When the monkeys are happy or excited⑥, they shake⑦ /ʃeɪk/ their noses. That's funny!

长鼻猴生活在东南亚。它们因为它们的大鼻子而出名。它们的鼻子和茄子一样大！当这些猴子高兴或兴奋时，它们摇动它们的鼻子。那很有趣！

Can fish fly? Most people would say no. Look at this fish. It looks like a bird with its large wings. It can jump out of the water and flap /flæp/ its wings up to⑧ 70 times a second. You can see flying fish all over the world. It flies out of the water to avoid⑨ /ə'vɔɪd/ enemies.

鱼会飞吗? 大多数人会说不会。看这条鱼。它看起来像一只有着大翅膀的鸟。它能跳出水面，一秒钟能拍打翅膀达 70 次。你会在世界各地看到飞翔的鱼。它飞出水面来躲避敌人。

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Listen to the passage and write true (T) or false (F).
听这篇文章，写对 (T) 或错 (F)。

课文听力

1. Jerboas have long ears and look like mice.
   跳鼠长着长耳朵，看起来像老鼠。 ( )
2. Jerboas' front legs are longer than their back legs.
   跳鼠的前腿比它们的后腿长。 ( )
3. Jerboas are good at jumping.
   跳鼠擅长跳。 ( )
4. They live all over Europe.
   它们生活在欧洲各地。 ( )

2 Fill in the blanks with the words in the box. 用方框中所给的单词填空。

lay 产（卵）	wings 翅膀	enemy 敌人
avoid 躲避	mouse 老鼠	sand 沙滩

1. The _____ didn't see the cat nearby. It ran out the cave and was caught by the cat.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

_____ 没看见附近的猫。它跑出了洞并且被猫逮住了。

2. In summer, he likes to go to the beach. He enjoys walking on the _____. 在夏天，他喜欢去海滩。他喜欢在 _____ 上散步。

3. These days, more and more people are raising chickens, not only because chickens are great pets, but also because they _____eggs. 现今，越来越多的人养鸡，不仅因为鸡是很好的宠物，而且因为它们 _____ 鸡蛋。

4. Birds use their _____ to fly.
鸟用它们的 _____ 飞翔。

5. The driver had to stop suddenly to _____ an accident.
司机不得不突然停车 _____ 一起事故。

6. Man has no greater _____ than himself.
人类没有比他自己更强大的 _____ 。

3 Suppose you are a zoologist and fill out the animal information cards.

假设你是一名动物学家，填写这些动物信息卡。

Name: Long-eared jerboas 名字：长耳朵跳鼠
Where do they live? 它们生活在哪里?

_____

What makes them amazing?
什么使它们令人惊奇?

They look like _____. With their long ears, they also remind people of _____.
它们看起来像 _____。有着长耳朵，它们也使人们想起 _____。

Name: Long-nosed monkeys 名字：长鼻猴
Where do they live? 它们生活在哪里?

_____

What makes them amazing?
什么使它们令人惊奇?

_____

Name: Kiwis 名字：几维
Where do they live? 它们生活在哪里?

_____

What makes them amazing?
什么使它们令人惊奇?

They are birds, but they can't fly. They _____ big eggs. 它们是鸟，但它们不会飞。它们 _____ 大的蛋。

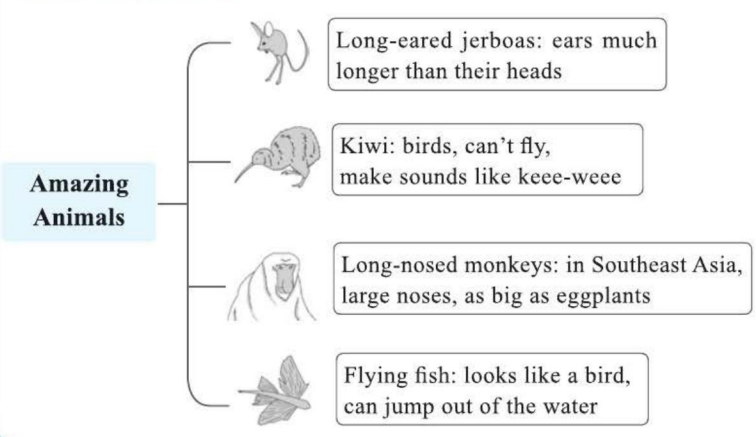
Name: Flying fish 名字：飞鱼
Where do they live? 它们生活在哪里?

_____

What makes them amazing?
什么使它们令人惊奇?

_____

课文背诵指南



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见286页)

阅读策略

细节定位法(先读一遍文章后面的问题，然后带着问题再读文章，可以迅速定位问题涉及的文章段落及具体句子和关键单词。然后进行比较和分析，确定最佳答案。)

拓展阅读

阅读过程

一、速读 Lesson 14，选择正确答案

1. What's the passage about? (主旨大意题)

A. Amazing animals.

B. Cute animals.

C. National animals.

D. Famous animals.

二、细读文章，解决细节类题目

2. ⊙ What animals look like mice? (细节理解题)

A. Long-eared jerboas.

B. Rabbits.

C. Kangaroos.

D. Monkeys.

3. ⊙ Which birds live in New Zealand? (细节理解题)

A. Kiwis. B. Chickens.

C. Birds. D. Eagles.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★ **Long-eared jerboas look like mice.**

long-eared 是一个复合形容词。其结构为：形容词+连字符+名词的-ed形式。例：blue-eyed 蓝眼睛的；kind-hearted 热心肠的。

① **long-eared** /lɒŋɪəd/ *adj.* 长耳朵的

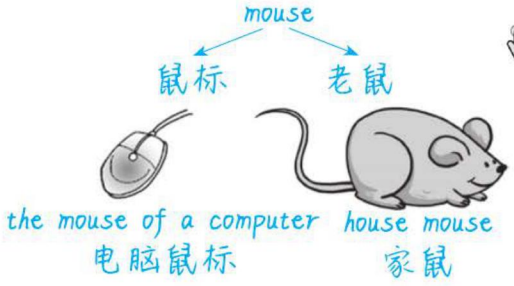
e.g. Do you like the long-eared rabbit?

你喜欢那只长耳朵的兔子吗?

② **mice** /maɪs/ *n.* 老鼠

mice — mouse mouse — mouses

e.g. There are ten mice in the hole. 那个洞里有十只老鼠。



不规则的名词单复数形式还有：child → children, tooth → teeth, foot → feet, man → men, woman → women, goose → geese 等。

★ **With their long ears, they also remind people of rabbits.**

remind 作及物动词，意为"使想起"。

③ **remind sb. of sth.** 使某人想起某事/物

e.g. These photos remind me of my childhood.

这些照片使我想起了我的童年。

Please remind me to join in the English party on Saturday.

请提醒我参加周六的英语聚会。

remind sb.(not) to do sth. 提醒某人(不要)做某事

He reminded me that I should do it at once.

他提醒我应该立刻去做这件事。remind 后也可接 that 从句。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

much 后接形容词或副词的比较级，表示“……很多”。

可修饰比较级的单词和词组还有 rather，even，a bit，a little 等。

★ Their ears are much longer than their heads.

④ [高频] **much** /mʌtʃ/ *adv.* 非常；很 *adj.* 大量的

e.g. There's much rain this year. 今年雨水多。

Tom is much taller than Jim. 汤姆比吉姆高很多。

考题在线 1 Taking a subway in Chengdu is much _____ than taking a taxi. [四川]

A. cheap　　B. cheaper　　C. cheapest

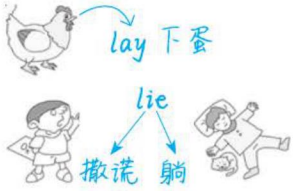
★ Like all birds, they lay eggs—big eggs.

⑤ **lay** /leɪ/ *v.* 产（卵）；放置

[易错点] lie 与 lay

原形	过去式	过去分词	现在分词
lie *v.* 躺	lay	lain	lying
lay *v.* 放置；产（卵）	laid	laid	laying
lie *v.* 说谎	lied	lied	lying

速记 小筏：规则的“撒谎”，不规则的“躺”；“躺”过就“下蛋”，“下蛋”不规则。



e.g. Walter lay on the grass enjoying the sunshine.

沃尔特躺在草地上享受阳光。

They are laying a new carpet in the living room.

他们正在起居室里铺新地毯。

The hens don't lay well during such cold weather.

在如此冷的天气中母鸡不好好下蛋。

He lied about his reasons for being late. 关于迟到的理由他说了谎。

知识微课

★ When the monkeys are happy or excited, they shake their noses.

⑥ [高频] **excited** /ɪk'saɪtɪd/ *adj.* 激动的；兴奋的

e.g. We were quite excited about/at the news of victory.

我们对胜利的消息感到非常兴奋。

excited 通常用来修饰人。be excited about/at... 由于……而兴奋；对……感到兴奋

辨析：excited 与 exciting

① excited 激动的，兴奋的，修饰人，表示被修饰的人受到外界影响而产生的情绪。

② exciting 令人激动的，修饰事物，表示被修饰事物自身的特点。

e.g. We were excited about the exciting news.

我们对这个令人激动的消息感到很兴奋。

⑦ [高频] **shake** /ʃeɪk/ *v.* 摇动；抖动　shake — shook — shaken

e.g. He took off his coat and shook it. 他脱下他的外套抖了抖。

Jane shook hands with her friends. 简和她的朋友们握手。

常构成的短语有：shake hands with sb. 与某人握手　shake one's head 摇头

★ It can jump out of the water and flap its wings up to 70 times a second.

⑧ **up to** 达到；是……的职责；取决于……

e.g. The height of the tower is up to 100 meters.

塔的高度达到了 100 米。

It's up to you to make a decision. 由你来作出决定。

be up to sb. 是某人的责任；由某人来决定

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 2 —Our neighborhood is so dirty. Shall we clean it this afternoon or tomorrow?

—_____. Any time is OK. [四川]

A. It is up to you B. Excuse me

C. Have a good time D. I'm afraid I can't

★ **It flies out of the water to avoid enemies.**

⑨ **avoid** /ə'vɔɪd/ *v.* (to prevent sth. bad from happening; to keep away from sb. /sth.; to try not to do sth.) 避免；避开

avoid sth. 避免某事
avoid doing sth. 避免做某事

e.g. Learn from past mistakes to avoid future ones. 惩前毖后。

考题在线 3 —Did you consider how to _____ (避免伤到你们自己) in P.E. class?

—Yes. We discussed it in our class meeting. [襄阳改编]

考题在线答案 1. B 2. A 3. avoid hurting yourselves

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见286页)

一、根据汉语提示完成单词

1. Some people even keep _____ (老鼠) as pets.
2. These hens _____ (下 蛋) five eggs yesterday.
3. You'd better _____ (摇 动) the bottle before you drink the juice.
4. Young children are taught road safety to _____ (避免) road accidents. [泰安改编]
5. These old photos can _____ (使想起) me of my childhood.

二、单项选择

6. —Where is Xi's Family Garden (习家池)?

—It _____ 5 km south to the Old City of Xiangyang. 【导学号：6505386】

A. lies B. lives C. lays D. lists

7. —The song *Where did the time go* _____ the old days and the love of our family.

—Sure. It's my favourite song.

A. helps us out B. reminds us of

C. lets us down D. regards us as

8. —What _____ news! The Chinese Women's Badminton Team won the Uber Cup again.

—Really? That's great! [泰州]

A. interesting B. interested

C. exciting D. excited

9. Jane has become much _____ than before. She can express herself in public now. [重庆A卷]

A. brave B. braver C. lazy D. lazier

10. —China is getting better and better at making high technology products.

—That's right. People around the world can hardly avoid _____ products made in China. [黄冈]

A. not buying B. not to buy

C. to buy D. buying

三、连词成句

11. my, grandmother, the, of, reminds, me, story

_____.

12. the, lay, please, the, book, desk, on

_____.

13. outgoing, she's , much, than, me, more

_____.

14. can, what, avoid, make ,us, spelling, mistakes

_____?

15. laid, the, yesterday, two, duck, eggs

_____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 15 The Zoo Is Open

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What animals do you think are dangerous? Why? 你认为什么动物是危险的？为什么？
- What rules should we obey at the zoo? 在动物园里我们应该遵守什么规定？

课文朗读

It's Saturday. Jenny, Danny and Brian don't have classes today. They go to the zoo.

今天是星期六。詹妮、丹尼和布赖恩今天没有课。他们去动物园。

At a quarter to eleven, Brian, Jenny and Danny arrive at the zoo. They go through the entrance and see a sign.

在 10:45，布赖恩、詹妮和丹尼到达动物园。他们从入口进去，看到一个标牌。

Danger ① /'deɪndʒə/! 危险！

Do not feed ② the animals! 不要喂动物！

No Photos! 禁止拍照！

Danny: (He points to ③ the sign.)Why can't we take photos ④?

(他指着标牌。)我们为什么不能拍照？

Brian: Maybe cameras scare the animals. When animals are scared ⑤, they can be dangerous /'deɪndʒərəs/.

可能照相机会惊吓到动物们。当动物们受到惊吓时，它们是危险的。

Jenny: Look! There's a bear. And he's sleeping.

看！有一只熊。他正在睡觉。

Danny: It's nearly noon. He's very lazy! Wake up ⑥, Mr. Bear! I have some donuts for you!

将近中午了。他很懒惰！醒醒，熊先生！我有一些面包圈给你！

Jenny: Danny, stop! You can't feed donuts to a bear!

丹尼，停下！你不能把面包圈喂给熊！

Brian: Remember the sign? We can't feed the animals.

记得标牌吗？我们不能喂动物。

Danny: Oh, that's right! Sorry, I forgot. Let's see the pandas. They're so cute.

哦，对！对不起，我忘了。咱们看看熊猫吧。它们很可爱。

Jenny: We don't have any pandas at the Edmonton Zoo, Danny.

在埃德蒙顿动物园里我们没有熊猫，丹尼。

Danny: Why not? 为什么没有呢？

Jenny: Pandas live mainly /'meɪnlɪ/ in China. They eat bamboo /bæm'bu:/. We don't have any bamboo here in Edmonton.

熊猫大多生活在中国。它们吃竹子。在埃德蒙顿这里我们没有竹子。

Danny: I see. But we have lots of ⑦ grass here. Look at those giraffes /dʒɪ'rɑ:fs/. They like eating grass. Maybe the pandas could eat some grass instead of bamboo.

我明白了。但是我们这儿有许多草。看那些长颈鹿。它们喜欢吃草。也许熊猫可以吃一些草代替竹子。

Jenny: And maybe you could eat some carrots instead of all those donuts.

也许你可以吃一些胡萝卜来代替所有的那些面包圈。

Danny: You're funny, Jenny. I'm a dinosaur, not a rabbit.

你真逗，詹妮。我是一只恐龙，不是一只兔子。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Listen and tick the correct answers.

听并在正确的答案旁打钩。

1. What day is today?

今天星期几?

☐ Saturday. 星期六。

☐ Sunday. 星期日。

2. Where do they go?

他们去哪里?

☐ The zoo. 动物园。

☐ The park. 公园。

3. What time is it when they arrive?

他们到的时候是几点?

☐ 11:15 a.m. 上午 11:15。

☐ 10:45 a.m. 上午 10:45。

4. What do they see at the entrance?

在入口处他们看到了什么?

☐ A photo. 一张照片。

☐ A sign. 一个标牌。

5. What animals do they see?

他们看到了什么动物?

☐ A bear and a panda.

一只熊和一只熊猫。

☐ A bear and some giraffes.

一只熊和一些长颈鹿。

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words or phrases in the box.

用方框中所给的单词或短语的正确形式填空。

danger 危险　nearly 几乎　instead of 代替 go through 通过　take photos 照相 wake up 醒来

1. This box is too big. It can't _____ the door.

这个箱子太大了。它不能 _____ 这个门。

2. We took the plane _____ the train to travel there.

我们坐飞机 _____ 坐火车去那里旅行。

3. Excuse me, can I _____ here? It's beautiful!

打扰一下，我能在这里 _____ 吗? 它很美!

4. The boys are playing soccer on the street. It's very _____.

这些男孩正在街上踢足球。它很 _____。

5. I never remember my dreams when I _____.

我从没记住我的梦当我 _____ 时。

6. It was _____ 10:00 p.m. when he got home last night.

昨晚当他回家时 _____ 是晚上 10 点钟了。

PROJECT 方案

WE'RE GOING TO THE ZOO!

我们打算去动物园!

Have you ever visited a zoo? Write a story about your trip to the zoo. Don't forget to answer these questions:

你曾经参观过动物园吗? 写一个关于你去动物园旅行的故事。不要忘记回答这些问题：

- When did you go to the zoo?

你什么时候去的动物园?

- Who went to the zoo with you?

谁和你一起去的动物园?

- What animals did you see?

你看到了什么动物?

- What animals did you like best? Why?

你最喜欢什么动物? 为什么?

- Did you feed any animals?

你喂过一些动物吗?

- Are zoos good for animals? Why or why not?

动物园对动物有好处吗? 为什么有或为什么没有?

Zoos help stop animals from going extinct.

动物园有助于阻止动物走向灭绝。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★ Danger! Do not feed the animals!

① [高频] **danger** /'deɪndʒə/ *n.* 危险

dangerous adj. 危险的
↑
danger n. 危险
↓
safety n. 安全

be in danger 处于危险状态
be out of danger 脱离危险

e.g. More and more drivers know the danger of the drunken driving.
越来越多的司机认识到了酒后驾车的危险性。

It is dangerous for children to swim alone.
孩子们独自游泳很危险。

We should obey road safety rules.
我们应该遵守道路安全规则。

Much to my joy, my friend was quite out of danger.
让我很高兴的是，我的朋友完全脱离了危险。

考题在线 1 —Most of the wild animals are _____ because of their bad living environment.
—So we must do something to save them. [襄阳]
A. in need　　B. on duty　　C. at work　　D. in danger

点拨：短语辨析法。句意：——因为它们糟糕的生活环境，大多数野生动物 _____。——因此我们必须做些事情来拯救它们。in need 需要；in duty 值日；at work 在工作；in danger 处于危险中。由答语中“to save them”，判断出“大多数野生动物处于危险之中”。

② **feed** /fi:d/ *v.* (to give food to a person or an animal) 喂养

feed...to... 意为“给……喂……”，feed 后接表示食物或饲料的名词，to 为介词，其后一般接“喂养”的对象。

e.g. Have you fed fish to the cat yet? 你给猫喂鱼了吗?
Please feed some grass to the sheep. 请给羊喂一些草吧。

feed — fed — fed

拓展：① feed…(on)… 意为“用……喂……”，feed 后接表示人或动物的名词，on 后接表示食物或饲料的名词。

e.g. Look! The children are feeding the monkey (on) bananas.
看！孩子们在用香蕉喂那只猴子。

② feed on 意为“以……为食；靠……为生”，其主语通常是动物，也可以是婴儿，宾语是表示食物或饲料的名词。

feed 羊 on 草
feed 草 to 羊



e.g. Cattle feed on grass. 牛以草为食。

考题在线 2 根据汉语意思完成句子

①婴儿主要以牛奶为主食。
Babies _____ mainly _____ milk.



feed 火炉 with 煤
feed 煤 to 火炉

②我们用鲜肉喂狗。
We _____ the dog _____ fresh meat.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★ **He points to the sign.**

③ **point to 指向** 表示手或指针朝向某处或某个方向。

e.g. The compass needle points to north.

罗盘指针指向北方。

He pointed to the house on the other side of the river and smiled.

他指着河对岸的房子笑了。

Don't point at the words while you are reading.

你读书时不要用手指着字。

辨析：point to 与 point at

① point to 多用来表示指向离说话人较远的事物，侧重指的方向。

② point at 常用来表示指向离说话人较近的事物，侧重指的对象。

★ **Why can't we take photos?**

④ **take photos 拍照；照相** 拍照，照相 { take a photo (take photos) / take a picture (take pictures)

e.g. I took many photos in Beijing last year.

去年我在北京拍了很多照片。

[注意] take a photo of sb. 意为"给某人照相"，是给他本人照相，而 take a photo for sb. 意为"为某人照相"，相片上不一定有他本人。

★ **When animals are scared, they can be dangerous.**

⑤ **scared** /skeəd/ *adj.* **吓人的**

敲黑板 易错点，易混点，牢记。

辨析：scared 与 scary

scared	"惊吓的；吓坏了的"，常作表语，说明主语受到了惊吓。
scary	"吓人的"，可作表语或定语，常说明某物具有吓人的特征。

e.g. I felt scared because of the big dog!

因为这只大狗，我感到害怕！

The movie is really scary! 这部电影真恐怖！

You're scaring me. 你吓着我了。 scare 此处用作动词，意为"使惊吓，使受惊"

★ **Wake up, Mr. Bear!**

⑥ **wake up 醒来**

e.g. Wake up, honey. It's time to have breakfast.

醒一醒，亲爱的。该吃早餐了。

Please wake me up at 6:30 a.m. tomorrow.

up 是副词，若宾语为代词，必须放在 wake 和 up 之间。

请在明天早上 6:30 叫醒我。

★ **I see. But we have lots of grass here.**

⑦ **[高频] lots of 许多；大量**

lots of 意为"许多，大量"，相当于 a lot of。它既可以修饰可数名词的复数形式，也可以修饰不可数名词。

e.g. We eat lots of/many bananas.

我们吃许多香蕉。

They have lots of/much ice cream.

他们有许多冰激凌。

lots of 修饰可数名词的复数形式时，相当于 many；修饰不可数名词时，相当于 much。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★ **Zoos help stop animals from going extinct.**

⑧ **stop...from doing** 阻止……做某事

e.g. There's nothing to stop you from accepting the offer.
你尽可以接受那个提议。

He locked the jewels in a safe to keep them from being stolen.
为了防止珠宝被偷，他把珠宝锁在一个保险柜里。

His back injury may prevent him (from) playing in tomorrow's game.
他的背伤可能会阻止他参加明天的比赛。

"阻止……做某事"还可用 keep...from doing sth. 和 prevent...(from) doing sth. 表示。

在主动语态中 from 可省略。

考题在线答案 1. D 2. ① feed; on ② feed; on

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见286页)

一、用方框中所给短语或单词的适当形式填空

dangerous	feed	wake up
take photos	scare	

1. What time do you usually _____ in the morning?
2. My dad likes to bring his camera and _____ of me.
3. The thunder _____ the children last night.
4. The boy is too young to know the _____ of smoking. [临沂改编]
5. Don't _____ nuts to the baby.

二、根据汉语完成句子

6. 彼得在吃早饭的时候喜欢看报纸。
Peter likes reading a newspaper _____ he is having breakfast.
7. 孩子们每次过这条马路时，都面临着生命危险。
Children's lives are _____ _____ every time they cross the road.
8. 听着，我的孩子！作为一名学生，你应该远离网吧而不是熬夜在里面玩电脑游戏。 [襄阳改编]
Listen, my child! As a student, you should stay away from the Internet bar _____ _____ staying up to play computer games in it.
9. 祖母通常在早上很早就醒来。 [福州改编]
Grandma usually _____ _____ early in the morning.
10. 为什么不让孩子们去他们想去的地方呢？ [荆门]
_____ _____ _____ the children go where they want?

三、连词成句

11. point, don't, to, others, fingers, with
_____.
12. the, are, lots, of, zoo, in, monkeys, there
_____.
13. animals, be, some, can, dangerous
_____.
14. go, let's, a, to, out, play, for, while
_____.
15. help, take, could, me, photos, you
_____?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 16 The Bear Escaped!

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What do you know about April Fools'Day? 关于愚人节你了解什么?
- Have you ever played a trick on a friend? What did you do?
  你曾经和朋友开过玩笑吗? 你做了什么?

课文朗读

Jenny and Brian are in the classroom. They are looking for Danny.
詹妮和布赖恩在教室里。他们正在找丹尼。

Jenny: (She whispers.)There's Danny, Brian. And he is sleeping! Let's do it now!
(她小声说。)丹尼在那里，布赖恩。他正在睡觉! 咱们现在行动吧!

Brian: (He smiles.) OK. (他笑。)好吧。
(They quietly walk over to Danny.)
(他们悄悄地走到丹尼旁边。)

Brian: Danny! Danny! Wake up! The bear at the zoo woke up! He escaped /ɪs'keɪpt/! We heard about ① it on the radio!
丹尼! 丹尼! 醒醒! 动物园里的熊醒了! 他逃跑了! 我们在收音机上听说了这件事!

Danny: (He is excited.) He escaped? That's great!(他很兴奋。)他逃跑了? 那太好了!

Jenny: No, Danny! What will happen if ② he comes to our neighbourhood?
不，丹尼! 如果他来到我们社区会发生什么呢?

Brian: On Saturday, you asked the bear to wake up. You wanted to give him some donuts. Do you remember? Maybe the bear is coming to get his donuts!
在星期六，你要熊醒过来。你想给他一些面包圈。你记得吗? 熊可能是来要他的面包圈的!

Jenny: (She laughs.) Maybe you will have a new pet, Danny—a pet bear!(她笑。)可能你将会有一个新的宠物，丹尼——一只宠物熊!

Danny: Oh no! I don't have any donuts today. He will be angry!
哦，不! 今天我没有面包圈。他会生气的!

Brian: He might eat you instead, Danny!
他可能会吃掉你来代替面包圈，丹尼!
(Danny jumps up and down.)(丹尼上下跳着。)

Danny: Run, everyone! There's a fierce /fɪəs/ bear coming. ③ Protect ④ /prə'tekt/ yourselves!
快跑，各位! 有只凶猛的熊要来了。保护你们自己!
(Danny suddenly stops and thinks.)
(丹尼突然停下来想了想。)

Danny: Hey... Wait a minute. Why are you laughing? You're joking ⑤, aren't you? ⑥
嘿……等一下。你们为什么笑? 你们在开玩笑，不是吗?

Brian & Jenny: (They point at Danny.) Happy April Fools' /fu:lz/ Day!
(他们指着丹尼。)愚人节快乐!

Culture Tip 文化提示

April Fools' Day is the first day of April. In most Western countries, people like to play jokes on each other. When you play a joke on somebody, you laugh and they laugh, too. But don't play jokes that make other people sad or mad. April Fools' Day is meant to be fun for everyone.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

愚人节是四月的第一天。在大多数西方国家，人们喜欢相互开玩笑。当你和某人开玩笑时，你笑，他们也笑。但不要开那些使别人难过或发疯的玩笑。愚人节是使人人都快乐的节日。

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and fill in the blanks to complete the story.

阅读课文然后填空完成这个故事。

Today was April Fools' Day. Jenny and Brian wanted to play a trick on Danny. Danny was sleeping. Jenny and Brian _____ him up. They told Danny a bear _____ from the zoo. Danny was not scared when he first heard the news. _____, he felt happy. Then he heard the bear was coming for his donuts. He was scared and told everyone to run. But he soon realized they were playing a _____ on him. 今天是愚人节。詹妮和布赖恩想捉弄一下丹尼。丹尼正在睡觉。詹妮和布赖恩把他 _____。他们告诉丹尼一只熊从动物园里 _____。丹尼刚听到这个消息时不害怕。_____，他感到高兴。然后他听说熊要来是为了他的面包圈。他害怕了并告诉大家快跑。但他很快就意识到他们是在和他开 _____。

2 Listen to this introduction about bears. Then correct the following passage.



听这个关于熊的介绍。然后改正下面的短文。

Bears are gentle animals. A bear usually has a large body with long, strong legs, a long nose and a short tail. While polar bears eat meat and giant pandas feed on grass, other bears eat both meat and fruit. Bears can run faster than tigers and lions. They are good swimmers. They are also good at climbing trees. The number of bears is getting bigger and bigger. There are only seven kinds of bears in the world now. We should protect them and stop them from disappearing.

熊是温和的动物。一只熊通常有一个庞大的身躯，有长长的壮实的腿，一个长鼻子和一条短尾巴。然而北极熊吃肉，大熊猫吃草，其他熊吃肉和水果。熊能比老虎和狮子跑得快。它们是优秀的游泳者。它们也擅长爬树。熊的数量正变得越来越大。现在世界上只有7种熊。我们应该保护它们并阻止它们消失。

3 Search for more information about April Fools' Day on the Internet or in books, then do the following things. 在网上或书中找更多关于愚人节的信息，然后做下面的事。

1. Write down the information on a piece of paper. 把信息写在一张纸上。
2. Exchange it with a partner or a group member. 和一名搭档或一名组员交换信息。
3. Imagine today is April Fools' Day. Work in groups and think about how you can play a joke on your friends. Whose joke is the most interesting? 设想今天是愚人节。分组练习，想想你能怎样和你的朋友们开玩笑。谁的玩笑是最有趣的？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

·考点应用 ·考点批注

★ We heard about it on the radio!

① hear about 听说

e.g. Yesterday Lucy heard from her mother.

昨天露西收到了她妈妈的来信。

Have you heard about the accident yet?

你已经听说那起事故了吗?

I've heard about/of his illness. 我听说他生病了。

考题在线 1 We have never visited the museum, but we have _____ it.

A. stood for　　B. belonged to

C. heard about　　D. kept to

点拨: 用短语辨析法。stand for 意为"代表"; belong to 意为"属于"; hear about 意为"听说"; keep to 意为"遵守"。

辨析: hear about/of 与 hear from

① hear about/of 意为"听说,得知",后面接表示人或事物的名词。

② hear from 意为"收到某人的来信",后面接某人。

★ What will happen if he comes to our neighbourhood?

② if 引导条件状语从句

e.g. We will help him if he comes to us for help.

如果他来向我们求助,我们就会帮他。

当主句为一般将来时,if 条件从句用一般现在时表示将来,即遵循"主将从现"原则。

★ There's a fierce bear coming.

敲黑板 高频考点,牢记,掌握!

③ [高频] There be sb. /sth. doing sth. 有某人 / 某物在做某事。

e.g. There is a boy riding a bike on the playground.

操场上有个男孩在骑自行车。

There is someone knocking at the door. 有人在敲门。

sb./sth. 是主语,动词的-ing 和主语具有主动关系。there be 句型遵循"就近原则"。

★ Protect yourselves!

④ protect /prə'tekt/ *v.* 保护

e.g. We should protect these children.

我们应该保护这些儿童。

He protects his hands from the cold with gloves.

他用手套保护他的手不受冻。

protect ...from... 保护……不受……

考题在线 2 The school should protect students _____ any danger.

A. off　　B. away

C. of　　D. from

★ You're joking, aren't you?

⑤ joke /dʒəʊk/ *v.* & *n.* 开玩笑; 玩笑, 笑话

e.g. Don't play jokes on the shy boy.

不要戏弄那个害羞的男孩。

常用短语: play a joke/jokes on sb. 开某人的玩笑,戏弄某人,相当于 play a trick/tricks on sb..

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

特别要注意前否后肯的反意疑问句的答语中yes和no的汉语意思。

⑥ 反意疑问句 前肯后否，前否后肯。

此句是一个反意疑问句。它由两个部分组成：陈述句 + 简短疑问部分。它的主要形式有两种：陈述句部分是肯定式，疑问部分用否定形式；陈述句部分用否定式，疑问部分用肯定形式。

回答：反意疑问句的回答要依据事实，如果事实是肯定的，就用“Yes+ 肯定结构”；如果事实是否定的，就用“No + 否定结构”。

e.g. —You didn't go to school, did you? 你没有去上学，是吗？

—Yes, I did./No, I didn't. 不，我去了。/ 是的，我没有去。

考题在线答案 1. C 2. D

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见286页）

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. There are some children _____ (play) in the park.

2. I happened _____ (be) there.

3. People like to play _____ (joke) on each other in Western countries.

4. We should protect the wild animals from _____ (go) extinct.

5. I don't know if Sam _____ (come) tomorrow.

二、用方框中所给单词或短语的适当形式填空

happen	protect...from...	hear of
play a joke	fool	

6. I like to _____ on my friends.

7. —What _____ to you?

—I fell off my bike yesterday.

8. We wear the sunglasses to _____ our eyes _____ the sun.

9. I know April 1st is April _____ Day.

10. I have just _____ his illness.

三、按要求完成句子

11. The animals are sleeping in the zoo. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ the animals _____ in the zoo?

12. Don't play with fire! My mother asked me. (合并为一句)

My mother asked me _____ _____ _____ with fire.

13. Danny likes donuts. Danny doesn't like bread. (合并为一句)

Danny likes donuts _____ _____ bread.

14. There are some students in the classroom. (改为否定句)

There _____ _____ students in the classroom.

15. We heard the bad news yesterday. (改为一般疑问句)

_____ you _____ the bad news yesterday?

四、连词成句

16. we, heard, on , it, radio, the

_____.

17. boys, on, are, the, some, playing, there, playground

_____.

18. fierce, there, a, is, bear, coming

_____.

19. what, happen, to, will, her

_____?

20. the, can, protect, us, sunglasses, the, from, sun

_____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 17 Save the Tigers

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Where can you usually see a tiger? 你通常会在哪里看到一只老虎?
- Do you think tigers need our help? Why or why not?
  你认为老虎需要我们的帮助吗? 为什么需要或为什么不需要?

课文朗读

"Save the tigers" is a group of volunteers. These volunteers hope to save the tigers of the world. At the beginning of ① the 20th century /'sentʃərɪ/, the number of ② tigers in the wild was around 100 000. But today that number has dropped to ③ a few thousand.

"拯救老虎"是一个志愿者组织。这些志愿者希望拯救世界上的老虎。在 20 世纪初，野生老虎的数量在 100 000 只左右。但是今天那个数量已下降到了几千只。

Tigers live in the forests of Asia. They usually have orange fur /fɜ:/ and dark stripes. Tigers are symbols ④ /'sɪmblz/ of strength and courage ⑤ /'kʌrɪdʒ/. In many stories, they are brave ⑥ /breɪv/. The tiger is at the top of the food chain /tʃeɪn/. It helps keep the number of other wild animals in balance ⑦ /'bæləns/. For this reason ⑧ /'ri:zn/, tigers are important to the environment.

老虎生活在亚洲的森林里。它们通常有着橘黄色的毛和深色的条纹。老虎是力量和勇气的象征。在许多故事中，它们是勇敢的。老虎位于食物链的顶端。它有助于保持其他野生动物的数量平衡。因为这个原因，老虎对于环境来说很重要。

In recent years, tigers have been in danger of disappearing /ˌdɪsə'pɪərɪŋ/. Some people hunt and kill /kɪl/ tigers for money. People have cut /kʌt/ down ⑨ a lot of trees as well ⑩. As forests disappear, tigers lose their homes. The number of tigers in the wild is quickly decreasing /dɪ'kri:sɪŋ/ and we must do something about it.

近几年来，老虎已经处于消失的危险中。一些人为了金钱而猎杀老虎。人们还砍伐了许多树木。因为森林的消失，老虎失去它们的家园。野生老虎的数目很快减少，我们必须为这做些事。

Save the Tigers group works to protect the tigers. "拯救老虎"组织为了保护老虎而努力。

These tigers live in a zoo.
这些老虎生活在一个动物园里。

Learning Tip 学习提示

There are currently six types of tigers: the Bengal tiger, the Siberian tiger, the Sumatran tiger, the Malayan tiger, the Indochinese tiger and the South China tiger.

目前有六种老虎：孟加拉虎，西伯利亚虎，苏门答腊虎，马来亚虎，印度支那虎和华南虎。

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and match each paragraph with its main idea.

阅读课文，将每个段落和它的主旨大意搭配在一起。

Save the Tigers 拯救老虎

Paragraph 1 第一段

Paragraph 2 第二段

Paragraph 3 第三段

A. Tigers are in danger of going extinct.
老虎濒临灭绝。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B. "Save the Tigers" is a volunteer group that hopes to stop the tigers from disappearing.
"拯救老虎"是一个志愿者组织，他们希望阻止老虎灭绝。

C. Tigers are important to the environment.
老虎对环境来说很重要。

2 Read the lesson again and find some sentences to support the main idea of each paragraph.
再次阅读课文，找出一些能说明每段主旨大意的句子。

Save the Tigers 拯救老虎

Paragraph 1 第一段

Paragraph 2 第二段

Paragraph 3 第三段

3 Work in groups and discuss some ways we can protect animals. Write down your ideas.
小组学习并讨论我们能保护动物的一些方法。写下你们的想法。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★ At the beginning of the 20th century, the number of tigers in the wild was around 100 000.

其后常接表示时间、事件或其他意义的名词，其反义词组 at the end of... 意为"在……的结尾 / 末端"。

① at the beginning of... 在……之初

e.g. At the beginning of the class, the teacher gave out some books to us.
开始上课时，老师给我们发了一些书。

We shall have an exam at the end of this month.
本月底我们将有一场考试。

② [高频] the number of ……的数目 / 数量　后接可数名词的复数形式。

e.g. The number of the apples is 40.
苹果的数量是四十。

The number of wild animals has become smaller and smaller in recent years.
最近几年，野生动物的数量已经变得越来越少。

The number of the students in our school is about 3 500.
我们学校的学生人数大约是三千五百人。

A number of students are playing in the playground.
许多学生正在操场上玩。

辨析：the number of 与 a number of
① the number of ……的数目 / 数量；后接可数名词的复数形式，作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。
② a number of 许多，大量；修饰可数名词的复数形式，作主语时，谓语动词用复数形式。

考题在线 1　—The number of tourists _____ over 33 million this year.
—Yes. A large number of tourists _____ so far because of the new look of our city.　[天水]

A. is; have come　　B. is; has come
C. are; has come　　D. are; have come

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

点拨：主谓一致法。句意：——今年游客的数量已经超过三千三百万人。——是的。因为我们城市的新面孔，到目前为止，大量的游客已经到来。the number of 意为“……的数量”，作主语时，其后的谓语动词用单数形式；a large number of 意为“许多的；大量的”，作主语时，其后谓语动词用复数形式。

There is no royal road to learning.
学习没有捷径。

★ **But today that number has dropped to a few thousand.**

③ **drop to 下降到；跌到**

e.g. The temperature will drop to three below zero. 气温会降到零下三度。

★ **Tigers are symbols of strength and courage.**

④ **symbol** /ˈsɪmbl/ *n.* **标志；象征** symbol 常与 of 搭配，表示“……的标志/象征”。

e.g. Doves are symbols of peace. 鸽子是和平的象征。

核心素养之文化意识

培养“保护动物”素养

◆ 由于人类的破坏与栖息地的丧失等因素，地球上濒临灭绝生物的比例正在以惊人的速度增长。在工业社会以前，鸟类平均每300年灭绝一种，兽类平均每8 000年灭绝一种；但是自从工业社会以来，地球物种灭绝的速度已经超出自然灭绝率的1 000倍。全世界$\frac{1}{8}$的植物，$\frac{1}{4}$的哺乳动物，$\frac{1}{9}$的鸟类，$\frac{1}{5}$的爬行动物，$\frac{1}{4}$的两栖动物，$\frac{1}{3}$的鱼类，都濒临灭绝。所以保护动物刻不容缓，全世界都在号召保护动物。动物保护的核心内容是禁止虐待、残害、猎杀和捕食任何野生动物。

◆ 【素养行动】同学们在日常生活中，要保护动物，使地球保持生态平衡，珍惜大自然里的每一个生灵吧！

◆ 【素养行动结果】在日常生活中，关爱、保护动物，学会与动物和谐相处。



⑤ **courage** /ˈkʌrɪdʒ/ *n.* **勇气；胆量** 常用短语 take courage to do sth. 鼓起勇气做某事！

它通常用作不可数名词。当它与动词 have、lack 等连用时，其前常加定冠词 the；而与 take、lose 连用时一般不加定冠词。

e.g. Do you have the courage to go bungee jumping? 你有胆量玩蹦极吗？

★ **In many stories, they are brave.**

⑥ **brave** /breɪv/ *adj.* **勇敢的；无畏的**

e.g. Be a brave boy, Tommy. 汤米，做一个勇敢的男孩儿。

★ **It helps keep the number of other wild animals in balance.**

⑦ **keep...in balance 使……处于平衡状态；保持……的平衡** 该短语的结构为：keep+宾语+宾语补足语（介词短语），其中宾补还可以是名词、形容词或动名词等。

e.g. We should keep the nature in balance. 我们应该使自然保持平衡。

★ **For this reason, tigers are important to the environment.**

⑧ **reason** /ˈriːzn/ *n.* **原因；动机；理由** reason 常和 for 连用，意为“……的原因”，但和 because 不在一个句子中出现。

e.g. What is the reason for your long silence?
你长时间沉默的原因是什么？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

For reasons of safety, the door is always kept locked.
为了安全，门总是锁着。

It is not in reason to ask him to do that. 要求他做那种事是不合情理的。

常构成的短语：
- for reasons of 为了，出于
- in reason 合情合理的，正当的

拓展：reasonable *adj.* 合乎情理的；公道的

e.g. He made us a reasonable offer for the car.
他给我们出的车价公平合理。

考题在线 2 —Look! The boss is angry with Alex.
—Well, he came late again. But there's no _____ to shout at him. [武汉]

A. problem　　B. lesson　　C. excuse　　D. reason

点拨：用词语辨析法。句意：——看！老板生亚历克斯的气了。——哎，他又迟到了。但是那也没有理由冲他大喊大叫。problem 问题；lesson 课；excuse 借口；reason 理由。另外，There is no reason to do sth. 没有理由做某事。

★ **People have cut down a lot of trees as well.**

⑨ **[高频] cut down 砍倒；减少**

敲黑板 动副短语，代词作宾语，宾语放中间；名词作宾语放中间或后边。

e.g. The apple tree was dead, so he cut it down.
那棵苹果树死了，所以他把它砍倒了。

People cut down trees to make paper.
人们砍伐树木来造纸。

A storm cut off the power.
一场暴风雨切断了电源。

Please help me cut up the meat. 请帮我把肉切碎。

与 cut 有关的短语：
- cut down 砍倒；削减
- cut off 切断；中断
- cut up 切碎

考题在线 3 I think young phubbers（低头族）are supposed to _____ the time they spend _____ their smart phones. [安顺]

A. cut off; in　　B. cut down; on

C. cut up; on　　D. cut in; in

点拨：短语辨析法。句意：我认为年轻的低头族应该减少花费在他们的智能手机上的时间。cut off 切断；cut up 切碎；cut in 插入；cut down 削减。spend… on sth. 在某物上花费……。

⑩ **as well（除某事或某人外）还；也**

敲黑板 高频考点，易错点，牢记！

e.g. Are they coming as well? 他们也来吗？

辨析：as well, too, either 与 also

① as well 用于肯定句，总是用在句末。

as well 前不用逗号与句子的其他部分隔开

e.g. I am going to London and my sister is going as well.
我要去伦敦，我妹妹也要去。

② too 用于肯定句，常位于句末。too 前有无逗号均可

e.g. I'm good at cooking, too. 我也擅长烹饪。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

③ either 用于否定句，位于句末。

e.g. If you don't go there, he won't go there either.

如果你不去那儿，他也不会去那儿。

④ also 用于肯定句，位于 be 动词、情态动词或助动词之后，行为动词之前。

e.g. Mrs. Green can also sing the song in Chinese.

格林夫人也能用汉语唱这首歌。



考题在线 4 He speaks English and French _____.

A. also　　B. either　　C. as well　　D. neither

点拨：用词语辨析法。also 用于句中，位于 be 动词、情态动词或助动词之后，行为动词之前；either 用在否定句句末；as well 可用在肯定句句末；neither 意为“两者都不”。句意为“他还会说英语和法语”。

考题在线答案 1. A　2. D　3. B　4. C

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练　稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见287页）

一、根据句意及首字母提示完成句子

1. His parents were born in the 80's of the 20th c_____.

2. Tigers are symbols of strength and c_____.

3. We k_____ time by chatting with our friends on the Internet during the night.

4. He didn't tell us the r_____ for being late.

5. The young woman is very b_____. She is not afraid of anything.　[广州]

二、单项选择

6. I like English. Tom likes it _____.

A. either　　B. also

C. as well as　　D. as well

7. The trees were _____ to make space for a new road.

A. cut down　　B. cut through

C. cut up　　D. cut out

8. There _____ a number of books in the library and the number of them _____ increasing.　[烟台]

A. has; is　　B. have; are

C. are; is　　D. is; are

9. _____ the story, the little boy returned home and stayed with his parents.

A. By the end of　　B. At the beginning of

C. At the end of　　D. In the end

10. —Could you help me _____ the beef for dinner, Jean?

—OK, Mom. I'll do it right away.　[达州]

A. take off　　B. knock off

C. cut down　　D. cut up

三、根据汉语完成句子

11. 这个月初他们的儿子出生了。

Their son was born _____ _____ _____ _____ this month.

12. 吉姆也要来参加聚会。

Jim is coming to the party _____ _____.

13. 荷兰队已降至第五名。

The Dutch team _____ _____ _____ the fifth place.

14. 苹果的数量是四十。

_____ _____ _____ the apples _____ 40.

15. 自然界的食物链应保持平衡。

The _____ _____ in nature should be _____ _____ _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 18 Friendship Between Animals

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注

批 体裁：

应用文

批 文章结构：

本篇文章包括两部分（即两封信），两部分之间是并列关系，每部分内部属于总—分—总结构。

原文译文 · 导读

Pre-reading（读前）

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Do you think there is friendship /'frendʃɪp/ between animals?
  你认为动物之间有友谊吗?
- What different animals have you seen living well together?
  你见过什么不同（种类）的动物友好地生活在一起?

While-reading（读中）

- How do the rhino and an egret help each other?
  犀牛和白鹭怎样互相帮助?
- How is the story of *Owen and Mzee*?《河马与乌龟》的故事怎么样?

课文朗读

Dear Li Ming, 亲爱的李明：

This week we learned about some interesting animals.
这周我们学习了一些有趣的动物。

批 词语赏析：（画"⌒"处）used to 与 But yesterday 形成对比，增强文章艺术效果和感染力。

I used to ① think only the same animals live together. But yesterday I learned that sometimes different animals live together. Do you know about the rhino /'raɪnəʊ/? It is big and strong. But it always lets a small bird, an egret, sit on its back.

Are they having fun together? Maybe, but mainly they are helping each other. The egret helps the rhino stay healthy by ② cleaning its skin /skɪn/. It also makes noise to warn ③ /wɔːn/ the rhino about coming danger. The rhino helps the egret get food easily. How? It scares small insects /'ɪnsekts/ hiding in the grass, and the egret eats them. 我过去常常认为只有同一种类的动物生活在一起。但是昨天，我学习了有时候不同的动物也生活在一起。你知道犀牛吗？它又大又壮。但是它总是让一只小鸟——一只白鹭，停落在它的背上。它们在一起玩吗？可能是，但它们主要是相互帮助。白鹭通过清洁犀牛的皮肤来帮助犀牛保持健康。它也发出声音来警告犀牛即将到来的危险。犀牛帮助白鹭很轻易地获得食物。它怎么做到的呢？它吓唬藏在草里面的小昆虫，然后白鹭吃掉它们。

批 句子：（画"～"处）用疑问句的形式，引起读者关注，同时引出下文，过渡自然，衔接顺畅。

Isn't that interesting? 那不是很有趣吗?

Danny 丹尼

Dear Danny, 亲爱的丹尼：

批 句子：（画"≈"处）感叹句的恰当使用，赞扬了河马与乌龟之间的美好友谊。

否定疑问句的使用表达了肯定的意思且语气更加强烈。

What a beautiful relationship /rɪ'leɪʃənʃɪp/ they have! Sometimes different

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

animals get together not just to survive /sə'vaɪv/, but also for friendship. Have you heard the story of Owen /'əʊɪn/ and Mzee /m'zi:/? Last week we read that story in class. 它们之间的关系多么美好啊！有时候不同的动物聚在一起不只是为了生存，而且是为了友谊。你听说过欧文和龟老人的故事吗？上周，我们在课堂上读了那个故事。

It's a very sad story, but it has a very happy ending. Owen, a baby hippo /'hɪpəʊ/, lost his parents in a big storm. Mzee is a 130-year-old ④tortoise /'tɔ:təs/. The two found each other and became good friends. They ate, slept and swam together. 它是一个非常悲伤的故事，但是它有一个非常快乐的结尾。欧文，一只小河马，在一场大的暴风雨中失去了双亲。龟老人是一只 130 岁的乌龟。他们两个相互发现了对方并成了好朋友。他们在一起吃、睡和游泳。

That's a true story of friendship! It touched many people's hearts.
那是一个有关友谊的真实故事！它触动了许多人的心。

"How do they understand each other? " I asked Ms. Liu. She said, "Good friends can show they care without ⑤words." "他们是怎样相互理解的？"我问刘老师。她说："好朋友不用言语就能表达关心。"

She's right. Friendship truly /'tru:lɪ/ has no boundaries /'baʊndərɪz/.
她是对的。友谊确实没有边界。

Li Ming 李明

批 词语赏析：not just...but also... 的使用恰当地表述了不同动物在一起的目的，紧扣文章主题。

批 句子：（画"～"处）总结全文，点明主旨，简洁明了。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔☞（见106页）

课文听力

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Listen and fill in the blanks. 听并填空。

This week Danny learned about _____. He learned about the relationship between the egret and the rhino. The rhino is big and _____. But it lets a small bird called an egret sit on its _____. They help each other. The egret helps to _____ the rhino's skin. It also makes noise to _____ the rhino about coming danger. The rhino helps the egret get food more _____.

这周丹尼学习了 _____。他了解了白鹭和犀牛之间的关系。犀牛又大又 _____。但是它让一只叫白鹭的小鸟停落在它的 _____ 上。它们相互帮助。白鹭帮助 _____ 犀牛的皮肤。它还发出声音 _____ 犀牛即将到来的危险。犀牛帮助白鹭得到食物更 _____。

2 Read the lesson and answer the questions. 阅读课文并回答问题。

1. What is the relationship between the egret and the rhino?
白鹭和犀牛之间是什么关系？
2. Who is Owen? Who is Mzee? 谁是欧文？谁是龟老人？
3. How did people feel when they heard the story of friendship between Owen and Mzee?
当人们听了欧文和龟老人之间的友谊的故事他们感觉如何？
4. Do good friends need to say something to show they care?
好朋友之间需要说一些表达他们关心的话吗？

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3 Read the lesson again and fill in the blanks. 再次阅读课文并填空。

When Owen was a baby _____, he lost his parents in a big _____. He felt very sad and lonely. But everything changed when he met Mzee, a 130-year-old _____. They built a good _____. They ate, slept and swam _____. Owen felt happy again.

当欧文是一只小 _____ 时，在一场大 _____ 中，他失去了双亲。他感到很难过和孤独。但是当他遇见龟老人，一只 130 岁的 _____ 时，一切都变了。他们建立了一份不错的 _____。他们 _____ 吃、睡和游泳。欧文又感到快乐了。

4 Look at the two pictures below. What do you think the animals are saying to each other? Fill in the bubbles and act out the dialogues.

看下面两幅图片。你认为动物们互相正在说些什么？填写这些气泡框，并表演这些对话。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注

•考点应用

★ I used to think only the same animals live together.

① [高频] used to 过去常常 敲黑板 高频考点，牢记！

used to do sth. 过去常常做某事

be used to (doing) sth. 习惯于（做）某事

be used to do sth. 被用来做某事

e.g. He used to read in the sun.

他过去常在阳光下读书。

He used to get up early. 他过去常常早起。

I'm used to reading in the morning.

我习惯在早晨阅读。

Wi-Fi is used to connect the Internet. Wi-Fi 被用来连接网络。

考题在线 1 —My father _____ to his workplace by bus, but now he _____ there by bike.

—Really? You have an environmentally-friendly father. [安顺]

A. used to go; is used to go　　B. used to going; is used to go

C. is used to go; is used to go　　D. used to go; is used to going

点拨：考查固定用法。第一句句意：我爸爸过去常常乘公交车去他的工作场所，但是现在他习惯骑自行车去那儿了。由此分析：过去常常用 used to 表示；根据下文中：现在他习惯骑自行车去那儿了，“习惯”用 is used to 表示，后接 doing。

★ The egret helps the rhino stay healthy by cleaning its skin.

② by /baɪ/ *prep.* **通过……手段或方式**

by 后接名词、代词或动名词作宾语。对 by 引导的短语提问通常用疑问词 how。

e.g. He won the competition by a lot of practice.

他通过大量的练习赢得了比赛。

—How will you prepare for the test?

你们要怎样为测试做准备？

—By working together. 通过一起学习。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Liu Wei can play the piano very well with his feet.
刘伟能用他的双脚将钢琴弹得很好。
Please answer the question in a loud voice.
请大声回答问题。

辨析：by，with 与 in
① by 表示通过某种方式、方法。
② with 表示使用某种具体工具或身体某个部位。
③ in 表示使用某种语言、语调、笔墨或颜色。

考题在线 2 You can improve your English _____ listening to English songs. [河池]

A. by B. with C. for D. in

点拨：考查介词的用法辨析。句意：你可以通过听英文歌曲来提高你的英语。by 意为“用……方式，借助于”；with“和……一起；用……工具、材料”；for“为了”；in“在……里；用某种语言”。这里应该是“借助于听这一方式”。

★ It also makes noise to warn the rhino about coming danger.

③ **warn** /wɔːn/ *v.* 警告；提醒

e.g. I tried to warn him, but he wouldn't listen.
我设法提醒过他，可他就是不听。

warn sb. of sth. 提醒某人某事

He warned me of the danger of driving the car like that.
他提醒过我那样开车的危险性。

warn sb. (not) to do sth. 提醒/警告某人（不）做某事。

The teacher warned him not to be late again.
老师警告他不要再迟到了。

考题在线 3 The traffic signs warn people _____ after drinking. [青岛]

A. to drive B. not to drive
C. driving D. don't drive

★ Mzee is a 130-year-old tortoise.

④ [高频] 复合形容词 敲黑板 高频考点，牢记！

复合形容词是“数词-单数可数名词-形容词”的结构，其中表示计量的名词要用单数形式。复合形容词作前置定语，修饰后面的名词。

e.g. I don't understand these sixteen-year-old students.
我不理解这些 16 岁的学生们。
There will be an eight-day-long sports meeting in our city.
我们市将有一场为期八天的运动会。

考题在线 4 Tom, a _____ boy, can speak English quite well.

A. twelve-years-old B. twelve year old
C. twelve-year-old D. twelve years old

点拨：运用语法判定法。复合形容词作前置定语，修饰 boy，排除 B 和 D；复合形容词中表示计量的名词要用单数形式，排除 A。

★ Good friends can show they care without words.

⑤ **without** /wɪˈðaʊt/ *prep.* 无；没有

后可跟名词、代词或动名词，一般放在句中或句首。

e.g. Brian left us without a word. 布赖恩一句话没说就离开了我们。
Ann came in without knocking at the door. 安没敲门就进来了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

① without +宾语+副词
② without +宾语+介词短语
③ without +宾语+动词的-ing形式
④ without +宾语+动词不定式

I'm very nearsighted without my glasses on. 我不戴眼镜十分近视。
I like coffee without sugar in it. 我喜欢不加糖的咖啡。
They debated for hours without a decision being taken. 他们争论了几个小时，也没作出决定。
It was boring to sit there without anything to do. 无所事事地坐在那里太无聊了。

考题在线 5 Fish can't live _____ water. [南充]

A. with B. in C. without D. of

考题在线答案 1. D 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. C

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见287页)

一、用适当的介词填空

1. I was sorry to hear _____ your accident.
2. Lin Lin often practices English _____ chatting with her American friends.
3. Do you often help your mother _____ the housework?
4. _____ your help, I wouldn't pass the driving test.
5. Unlike Chinese, English people are used _____ having their meals with knives and forks.

二、单项选择

6. I used to _____ newspapers and watch TV after dinner. But now I'm used to _____ a walk. [新疆]

A. read; take B. read; taking
C. reading; taking D. reading; take

7. The "teacher-free exam" means that students take their exams _____ teachers. Students must be more honest. [滨州]

A. without B. against
C. through D. with

8. We can save money _____ cooking our own meals instead of eating outside.

A. by B. to
C. for D. with

9. They have been friends for several years. They hope their _____ will last for long.

A. health B. friendship
C. freedom D. wealth

10. —Is that Mr. Green?
—No, Mr. Green is an _____ man. But this man is only about _____.

A. 80-year-old; 18 years old
B. 80-years-old; 18 years old
C. 80-year-old; 18-year-old
D. 80 years old; 18-year-old

三、连词成句

11. me, warned , he, danger, the, coming, of

_____.

12. our, an, diary, to, teacher, 80-word, asked, us, write

_____.

13. have, they, us, relationships, with, good

_____.

14. used, paper, to, bamboo, be, can, make

_____.

15. not, to, computer, me, play, Mr. White, games, warns

_____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit Review

I. 课文原文、译文

Building Your Vocabulary 构建你的词汇库

Read the passage and fill in the blanks. The first letter is given. 阅读短文并填空。首字母已给出。

You probably know that elephants are the largest land a_____. They are big and s_____. They live in groups. They have a l_____ life, just like human beings. They are usually friendly to people. They eat grass, and people can ride on their backs. But when they feel scared or they get angry, they become d_____. They can knock down trees and carry them out of the f_____.

你也许知道大象是最大的陆地 _____。它们又大又 _____。它们过着群居生活。它们的寿命 _____，就像人类一样。它们通常对人类很友好。它们吃草，人们可以骑在它们的背上。但当它们感到害怕或生气时，它们变得 _____。它们可以撞倒树并把它们运到 _____ 外。

Grammar in Use 语法运用

Complete the dialogue with "some" or "any". 用 some 或 any 完成对话。

A: What are you doing, Jim?
你在做什么，吉姆?

B: I'm drawing _____ pictures. What about you? 我在画 _____ 图片。你呢?

A: Me too. But I don't have _____ pink markers. Do you have _____?
我也是。但是我没有 _____ 粉色的记号笔了。你有 _____ 吗?

B: Yes, I do. 是的，我有。

A: May I borrow _____?
我可以借 _____ 吗?

B: Sure. Here you are. 当然可以。给你。

A: Thank you. 谢谢你。

Listening and Speaking 听说训练

I. Listen and repeat. 听并重复。

课文听力

1. But there are only a few thousand tigers in the wild today. 但是现在只有几千只野生老虎。
2. Kiwis can be as big as chickens.
几维能和鸡一样大。
3. They ate, slept and swam together.
它们在一起吃、睡和游泳。
4. That's a true story of friendship!
那是一个关于友谊的真实的故事!

II. Listen to the passage and tick the correct answers. 听短文，在正确的答案旁打钩。

1. What do bears mainly feed on?
熊主要以什么为食?
☐ Milk and insects. 牛奶和昆虫。
☐ Roots, frogs and fish. 根茎，青蛙和鱼。
2. Where do bears live? 熊生活在哪里?
☐ Only in Asia. 仅仅在亚洲。
☐ In Asia, Africa and America.
在亚洲、非洲和美洲。
3. When are bears dangerous? 熊什么时候危险?
☐ When they feel scared. 当它们感到害怕时。
☐ Any time. 任何时候。
4. In cold places, how long do bears sleep?
在冷的地方，熊睡多久?
☐ Nearly four months. 差不多四个月。
☐ Almost seven months. 差不多七个月。

III. Complete the dialogue with the sentences in the box. Then work in pairs and talk about other animals. 用方框中的句子完成对话。然后两人一组谈论别的动物。

Tera: _____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Bob: Yes. I know some interesting facts about monkeys.
是的。我知道一些关于猴子的有趣的事实。

Tera: _____

Bob: Some monkeys have long noses. Their noses can be as big as eggplants.
一些猴子长着长长的鼻子。它们的鼻子能和茄子一样大。

Tera: Ha! That's really big! _____
哈！那的确大！_____

Bob: Some monkeys are clever. They are able to do simple maths.
一些猴子很聪明。它们能做简单的数学运算。

Tera: Wow! Is that true? 哇！那是真的吗?

Bob: Yeah! Some monkeys even have a better memory than humans. They can remember colours and shapes.
是的！一些猴子的记忆力甚至比人类还好。它们能记住颜色和形状。

Tera: Cool! _____
太酷了！_____

A. What else do you know? 你还知道别的什么?
B. What do you know about them?
关于它们你知道些什么?
C. Have you heard of any amazing animals?
你听说过一些令人惊奇的动物吗?
D. Monkeys really are amazing animals.
猴子的确是令人惊奇的动物。

Putting It All Together 综合练习

I. Read this introduction about pandas. Then fill out the table.
阅读这篇关于大熊猫的介绍。然后填写表格。

Pandas are mammals. They are black and white. They can grow to be between 1.2 to 1.9 metres tall. Bamboo is their main source of food. Wild pandas live in China.Their average life span is about 20 years. The average weight of a panda is about 80 to 130 kilograms. They are so cute that people all over the world love them. 大熊猫是哺乳动物。它们是黑白相间的。它们能长 1.2 米到 1.9 米高。竹子是它们食物的主要来源。野生大熊猫居住在中国。它们的平均寿命大约是 20 年。一只大熊猫的平均体重大约在 80 千克到 130 千克之间。它们如此可爱以致全世界的人们都喜欢它们。

Facts about Pandas 有关大熊猫的事实					
Type 种类	mammal 哺乳动物	Food 食物		Home 栖息地	
Life Span 寿命		Size 大小		Weight 体重	

II. Writing 写作

Share an interesting story about animals with your classmates. Then write it down.
和你的同班同学分享一个关于动物的有趣的故事。然后把它写下来。

Self-Evaluation 自我评价

Find more examples from this unit. Then mark your stars.
从这个单元中再找一些例子。然后标出你的星星。

I. Talking about Animals 谈论动物

When animals are scared, they can be dangerous.
当动物们受到惊吓时，它们会是危险的。

_____

_____

I can talk about animals in English.
我会用英语谈论动物。

II. Indefinite Pronouns: some, any
不定代词：some, any

I have some donuts for you.
我有一些面包圈要给你。

I don't have any donuts today.
今天我没有面包圈。

_____

_____

I can use indefinite pronouns properly.
我会正确地运用不定代词。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Stand So Still 静静地站立

I'm at the zoo watching all the animals,
我正在动物园里看所有的动物，
I want to make friends with one today.
今天我想要和一种动物交朋友。
Throw some food to the ducks by the water,
向水边的鸭子扔些食物，
Stand so still while they waddle my way.
当它们蹒跚地向我走来时，我站着一动不动。
I'm at the zoo watching all the animals,
我正在动物园里看所有的动物，
I want to make friends with one today.
今天我想要和一种动物交朋友。
Toss a fish to the seal in his pool,
向池子里的海豹扔一条鱼，
Stand so still while it swims my way.
当它向我游来时，我站着一动不动。
I'm at the zoo watching all the animals,
我正在动物园里看所有的动物，
I want to make friends with one today.
今天我想要和一种动物交朋友。
Hold some grass towards the camel,
拿一些草给骆驼，
Stand so still as it walks my way.
它向我走来时，我站着一动不动。

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

不定代词 some 与 any

英语中不定代词 some 与 any 都表示“一些”的意思，但用法不同。

考点 1 some

考向一：常用于肯定句中，可以修饰可数名词和不可数名词。

e.g. There is still some milk in the bottle.
瓶子里还有些牛奶。

考向二：用于表示希望得到对方肯定回答的疑问句中。

e.g. Would you like some tea, please?
请问你想喝点茶吗？

考题在线 1 —I don't have enough money for the T-shirt.
—Don't worry. I can lend _____ to you. [青海]

A. any　　B. some　　C. many

点拨：考查代词的辨析。句意：——我没有足够的钱买这件 T 恤衫。——不要担心，我可以借给你一些。any 意为“一些”，常用于否定句；some 意为“一些”，常用于肯定句，或用于表示希望得到对方肯定回答的疑问句中；many 意为“许多”，修饰可数名词的复数形式。money 是不可数名词，应排除 many。在肯定句中，表示“一些”，应用 some。

考点 2 any

考向一：常用于否定句和疑问句中，修饰可数名词和不可数名词。

e.g. —Do you have any brothers or sisters?
你有兄弟姐妹吗？
—No, I don't have any.
不，我没有。

考向二：用于肯定句或 if 引导的条件句中，表示“任一；任何一些”。

e.g. If you have any question, please call me. 如果你有任何问题，请给我打电话。

考题在线 2 —I have two soccer balls. What about you?
—Oh, I don't have _____. [南充]

A. some　　B. no
C. any　　D. much

点拨：句意：——我有两个足球，你呢？——哦，我没有一些。some 一些；any 一些；no 没有；much 许多。some 多用于肯定句或希望得到对方肯定回答的疑问句中，而 any 多用于疑问句、否定句和条件句中，在肯定句中是“任何的”意思。

考题在线答案 1. B　2. C

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见287页)

听力技巧

见缝扫题法（利用导言和题与题之间的间隙，提前扫视选项，预测出题方向，以便等录音内容开始播放时可以有目的地捕捉所需信息。）



听力过程

听 Listening and Speaking Ⅱ，回答问题

1. Bears mainly feed on roots, frogs and _____.
2. We can see bears in _____, Africa and America.
3. They will be _____ when they are in danger.
4. Before they go to sleep in winter, they eat _____ a lot.

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

交代 What

The passage is about two letters from Danny and Li Ming. They are talking about friendship between animals.

Danny's letter: Yesterday I learned that sometimes different animals live together. I know the rhino which is big and strong always lets a small bird, an egret, sit on its back. They can help each other. The egret helps the rhino stay healthy by cleaning its skin. It also makes noise to warn the rhino about coming danger. The rhino helps the egret get food easily by scaring small insects hiding in the grass, and the egret eats them.

逗用定语从句

表目的

Li Ming's letter: Last week, we read the story of Owen and Mzee in class. It's a very sad story but has a very happy ending. Owen and Mzee found each other and became good friends. They ate, slept and swam together. The true story touched many people's hearts.

话锋一转，强调快乐的结局

单元话题

请以 My Favourite Pet 为题，写一篇 80 词左右的短文，描述一下你最喜欢的宠物。

要求：1. 描写宠物外貌

2. 描写宠物趣事

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

认真阅读写作内容要求，可获得以下写作信息：

(1) 体裁：本文为说明文。

(2) 人称：宜用第一人称。

(3) 时态：一般现在时和一般过去时。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“三步法”描写动物：从外貌、性格、典型事例三个方面描写动物。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	lovely; fur（毛皮）; loyal;greet
短语	play with; be friendly to sb.
句子	1. I keep him as my friend. 2. He didn't leave until...

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

My Favourite Pet

I have a lovely dog named Peter. He is my favourite animal. His fur is brown. He has a small body and two big eyes. He likes to eat meat and bones. He is friendly and loyal to me. I keep him as my friend.

Every day when I get home from school, he always "greets" me with his waving tail and plays with me for a while. But one day, I was unhappy because I failed the exam. He didn't leave me until I was happy again.

I love my pet dog. What about you?

名师点评：本文是一篇关于描写宠物的文章。运用了"三步法"描写动物。采用经典三段式，第一段写出我的宠物是只狗以及它的外貌和习性。第二段描写我和狗的故事。第三段写我爱我的宠物狗，呼应标题。

添彩点：①由整体到局部描写狗的外貌，细致入微。②一些短语、连接词和句式的运用，使本文内容丰富多彩。如表示因果关系的连接词 because 的运用；重点短语：play with（和……一起玩），be friendly to sb.（对某人友好）；重点句式：I keep him as my friend.（我把他当作我的朋友。）He didn't leave me until I was happy again.（直到我又开心了他才离开我。）

测试卷及听力

V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见287页）

一、语法专练

1. There isn't _____ milk in the fridge.

A. a few　　B. some

C. few　　D. any

2. Are there _____ trees on the farm?

A. any　　B. a little

C. a lot　　D. some

3. —Would you like _____ coffee?

—Yes, please.

A. some　　B. any

C. few　　D. many

4. It's polite to take _____ flowers as a gift when you go to visit a friend.

A. little　　B. any

C. some　　D. a

5. —Is there _____ beef in the fridge?

—No, there isn't. There is _____ pork. [天津]

A. some; any　　B. any; any

C. some; some　　D. any; some

二、单元知识浓缩

用括号中所给的汉语提示完成下面的短文。

Have you heard of the situation of tigers? In recent years, tigers have been _____[6]（处于危险中）of disappearing. We should _____[7]（挽救）the tigers in the world. _____[8]（在……之初）the 20th century, _____[9]（……的数量）tigers in the wild was around 100 000. But today that number has _____[10]（下降到）a few thousand. We must do something to _____[11]（保护）them.

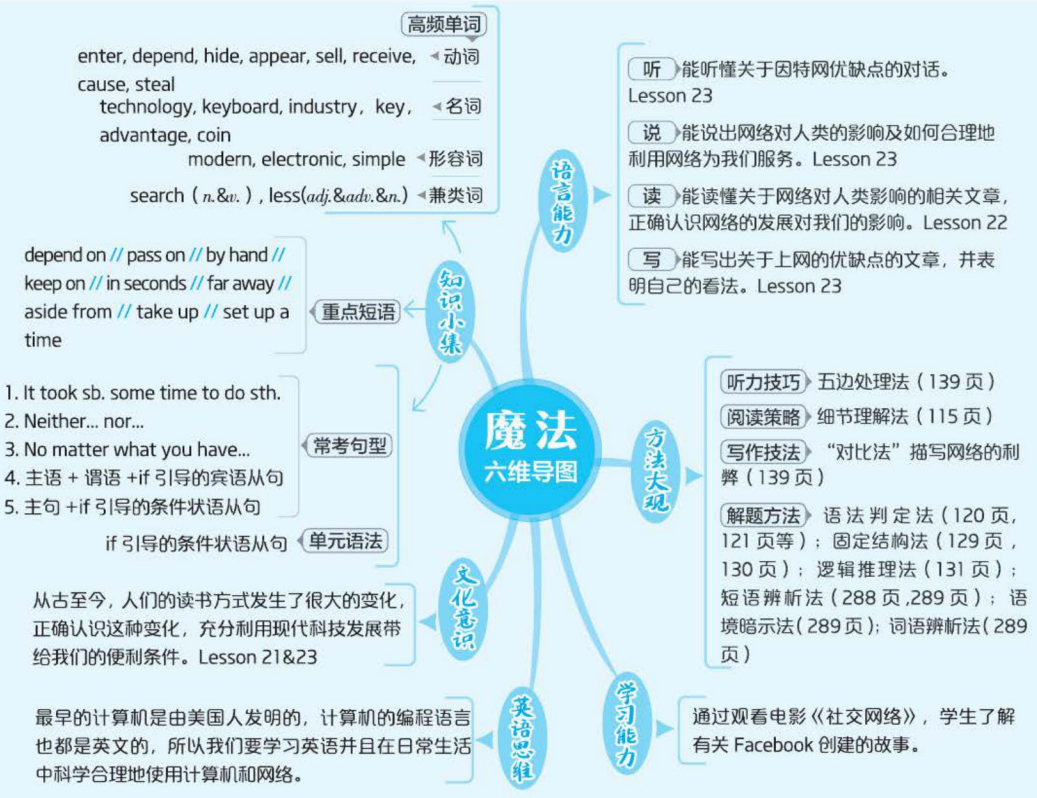
The tiger is at the top of the _____[12]（食物链）. It helps keep the number of other wild animals _____[13]（保持平衡）. So tigers are important to the environment.

Some people hunt and kill tigers for money. People _____[14]（已砍倒）a lot of trees _____[15]（还）. As forests disappear, tigers lose their homes. The number of tigers in the wild is quickly decreasing and we must do something about it.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 The Internet Connects Us

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Lesson 19

必背单词

1. **technology** *n.* 技术→ technical *adj.* 技术的
2. **keyboard** *n.* 键盘
3. **industry** *n.* 工业；企业；行业→ agriculture *n.* 农业→ business *n.* 商业

必背短语

4. chat with sb. 和某人聊天
5. plan to do sth. 计划做某事
6. more than 多于；超过→ over 超过；多于

Lesson 20

必背单词

1. **enter** *v.* 输入；进入→ enter into sth. 开始讨论；着手处理→ entrance *n.* 入口
2. **key** *n.* 关键；钥匙→ the key to… ……的关键；……的钥匙
3. **search** *n.*& *v.* 搜索；查找→ in search of 寻找；搜寻→ search for 查找；搜索
4. **depend** *v.* 依靠；取决于→ depend on 依靠；取决于；根据→ dependent *adj.* 依靠的；依赖的→ dependence *n.* 依靠；依赖
5. **hide** *v.* (hid/ hidden) 隐藏；躲避

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

必背短语

6. one of ...……之一

必背句子

7. Though the meaning of Easter has changed over time, the rabbits and eggs remain.
虽然随着时间的流逝复活节的含义已经改变了，但是兔子和彩蛋保留了下来。

Lesson 21

必背单词

1. appear *v.* 出现；呈现；来到→ disappear *v.* 消失
2. modern *adj.* 现代的；新式的
3. electronic *adj.* 电子的
4. sell *v.* (sold/ sold) 卖；出售
→ sell sb. sth.= sell sth. to sb. 把某物卖给某人

必背短语

5. pass on 传递；前进 →pass on sth. to sb. = pass sth. on to sb. 把某物传递给某人
6. no matter what 无论什么
7. by hand 用手；手工
8. keep on 继续

必背句子

9. Later, people learned **how to write** and make paper. 后来，人们学会了怎样写字和造纸。
10. It took a long time to write just one book!
仅写一本书就要花费很长一段时间！

Lesson 22

必背单词

1. receive *v.* 收到；接到

必背短语

2. come true 实现

必背句子

3. She asked people **if** they could help her grandma see the world **through** pictures. 她请求人们是否他们能通过照片来帮助她祖母看世界。

Lesson 23

必背单词

1. advantage *n.* 优势；有利条件；有利因素
→ take advantage of... 利用……
2. simple *adj.* 简单的；简明的
→ simply *adv.* 简单地；仅仅
3. coin *n.* 硬币
4. cause *v.* 造成；引起
5. less *adj.* & *adv.*(little 的比较级) 更少的 (地)；更小的 (地) *n.* 较少量；较小的部分
→ less than 少于
6. steal *v.* 偷盗；窃取→ stole (过去式) → stolen (过去分词)

必背短语

7. in seconds 在很短的时间内
8. get sth. done 使某事被做
9. far away 遥远
10. stay in touch 保持联系
11. take up 占据；占用；开始从事；接受 (提议)

必背句子

12. Spending too much time online **is harmful to** people's health.
花太多的时间上网对人们的健康有害。
13. Aside from that, some people attack the web or use the Internet to steal others' personal information, even banking information.
除了那之外，一些人侵袭网络，或用互联网偷取别人的个人信息，甚至银行信息。
14. But every coin has **two sides**.
但是每个硬币都有两面 / 每件事都有两面性。

Lesson 24

必背短语

1. set up 安排

必背句子

2. It would be a lot of fun to see each other **as** we talk! 当我们说话时看到彼此将会很有趣！
3. Can we **set up a time** to go online together?
我们能约定一个时间一起上网吗？

单元必背语法

1. If we want to have a meeting, I can send the invitation online.
如果我们想要开会，我可以在线发邀请。
2. If I work hard this evening, I will complete my research.
如果今天晚上努力工作的话，我将完成我的研究。
3. If Grandma could not travel herself, maybe there was another way. 如果奶奶不能自己去旅游的话，也许还有另一种方式。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 19 How Do You Use the Internet?



I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What can you do on a computer? 在电脑上你能做什么?
- How do you use the Internet? 你是怎样使用互联网的?



Ms. Cox: How does the Internet help you, class? 同学们，互联网是怎么帮助你们的?

Jenny: I like to use the Internet to read about sports and technology①/tek'nɒlədʒɪ/. With the Internet, we can learn about almost anything. I used to have a desktop /'desktɒp/ computer, but now I have a tablet /'tæblɪt/. It has no keyboard /'ki:bɔ:d/ or② mouse, so it is easy to carry. Now I can use the Internet anywhere! 我喜欢用互联网读关于体育和科技方面的东西。有了互联网，我们几乎可以学习任何事。我过去有一台台式电脑，但是现在我有一个平板电脑。它没有键盘和鼠标，因此它很容易携带。现在我可以在任何地方使用互联网!

Danny: I like chatting with③ my friends online. We use video chat! I use the Internet to blog about donuts. There are 500 people following my blog! Some of us are planning to organize a Donut Club. If we want to have a meeting, I can send the invitation④/ˌɪnvɪ'teɪʃn/ online. It's quick and easy. 我喜欢在网上和我的朋友们聊天。我们使用视频聊天！我用互联网写关于面包圈的博客。有 500 人关注我的博客！我们中有些人正打算组织一个面包圈俱乐部。如果我们想开会，我可以在网上发个邀请函。它又快又容易。

Brian: I like doing research⑤ for my homework on the Internet. I'm collecting information about the coffee industry /'ɪndəstrɪ/. If I work hard this evening, I will complete my research. Tomorrow I can begin to write my report. Look at this. Coffee grows in more than⑥ 70 countries! Grandpa likes coffee very much. I will send my research to him by e-mail. 我喜欢在网上为我的家庭作业做研究。我正在搜集关于咖啡产业的信息。如果我今天晚上努力工作的话，我将完成我的研究。明天我就可以开始写我的报告。看这个。咖啡生长在 70 多个国家！我祖父非常喜欢咖啡。我将通过电子邮件把我的研究发给他。

Learning Tip 学习提示

Can you name the parts of a computer?
你能列出电脑组成部分的名称吗?

1. keyboard 键盘　2. mouse 鼠标
3. screen 屏幕　4. monitor 显示器

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson. Tick the things that Jenny and her classmates like to do on the Internet. 读课文。把詹妮和她同班同学喜欢在网上做的事打钩。

- ☐ watch movies 看电影　☐ shop 购物
- ☐ write blogs 写博客
- ☐ chat online 网上聊天
- ☐ play games 打游戏　☐ read 读书
- ☐ send or receive e-mails 发送或接收电子邮件
- ☐ listen to music 听音乐
- ☐ do research for homework 做家庭作业方面的研究
- ☐ make friends 交朋友

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the given verbs. 用所给动词的适当形式填空。

1. If you work hard, you'll _____ (get) there in the end. 如果你努力工作的话，最后你将会_____（到达）那里。
2. If you don't stop him, he will _____ (play) games the whole day. 如果你不阻止他的话，他将会一整天_____（玩）游戏。
3. If it _____ (rain) tomorrow, Danny will not go to the supermarket to buy donuts. 如果明天_____（下雨），丹尼将不去超市买面包圈。
4. If you _____ (go) to bed now, I'll read you a bedtime story. 如果你现在_____（去）上床睡觉，我将给你读一个睡前故事。

3 Here is a search homepage. Can you find the information you need? Fill in the blanks using the category headings.

这是一个搜索主页。你能找到你需要的信息吗？用分类标题填空。

News 新闻

Newspapers, 报纸，

Magazines... 杂志……

Arts 艺术

Photography, History, Literature...

摄影，历史，文学……

Society & Culture 社会和文化

People, Environment, Religion...

人，环境，宗教……

Health 健康

Diseases, Fitness... 疾病，健康……

Education 教育

College and University, Middle School...

学院和大学，中学……

Entertainment 娱乐

Movies, Music, TV... 电影，音乐，电视……

Computer & Internet 电脑和互联网

Internet, Software, Games...

互联网，软件，游戏……

Sports 体育运动

Basketball, Football, Climbing...

篮球运动，足球运动，攀岩活动……

Language 语言

English, French, German... 英语，法语，德语……

1. A game lover can click on "_____" to play computer games. 一名游戏爱好者可以点击"_____"来玩电脑游戏。
2. If I want to improve my spoken English, I'll go to "_____". 如果我想提高我的英语口语，我将去"_____"。
3. "_____" has some excellent movies. "_____"有一些极好的电影。
4. If John wants to know more about China, he will click on "_____". 如果约翰想更多地了解中国，他将点击"_____"。
5. "_____" helps Jack get information about Oxford University. "_____"帮助杰克获得关于牛津大学的信息。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★**I like to use the Internet to read about sports and technology.**

① **technology** /tekˈnɒlədʒɪ/ *n.* (scientific knowledge used in practical ways in industry, for example in designing new machines) **技术**

e.g. With the development of science and technology, it becomes easier and easier to communicate with each other. 随着科学技术的发展，（人们）相互交流变得越来越容易了。

它为不可数名词。常用搭配：science and technology 科学技术 information technology 信息技术

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★It has no keyboard or mouse, so it is easy to carry.

在否定句中，连接两个并列成分用 or；在肯定句中，用 and。

② **or** /ɔ:(r)/ *conj.* 和

e.g. They don't like French or Russian. 他们不喜欢法语和俄语。

I have two erasers and three rulers. 我有两块橡皮和三把尺子。

★ I like chatting with my friends online.

chat 作不及物动词，意为"聊天，闲谈"。

③ **chat with sb.** 和某人聊天

e.g. He likes chatting with outgoing people. 他喜欢和外向的人聊天。

We sit under the trees at lunchtime and have a good chat.

我们在午饭时间坐在树下畅聊。

chat 作名词，意为"聊天"。

考题在线 1 我的表弟经常在网上和我聊天。

My cousin often _____ _____ me online.

★...I can send the invitation online.

敲黑板 高频考点，牢记！

④ **invitation** /ˌɪnvɪˈteɪʃn/ *n.* 邀请

e.g. We had three invitations to parties. 我们有三封聚会的邀请。

I invited all my friends. 我邀请了我所有的朋友。

Jack invited me to watch the match with him.

杰克邀请我和他一起看那场比赛。

invitation → invite

invite sb. 邀请某人

invite sb. to do sth. 邀请某人做某事

invite sb. to... 邀请某人去……

考题在线 2 —Why are you so excited?

—Nancy invited me _____ on a trip to Dongjiang Lake just now. [郴州]

A. to go　　B. go　　C. going

★ I like doing research for my homework on the Internet.

⑤ **research** /rɪˈsɜ:tʃ/ *n.* 研究；调查

e.g. Research shows that women live longer than men.

研究表明，女人比男人活得（时间）更长。

research 常用短语：

do research 做研究，进行调查

have a research on... 有一个关于……的调查

★ Coffee grows in more than 70 countries!

more than 意为"多于；超过"，用在数词前，相当于 over，其反义短语为 less than（少于）。

⑥ **more than** 多于；超过

e.g. More than one person made this suggestion. 不止一个人提过这个建议。

I've known him for more than twenty years. 我认识他 20 多年了。

He's more than a speaker. He is a writer, too.

他不仅是一名演讲者。他还是一名作家。

"more than＋名词"表示"不仅是；非但……尤其是"。

考题在线 3 —How many new desks and chairs are there in your school this year?

—There are over 3, 000.（选出与画线部分意思相同或相近的一项）

A. less than　　B. most　　C. more than　　D. as many as

考题在线答案 1. chats with　2. A　3. C

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见288页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示写出单词

1. I think _____ (技术) is very important to our society.
2. The _____ (平板电脑) is very popular nowadays. 【导学号：6505386】
3. The _____ (键盘) is an important part of a computer.
4. Her hometown is famous for the silk _____ (工业).
5. Sometimes _____ (聊天) with friends online is also a good way to learn English.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. It is healthy for us _____ (eat) breakfast.
7. I can send the _____ (invite) online.
8. There are many people _____ (look) through my blog.
9. She likes _____ (chat) online in her spare time.
10. Carol _____ (send) letters to Jill once a month.

三、单项选择

11. Sam used to _____ games for fun, but now he wants to do _____. [眉山]
    A. play; something else
    B. playing; something else
    C. play; else something
    D. playing; else something
12. What a good time we have _____ with each other during lunchtime!
    A. chat B. to chat
    C. chatted D. chatting
13. There aren't any apples _____ grapes in the basket.
    A. and B. or C. but D. so
14. There are _____ 5, 000 students in our middle school.
    A. many B. much more
    C. over D. much
15. The scientist has had a research _____ weather for more than 30 years.
    A. in B. on C. at D. from

Lesson 20 A Computer Helps!

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What do you know about Easter? 关于复活节你知道什么?
- Do you often search for information on the Internet? How? 你经常在网上查找信息吗? 怎样做的?

课文朗读

I just got a new laptop /'læptɒp/. It is very helpful. When Ms. Liu asked us to write a report about Easter /'i:stə/, I decided to do all of my research on the Internet. I entered ① /'entəd/ some key ② /ki:/ words into a search /sɜ:tʃ/ engine to find information on this topic /'tɒpɪk/. Here is what I found. 我刚刚买了一个新的笔记本电脑。它很有用。当刘老师让我们写一篇关于复活节的报告时，我决定在网上做我所有的调查。我在搜索引擎里输入一些关键词来查找关于这个话题的信息。这是我找到的。

What is Easter? 什么是复活节?

Easter is an important festival in Western culture. It's one of ③ the biggest holidays in

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

many countries. 复活节在西方文化中是一个很重要的节日。在许多国家它是最重大的节日之一。

When is Easter? 复活节在什么时候?

Easter does not fall on the same day each year. The date depends /dr'pendz/ on the moon, but it is always in March or April.

每年的复活节都不是在同一天。(复活节的)日期取决于月亮,但它总是在三月或四月。

How do people celebrate Easter?

人们是怎样庆祝复活节的?

People celebrate Easter with their family and friends. They eat delicious food together. In this way, it is like the Chinese Spring Festival. On Easter Day, many children have egg hunts and eat chocolate rabbits. Rabbits and eggs are symbols of new life. Children believe that the Easter Bunny /'bʌnɪ/ comes and hides /haɪdz/ chocolate eggs for them to find.

人们和他们的家人及朋友们一起庆祝复活节。他们一起吃美味的食物。这种方式就像中国的春节。在复活节这天,许多孩子寻找彩蛋,吃巧克力兔子。兔子和彩蛋是新生的象征。孩子们相信复活节兔子会来并把巧克力彩蛋藏起来让他们寻找。

Culture Tip 文化提示

The celebration of Easter is all about new life. Christians celebrate new life at Easter. Though the meaning of Easter has changed over time, the rabbits and eggs remain. Children use baskets to collect coloured eggs when they go hunting for Easter eggs.

复活节的庆祝都是关于新生的。在复活节基督教徒庆祝新生。虽然随着时间的流逝复活节的含义已经改变了,但是兔子和彩蛋保留了下来。当孩子们寻找复活节彩蛋时他们用篮子来收集彩蛋。

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Danny is planning an Easter egg hunt for his cousin Debbie. Listen to the passage and write true (T) or false (F).

课文听力

丹尼正在为他的堂妹黛比计划一个找复活节彩蛋的游戏。听短文并写出正(T)误(F)。

1. Danny brings a basket with him.
丹尼带着一个篮子。 (　　)
2. Debbie hides the eggs behind some trees.
黛比把彩蛋藏在一些树后面。 (　　)
3. Debbie is happy to go on an Easter egg hunt. 黛比很高兴玩找复活节彩蛋的游戏。(　　)

2 Read the lesson and fill in the blanks.

阅读课文并填空。

Easter is an important _____. It does not fall on the same day each year. Children believe that the Easter Bunny comes and _____ chocolate eggs for them to find. Rabbits and eggs are both _____ of new life. That means Easter is a way to welcome spring.Most people _____ Easter with their family and friends. 复活节是一个很重要的_____。每年的复活节都不是在同一天。孩子们相信复活节兔子会来并把巧克力彩蛋_____让他们找。兔子和彩蛋都是新生的_____。那意味着复活节是欢迎春天的一种方式。大多数人和他们的家人及朋友们一起_____复活节。

3 Read the lesson again and fill in the mind map.

再次阅读课文,填写思维导图。

It depends on the moon. 它取决于月亮。

When is it? 它在什么时候?

Easter 复活节

How is it celebrated? 它是怎样被庆祝的?

with family and friends 和家人及朋友们在一起

What is it? 它是什么?

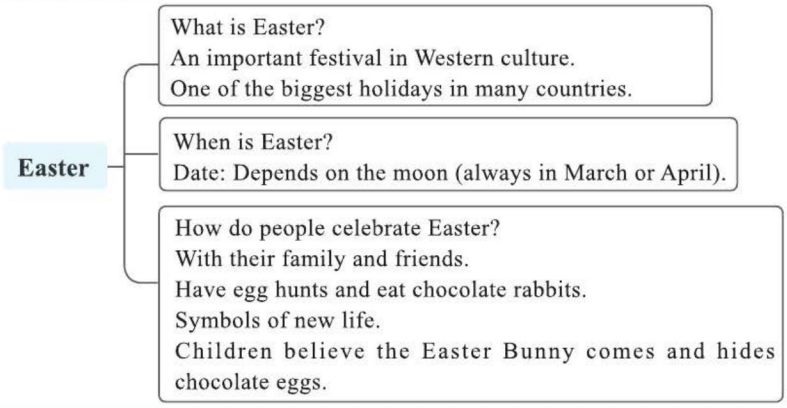
in Western culture 在西方文化里

4 Do you know an important festival in spring in China? Search for some information and make a mind map for it.

你知道在中国春天有个重要的节日吗?搜索一些信息,为它建一个思维导图。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见288页)

拓展阅读

阅读策略

细节理解法(主要用于帮助学生提高获取信息的能力及对文章所提供信息的理解能力。它主要是应用在解答细节理解题方面。做细节理解题时，应快速捕捉信息，这些信息可能是一些事例、数字等。)

小贴士：1. 先弄清楚问题是什么，然后直接在文中寻找相关信息。2. 先阅读文章，然后从原文中找到相关语句进行理解分析，就可以确定答案。

阅读过程

一、速读 Lesson 20，选择正确答案

1. What have you learned from this text?

(主旨大意题)

A. Playing computer games.

B. Finding eggs.

C. Celebrating festivals.

D. Easter.

二、细读文章，解决细节类题目

2. _____ is one of the biggest holidays in Western countries. (细节理解题)

A. Easter　　B. The Spring Festival

C. Thanksgiving Day　　D. Easter Bunny

3. When is Easter? (细节理解题)

A. Always in March.

B. Always in April.

C. Always in May.

D. Always in March or April.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★I entered some key words into a search engine to find information on this topic.

固定搭配：enter ...into.... 把……输入到/进……

① **enter** /'entə/ *v.* (come or go into sth.) 进来；进去；进入

e.g. Please help me enter this sentence. 请帮我输入这个句子。

② **key** /ki:/ *n.* (打字机等的)键；关键；钥匙 *adj.* 最重要的；主要的

e.g. a key middle school 一所重点中学

key 作名词，意为“钥匙；关键；键”。key 还有一个很常用的意思“答案”，后接介词 to，表示“开……的钥匙；……的答案”。

e.g. the key to the bike 自行车的钥匙　the key to the question 问题的答案

the key to the door 门上的钥匙



the key to the exercises 练习的答案

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

当 one of 作主语时，其中心词为 one，所以谓语动词要用第三人称单数形式。

one of 后面接名词或代词的复数形式，意为“……之一”。

some of... 意为
most of... 其中大部分
many of... 许多……

★It's one of the biggest holidays in many countries.

③ [重点] **one of** (+**the** +形容词最高级) +可数名词复数，表示“(最……的……)之一”。

敲黑板 中考高频考点，牢记！

e.g. He is one of the best friends of mine. 他是我最好的朋友之一。

One of my friends in Beijing is coming to my city next month.
下个月我的一位北京的朋友要来我所在的城市。

Lu Xun is one of the greatest writers in our country.
鲁迅是我们国家最伟大的作家之一。

Some of the students come from England. 一些学生来自英国。

考题在线 1 LeBron James is one of _____ players in the NBA. He is my hero. [宿迁]

A. better B. the best C. worse D. the worst

点拨：考查形容词的最高级。one of 后用形容词最高级形式，表示“最……之一”。句意：勒布朗·詹姆斯是 NBA 中最好的球员之一。他是我的偶像。

depend on 的用法：
①后接名词或代词。
②depend on/upon sb. to do sth.
指望某人做某事

★The date depends on the moon, but it is always in March or April.

④ **depend** /dɪ'pend/ *v.* 依靠；取决于 后面通常接介词 on 或 upon

e.g. You can't depend on your parents forever.
你不能永远依靠你的父母。

We shouldn't depend on foreign countries for oil.
我们不应当依赖外国石油。

You can't depend on them to do it. 你不能指望他们做这件事。

★In this way, it is like the Chinese Spring Festival.

⑤ **in this way** 在这方面；用这种方法

e.g. In this way, he is better than his brother.
在这方面，他比他哥哥好一点儿。

In a way, it was one of our biggest mistakes.
从某种意义上来说，这是我们所犯的最大错误之一。

You'll have to move; you're in my way.
你得挪一挪；你挡了我的路。

He stopped for breakfast on the way. 他中途停下吃早饭。

What's the time, by the way? 顺便问一句，几点了？

有关 way 的短语：
in a way 在某种程度上
in the/one's way 挡道；妨碍
on the way 在路上
by the way 顺便问一下

★Though the meaning of Easter has changed over time, the rabbits and eggs remain.

⑥ **though** /ðəʊ/ *conj.* 尽管；虽然

e.g. Though she gave no sign, I was sure she had seen me.
尽管她没有示意，我还是确信她看见了我。

Although/Though it was snowing, it was not very cold.

though 和 although 都可以引导让步状语从句。两者均不能与连词 but 连用。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

尽管正在下雪，但并不是很冷。

I have lots of friends here; I still feel lonely, though.

though 还可用作副词，意为“可是；不过”，常放在句末。

在这里我有很多朋友，可我还是感到孤单。

He stood silently as though he knew nothing about it.

在 as though（好像；仿佛），even though（即使；纵然）等固定短语中不能用 although。

他默默地站着，好像他对此事一无所知。

考题在线 2 _____ we didn't win the basketball game, we were satisfied with our hard work. [连云港]

A. If　　B. Though　　C. Since　　D. Because

点拨：考查连词辨析。if 如果，引导条件状语从句；though 尽管，引导让步状语从句；since 自从……以来，引导时间状语从句；because 因为，引导原因状语从句。根据主句可知，从句表述的应该是“尽管我们没有赢得篮球比赛”。

考题在线答案 1. B　2. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见 288 页）

一、根据句意及所给提示完成句子

1. _____（输入）your name in the form.
2. Check your answers in the _____（答案）at the back of the book.
3. Our success d_____ on everyone's hard work.
4. Mr. Wang is a _____（关键的）figure in our school.
5. Millions of Chinese leave the countryside to s_____ for work in the cities.

二、单项选择

6. What do you mean _____ saying that?

A. at　　B. by　　C. to　　D. on

7. “A white elephant” means something that is useless, _____ it may cost a lot of money. [广东]

A. unless　B. until　C. since　D. although

8. The twins look exactly the same. _____ of them are in my class. [黄石]

A. Each　　B. Both　　C. Either　D. None

9. —Are you going to have a part-time job during the summer vacation?

—Yes. I don't think I should always _____ my parents since I've grown up. [安徽]

A. fight against　　B. argue with

C. hear from　　D. depend on

10. This temple is one of _____ buildings in the town. We must take action to protect it.

A. old　　B. older

C. oldest　　D. the oldest

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 复活节在西方文化中是一个很重要的节日。

Easter is _____ important festival in _____ culture.

12. 这台笔记本电脑非常有帮助。

The laptop is very _____.

13. 一切都取决于她喜欢还是不喜欢这个老板。

It all _____ _____ whether she likes the boss or not.

14. 尽管她已经快 40 岁了，她仍然打算参加比赛。

_____ she's almost 40, she still _____ to take part in the match.

15. 在这方面，它像中国的春节。

_____ this _____, it _____ _____ the Chinese Spring Festival.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 21 Books or Computers?

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- How many books have you read this year? 今年你读过几本书?
- Do you read e-books?Do you like them? 你读电子书吗? 你喜欢它们吗?

课文朗读

The history of books is very interesting. In ancient times, there were no books, and people passed on ① their knowledge by telling stories. Later, people learned how to write ② and make paper. With paper, people began to write down their stories. They wrote each word by hand. It took ③ a long time to write just one book!

书的历史很有趣。在古代，没有书，人们通过讲故事来传递他们的知识。后来，人们学会了怎样写字和造纸。有了纸，人们开始把他们的故事写下来。他们用手写每个字。仅写一本书就要花费很长一段时间！

Then, the printing press /pres/ appeared ④ /ə'prɪəd/ and changed the world. With modern ⑤ /'mɒdn/ technology, it was possible to print books quickly. It was also possible for common people to read books. 后来，印刷机出现了并改变了世界。有了现代技术，书很快地被印出来成为可能。对于普通人来说读书也成为可能。

Recently, computers and the Internet changed the world again. A new kind of book appeared: the electronic ⑥ /ˌɪlek'trɒnɪk/ book(e-book). E-books are quickly changing people's reading habits. It is easier for people to buy and sell ⑦ /sel/ books online. Information travels faster and farther.

近来，电脑和互联网又一次改变了世界。一种新型的书出现了：电子书。电子书正迅速地改变着人们的阅读习惯。人们在网上买卖书更容易了。信息传播得更快更远了。

Nowadays, people have many ways to read books. No matter what ⑧ you have, a computer, a tablet, a laptop, an e-reader or a real book, keep on ⑨ reading!

现在，人们有许多种读书的方式。无论你拥有什么，电脑、平板电脑、笔记本电脑、电子阅读器还是真正的书，继续阅读吧！

This is a modern printing press. It can make thousands of books a day.
这是一台现代印刷机。它一天能印刷成千上万本书。

Which invention do you think is more important — the printing press or the Internet?
你认为哪项发明更重要——印刷机还是互联网?

Culture Tip 文化提示

Did you know that China was the first to invent paper? Paper was invented during the Han Dynasty. Paper is one of the four great inventions of ancient China. The other three inventions are the compass, printing press and gunpowder. 你知道中国是第一个发明纸的（国家）吗? 在汉代纸被发明出来。造纸术是古代中国的四大发明之一。其他三项发明是指南针、印刷术和火药。

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and answer the questions.
阅读课文，回答问题。

1. How did people write books in ancient times? 在古代人们是怎样写书的?
2. What made it possible to print books quickly? 什么使书很快地印出来成为可能?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. What kind of books quickly changed people's reading habits?
什么种类的书很快改变了人们的阅读习惯?

2 Read the lesson and put the sentences in the correct order. 阅读课文,把句子排序。

The History of the Book 书的历史

☐ It took a long time to write just one book. 仅写一本书就要花很长一段时间。

☐ It made it possible for common people to read books. 它使普通人读书成为可能。

☐ The e-book appeared. 电子书出现了。

☐ People had no books, and they shared knowledge by telling stories. 人们没有书,他们通过讲故事分享知识。

☐ The printing press appeared. 印刷机出现了。

☐ People download books from the Internet. 人们从网上下载书。

☐ With paper, people began to write down stories. 有了纸,人们开始把故事写下来。

3 Fill in the blanks. The first letter is given. 填空。首字母已给出。

Paper 纸 With paper, people began to write down their stories. People wrote each word by hand. It took a long time to write one book. I_____ couldn't travel far.
有了纸,人们开始把他们的故事写下来。人们用手把每个字写下来。写一本书要花很长一段时间。_____不能传播得远。

Printing press 印刷机 When the printing press a_____, it changed the world. The m_____ printing press can print books quickly, and makes it possible for the c_____ person to have easy access to books.
当印刷机_____时,它改变了世界。_____印刷机能很快地印刷书,使_____人容易地接触到书成为可能。

Internet 因特网 Computers and the Internet changed the world. They made it possible for a new kind of book: the e_____ book. Traditionally books could only be bought and sold at a store, but today you can buy and s_____ books online.
电脑和因特网改变了世界。它们使一种新型的书:_____书成为可能。传统上书只能在商店买卖,但是今天你可以在网上买和_____书。

4 Do you like reading paper books or electronic books (e-books)? Why? Talk with your partner and make up a dialogue. 你喜欢读纸质书还是电子书?为什么?和你的搭档讨论一下,并编一组对话。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★In ancient times, there were no books, and people passed on their knowledge by telling stories.

① pass on 传递;前进 → pass on sth. to sb.(= pass sth. on to sb.)

e.g. Can you pass on the newspaper to my sister?
你能把报纸递给我的姐姐吗?

拓展:pass 意为"传递",后可接双宾语。pass sb. sth.(= pass sth. to sb.)把某物传递给某人

e.g. Pass me the salt, please.= Pass the salt to me, please.
请把盐递给我。

小贴士:如果 pass 后的直接宾语为代词,只能用 pass sth. to sb. 结构。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

辨析：pass 与 past
① pass 动词：通过；走过；传递
② past 介词：在另一边；到另一侧

I pass the supermarket on the way to work every day.
每天上班的路上，我都路过那家超市。
We all passed the exam. 我们都通过了考试。
He hurried past them without stopping.
他匆匆走过他们身边，连停都没停。

考题在线 1 —Would you please tell me the way to the Pacific Hotel?
—Go _____ the post office, and you'll find it on the left.
A. pass B. past C. to pass D. to past

点拨：用语法判定法。pass 作动词，意为“通过；传递”；past 作介词，意为“在另一边；到另一侧”，go past 相当于 pass。

★**Later, people learned how to write and make paper.**

② **how to write 怎样书写** 特殊疑问词 + 动词不定式

在此结构中，疑问词可用疑问代词 who、which、what 等和疑问副词 when、where、how 等。

e.g. I want to know how to improve my spoken English.
我想知道怎样提高我的英语口语。

辨析：cost，spend，take 与 pay
① cost：物 + cost（适当形式）+ 人 + 金钱
② spend：人 + spend（适当形式）+ 时间 / 金钱 + on + 名词 / 代词
③ take：It + takes/took + 人 + 时间 + to do
④ pay：人 + pay（适当形式）+ 金钱 + for + 物

★**It took a long time to write just one book!**

③ **[高频] take** /teɪk/ *v.* **费时；需要……时间**

e.g. It takes me half an hour to go to school every day.
我每天花半个小时去学校。
The ticket costs me ten dollars.
这张票花了我十美元。
I spent all my pocket money on books.
我所有的零花钱都花在书上了。
It took me an hour to walk there.
我花了一小时走到那里。
He paid 5 dollars for that book.
他花了 5 美元买那本书。

考题在线 2 Roy works in London. It _____ him about half an hour to get to work by bus every day. [临沂]
A. costs B. spends C. takes

点拨：考查动词用法辨析。句意：罗伊在伦敦工作。他每天乘公共汽车去上班大约需要半个小时。固定句型 It takes sb. some time to do sth.

★**Then, the printing press appeared and changed the world.**

④ **appear** /əˈpɪə/ *v.* **出现；呈现；来到** 反义词 disappear *vi.* 消失

e.g. A ship appeared on the horizon. 一艘船出现在地平线上。
His sudden appearance surprised me.
他的突然出现使我感到惊讶。 appearance *n.* 出现；公开露面

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 3 —Recently, school violence _____ in some schools.

—Luckily, our government has carried out some policies to stop it.

[恩施]

A. has appeared　　B. appeared　　C. will appear

点拨：考查动词时态。“目前，一些学校出现了校园暴力行为。”后文说“幸好政府已经实施一些政策来阻止这种情况”。符合现在完成时态的用法，强调过去发生的动作对现在产生的影响或结果。且 recently 是一个完成时态的信号词。

With modern technology, it was possible to print books quickly.

⑤ **modern** /'mɒdn/ *adj.* (of the present time or recent times) 现代的；新式的

e.g. Do you like modern music or classical music?

你喜欢现代音乐还是古典音乐？

A new kind of book appeared:the electronic book(e-book).

⑥ **electronic** /ɪˌlek'trɒnɪk/ *adj.* 电子的　electric 名词形式为 electricity（电，电力）。

e.g. I have an electronic dictionary. 我有一部电子词典。

It is easier for people to buy and sell books online.

⑦ **sell** /sel/ *v.* 卖；出售 (sold/sold)　敲黑板 高频考点，重点，牢记！

e.g. I want to sell the car. 我想卖掉这辆小汽车。

He sold the old car to me for 500 *yuan*.=

He sold me the old car for 500 *yuan*.　sell sb. sth.=sell sth. to sb. 把某物卖给某人

他以五百元的价钱把那辆旧的小汽车卖给了我。

Mo Yan's works sell well. 莫言的作品很畅销。

Tickets for Leehom Wang's concert in Shijiazhuang are sold out.

王力宏在石家庄演唱会的票卖完了。

sell 的常用短语：

sell well 卖得好；畅销（不用于被动句）

sell out/be sold out 售完

考题在线 4 This kind of T-shirt looks _____ and sells _____ in the market.　[安顺]

A. nice; good　　B. well; well

C. nice; well　　D. good; nice

方法真题练

点拨：用语法判定法。look 感官动词，后接形容词。sell well 畅销。

No matter what you have, a computer, a tablet, a laptop, an e-reader or a real book, keep on reading!

⑧ **no matter what** 无论什么　相当于 whatever，引导让步状语从句。

e.g. Don't trust him, no matter what he says. 无论他说什么，都别相信他。

No matter where you go, you may find friends.

无论你去哪里，你都可以找到朋友。

I told him he could come back no matter when he wanted to.

我告诉他不管什么时候他想回来都可以。

no matter how = however（不管怎样）

no matter who = whoever（无论谁）

no matter where = wherever（在任何地方）

no matter when = whenever（无论何时）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 5 无论你去哪里，我都愿意与你同行。（根据汉语意思完成句子）

_____ _____ _____ you go, I'd like to go with you.

⑨ [高频] **keep on doing sth.** 继续做某事；坚持做某事 敲黑板 高频考点，重点，牢记！

keep on doing sth. 表示动作的反复，强调动作与动作之间有间隔。

keep doing sth. 表示"一直做某事"，强调动作的连续性。

e.g. He kept on ringing me up, but I don't want to keep in touch with him anymore. 他不断地给我打电话，但我不想和他保持联系了。

He kept talking until the meeting was over.

他一直在说话，直到会议结束。

考题在线 6 Mr. Black, you are becoming healthier and healthier. Please keep on _____. [内江]

A. ran　　B. to run

C. runs　　D. running

点拨：句意：布莱克先生，你正变得越来越健康。请坚持跑步。根据 keep on doing sth. 得出答案为 running。

考题在线答案 1. B　2. C　3. A　4. C　5. No matter where　6. D

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见 288 页）

一、根据句意及所给汉语提示完成句子

1. We watch the books rolling off the _____（印刷机）.

2. The sun _____（出现）at 7:00 this morning.

3. In the afternoon, they went to an exhibition of _____（现代的）art.

4. Some young students like _____（电子的）books better than paper books. [盐城]

5. He _____（卖）his old computer for 500 *yuan*.

二、用方框中单词或短语的适当形式填空

by hand	ancient	sell	keep on	pass on

6. My mum _____ clothes online.

7. In _____ times, people lived by hunting.

8. The toy is made _____.

9. After a short rest, they _____ walking.

10. How do they _____ their information?

三、单项选择

11. There are enough cups for each visitor to have _____. [宜宾]

A. one　　B. it　　C. this　　D. that

12. —_____ you have any trouble, you can call me.

—I will. Thank you.

A. No matter what　　B. No matter who

C. No matter when　　D. No matter how

13. —It's reported that Chinese _____ more than 40 minutes a day reading WeChat（微信）.

—It's true. But I think WeChat is taking too much of our time. [襄阳]

A. spend　　B. cost

C. pay　　D. take

14. —I'll have a ten-day holiday. But I don't know _____. [成都]

—How about Paris?

A. what to do　　B. where to go

C. when to go

15. I believe your dream will come true one day if you keep on _____ hard from now on.

A. work　　B. to work

C. working　　D. works

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 22 Travel on the Internet



I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Does your grandma live with you? 你和你的祖母生活在一起吗?
- What is your grandma's dream? What can you do to help her realize it?
  你祖母的愿望是什么? 为了帮她实现这个愿望，你能做些什么?



Jane grew up with her grandma. She loves her grandma very much. One day, Jane received ① /rɪ'si:vd/ some bad news. Her grandma had a terrible type of cancer ② /'kænsə/. This made Jane very sad.

简是在她祖母的陪伴下长大的。她很爱她的祖母。有一天，简收到一些坏消息。她的祖母得了一种严重的癌症。这使简很难过。

Jane's grandma once had a dream ③ of travelling around the world. Jane wanted to help her realize it, but her grandma was very sick. One day, Jane had a great idea. If Grandma could not travel herself, maybe there was another way.

简的祖母曾经有一个周游世界的愿望。简想帮她实现这个愿望，但是她祖母病得很重。一天，简有了一个很棒的想法。如果祖母不能自己旅行，可能还有别的方式。

The next day, Jane went online to tell people her grandma's story. She posted pictures of her grandma on a blog. She asked people if ④ they could help her grandma see the world through pictures. After a few days, many people began to follow Jane's blog. They began posting pictures of Grandma visiting places all over the world. They also sent their blessings /'blesɪŋz/ and warm wishes ⑤ with every picture.

第二天，简上网把她祖母的故事告诉了人们。她在博客上发布了一些她祖母的照片。她请求人们是否能通过照片来帮助她祖母看世界。几天后，许多人开始关注简的博客。他们开始发布祖母游览世界各地的照片。每张照片他们也送上了他们的祝福和温暖的祝愿。

Grandma was very surprised when Jane showed her the pictures. In one of them, Grandma was visiting the Pyramids /'pɪrəmɪdz/ in Egypt /'i:dʒɪpt/. In another, Grandma was standing by ⑥ the Statue of Liberty in New York. In a third picture, Grandma was on the Great Wall of China. She was even at the Sydney Opera House in Australia. In the last one, she was standing in front of Big Ben in England.

当简把这些照片给祖母看时，祖母很惊讶。其中一张是祖母参观埃及的金字塔。另一张是祖母站在纽约的自由女神像旁。在第三张照片中，祖母在中国的长城上。她甚至在澳大利亚的悉尼歌剧院里。在最后一张(照片)中，她正站在英国的大本钟前。

Grandma took Jane's hand and said, "This is wonderful! Thank you and all of those people. You have made my dream come true ⑦." Neither Jane nor her grandma would ever forget that day.

祖母拉着简的手说："这太好了！谢谢你和所有的那些人们。你们使我的愿望实现了。"简和她的祖母永远都不会忘记那一天。

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and answer the questions.
阅读课文，回答问题。

1. What's the bad news about Jane's grandma?
   关于简的祖母的坏消息是什么?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. What is Grandma's dream?
祖母的愿望是什么?

3. What did Jane find on her blog?
简在她的博客上找到了什么?

4. What did Grandma say when Jane showed her the pictures?
当简把照片给祖母看时祖母说了些什么?

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in the box.
用方框中所给词的正确形式填空。

realize 实现	receive 收到	grow 成长
follow 跟随	blessing 祝福	

1. The father walked into the house. His son _____ him.
父亲走进房间。他的儿子_____他。

2. I was on vacation last week and I didn't _____ your letter.
上周我在度假,我没有_____你的信。

3. The rain will be a _____ for the farmers.
对于农民来说这场雨将是_____。

4. He will never _____ his dream if he doesn't work hard.
如果他不努力工作的话,他将不会_____他的梦想。

5. You will change your mind when you _____ up.
当你_____时你将改变你的想法。

3 Look at Grandma's pictures and write down the places under the pictures.
看祖母的这些照片,在照片下面写上地名。

The Pyramids, Egypt 金字塔,埃及

PROJECT 方案

TIME TO IMAGINE! 想象的时间!

Suppose you see Jane's blog on the Internet. You want to help Jane realize her grandma's dream. What would you do?

假设你在网上看到简的博客。你想帮助简实现她祖母的愿望。你会做什么?

Work in a group of four. Write something or draw a picture in your reply.

四人一组练习。在你的答复中写下一些东西或画一张图片。

- In what places would you like to put her grandma's picture?
你想把她祖母的照片放在什么地方?
- What would you say to her grandma? Don't forget to give your warm-hearted blessings to her!
你想对她祖母说些什么?别忘了把你友好的祝福送给她!

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

★One day, Jane received some bad news.

① **receive** /rɪ'si:v/ *v.* 收到;接到

receive sth. from sb. 从某人处收到某物

e.g. He received an award for his bravery from the police service.
他以其勇敢的行为受到警务部门的奖励。

辨析:receive 与 accept
① receive 表示是客观上的"收到"。
② accept 强调愿意接受,是主观上的"接受"。



She received a letter from her father.
她收到了她父亲的一封信。

I can't accept an excuse like that.
我无法接受那样的一个借口。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 1 I _____ a new bike on my birthday, but I didn't _____ it.

A. received; receive　　B. accepted; receive

C. received; accept　　D. accepted; accept

★Her grandma had a terrible type of cancer.

② **cancer** /'kænsə/ *n.* (a serious disease in which growths of cells, also called cancers, form in the body and kill normal body cells. The disease often causes death) **癌；癌症**

have a cancer 是固定搭配，意为“患癌症”。have 表示“患，得(病)”时，与 get 和 catch 同义。区别在于：have 是延续性动词，可以和一段时间连用；而 catch 和 get 是瞬间动词，不能和一段时间连用。

e.g. Three days ago she caught/got a cold. 三天前她感冒了。

She has had a cold for three days. 她已经感冒三天了。

★Jane's grandma once had a dream of travelling...

③ **dream** /dri:m/ *n.* & *v.* **梦想；做梦**

[**重点**] dream 的用法：敲黑板 本课重点，高频考点，牢记！

①作名词时为可数名词，其复数形式为 dreams。

常用于短语“实现梦想”：one's dream comes true / realize one's dream

e.g. The boy's dream is to be a pilot. 这个男孩的梦想是成为一名飞行员。

②作动词时既可为及物动词也可为不及物动词，用作不及物动词时，常和介词 about 或 of 连用。构成短语 dream about/of... 梦想……

e.g. I dream of running my own business. 我梦想自己开公司。

一语辨异：I dreamed a sweet dream. 我做了一个甜美的梦。I dreamed of being a hero. 我梦到我成了一个英雄。

★She asked people if they could help her grandma see the world through pictures.

④ [**高频**] **if** /ɪf/ *conj.* **是否**　敲黑板 中考高频考点，牢记！



引导宾语从句，从句可以根据实际情况采用任何时态。

e.g. She asked me if/whether I could help her with her English. 她问我是否能帮她学英语。if 引导宾语从句时，有时可与 whether 互换。

She hasn't decided whether to go to the concert yet. 她还没有决定去不去那个音乐会。

I'm thinking of whether we should go on a picnic. 我正在想我们是否该进行一次野餐。

只能用 whether，不能用 if：①在带 to 的动词不定式前。②在介词后面。③与 or not 直接连用。

I can't say whether or not he will come on time. 他能否准时来，我说不准。

考题在线 2 I don't know _____ he will come or not this afternoon. [绥化]

A. if　　B. when　　C. whether

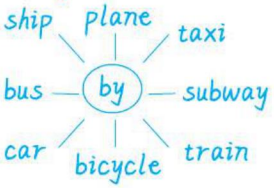
★...sent their blessings and warm wishes with every picture.

⑤ **wish** /wɪʃ/ *n.* **祝愿；愿望；渴望** 常用其复数形式 wishes。wish 还可以作动词，表示“希望”，wish sb. to do sth. 希望某人做某事。

e.g. We all send our best wishes for your early recovery. 我们都祝你早日康复。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

by 的用法



①“by+交通工具”意为“乘……”，表示交通方式。
②by 意为“靠……，通过……”，表示手段。
③by 意为“在……前；不迟于”，表示时间。

★**In another, Grandma was standing by the Statue of Liberty in New York.**

⑥ **by** /baɪ/ *prep.* 在……旁边；在……附近

e.g. Our school is by the river. 我们学校在河的旁边。

They travelled to Hainan by plane. 他们乘飞机到海南旅行。

We have kept in touch with each other by e-mail since he left China. 从他离开中国以后，我们彼此用电子邮件保持联系。

The documents need to be ready by next Friday.
文件需要在下星期五之前准备好。

★**You have made my dream come true.**

⑦ **come true** 实现 通常指梦想、愿望的实现。

e.g. I hope all your dreams can come true. 我希望你所有的梦想都能成真。

My dream will come true someday. 我的梦想有一天会实现。

拓展：



考题在线答案 1. C 2. C

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见288页）

一、根据汉语或首字母提示完成句子

1. Jenny r_____ an express delivery（快递）from Li Ming.

2. Jane was sad that her grandma had a terrible type of c_____.

3. Cairo（开罗）is the capital of E_____.

4. People sent their _____（祝 福）to the injured.

5. If we try our best, our _____（梦想）will come true.

二、单项选择

6. In summer, there are many people fishing _____ the river.

A. to　　B. by

C. for　　D. with

7. If we Chinese work hard together, China Dream will _____.

A. come out　　B. come true

C. achieve　　D. realize

8. I wonder _____. [济宁]

A. if the program *Readers* is popular

B. how does the program *Readers* succeed

C. when does the program *Readers* begin

D. whether is the program *Readers* popular

9. When I was a child, I _____ a manager in a big company in the future.

A. dreamed of being

B. dream of being

C. dream about

D. dream to be

10. Since you are in trouble, why not _____ our help?

A. receive　　B. accept

C. refuse　　D. make

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 23 The Internet—Good or Bad?

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文 • 导读　　导读批注

Pre-reading（读前）

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Why are some parents worried about their kids using the Internet?
  为什么一些父母担心他们的孩子使用互联网?
- Does the Internet make life simpler? How?
  互联网使生活变得更简单了吗? 怎么做到的?

课文朗读

While-reading（读中）

- Are you using the Internet every day? 你每天在使用网络吗?
- Do you think it's good or bad? 你认为它（网络）是好还是坏呢?

❶ The Internet has changed the world. People are able to connect and share information in seconds. However, the Internet has advantages ① /əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒɪz/ and disadvantages /ˌdɪsəd'vɑ:ntɪdʒɪz/. 互联网已经改变了世界。人们在很短的时间内就能联系并分享信息。然而，互联网有优点和缺点。

❷ Some of the advantages are truly wonderful. In many ways it makes life easier and simpler /'sɪmplə/. It helps us get things done ② more quickly. It opens up the world to us. And if a friend lives far away ③, the Internet makes it easy to stay in touch ④. 一些优点的确很棒。在许多方面它使生活变得更容易且更简单。它帮助我们更加快速地把事情做完。它向我们打开了世界。并且如果一个朋友住得远，互联网使保持联系变得容易。

❸ But every coin /kɔɪn/ has two sides. Some of the disadvantages can become real problems if we don't take care. Spending too much time online is harmful to ⑤ people's health. It may even cause ⑥ /kɔ:z/ them to be less ⑦ /les/ social with family and friends. Aside /ə'saɪd/ from that, some people attack /ə'tæk/ the web /web/ or use the Internet to steal /sti:l/ others' personal information, even banking /'bæŋkɪŋ/ information. 但是每件事物都有两面性。如果我们不注意的话一些缺点会变成真正的问题。花太多的时间上网对人们的健康有害。它甚至可能会导致他们与家人和朋友们的交往更少。除了那之外，一些人侵袭网络，或用互联网偷取别人的个人信息，甚至银行信息。

❹ The Internet can be a useful tool, but don't let it take up ⑧ all of your time. Use the Internet properly /'prɒpəlɪ/ and carefully and it can make your life more colourful. 互联网可以成为一个有用的工具，但是别让它占用你全部的时间。

批 体裁：议论文

批 文章结构：总—分—总→
第4段作出总结：正确使用网络。
第1段总结概括，并提出论点。
第2、3段围绕中心论点分述网络的优缺点。

批 词语赏析：（画"～"处）
in seconds 词组恰如其分地表述了网络速度之快，同时也体现了网络的特点。

批 词语赏析：（画"～"处）
even 一词两次在同一段落中出现，起强调作用，表递进关系，突出强调了不正确使用网络带来的坏处。

批 句子：（画"～"处）
用谚语作为段落的开头，能起到承上启下的作用，同时谚语也具有很强的说服力且语言精炼得体。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

正确并小心地使用互联网，它会使你的生活更加丰富多彩。

Where do you want to go? With the Internet, you could meet this student. She lives in Africa.

你想去哪儿？借助互联网，你可以认识这个学生。她住在非洲。

How far do you want to go? The Internet can even take you to the South Pole!

你想走多远？互联网甚至能带你到南极！

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔（见139页）

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and fill in the table. 阅读课文并填表格。

Good things about the Internet 关于互联网好的方面	Bad things about the Internet 关于互联网坏的方面

2 Listen to the dialogue and tick the correct answers. 听对话并给正确的答案打对钩。

课文听力

1. What are Li Ming and Wang Mei talking about? 李明和王梅在谈论什么？

☐ Their school project. 他们的学校课题。

☐ Their homework. 他们的家庭作业。

2. Why does Wang Mei think the Internet is good? 为什么王梅认为互联网是有益的？

☐ She can chat with her friends easily. 她可以很容易地和她的朋友们聊天。

☐ She can watch TV programs. 她可以看电视节目。

3. Li Ming thinks they should use the Internet _____. 李明认为他们应该_____使用互联网。

☐ carefully and freely 小心地并自由地

☐ properly and carefully 正确地并小心地

3 The following are the things you can do on the Internet. Tick the ones that you think are OK for junior high students and give your reasons.

下面是你可以在互联网上做的事。给你认为初中生可以做的事打对钩并给出你的理由。

☐ E-mail with friends and family. 与朋友们和家人互发电子邮件。

☐ Chat online with friends. 在网上和朋友们聊天。

☐ Download documents from strangers. 从陌生人那儿下载文件。

☐ Write blogs. 写博客。

☐ E-mail with strangers. 与陌生人互发电子邮件。

☐ Open attachments from strangers. 打开来自陌生人的附件。

☐ Send, receive or post photos with friends. 和朋友们发送、接收或发布照片。

☐ Play online games for a whole day. 玩一整天的网络游戏。

☐ Download programs. 下载节目。

☐ Stay online after 10:00 p.m. 上网上到晚上 10 点以后。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★However, the Internet has advantages and disadvantages.

① **advantage** /əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ/ *n.*(a thing that helps you to be better or more successful than other people) 优势；有利条件；有利因素 反义词为 disadvantage n. 不利条件

e.g. Living in a big city has many advantages.
住在大城市里有很多有利条件。take advantage of... 利用……
We should take advantage of every chance.
我们应该利用每一次机会。

核心素养之英语思维

培养“合理使用网络”素养

◆在这个快速发展的社会，互联网也成为人们交流和工作学习的一个必备品。然而，在这样一个多变的社会环境里，网络是一把双刃剑，它既能给人以掌握知识和处理信息的便捷，又存在让人痴迷难以自拔的危险。一些孩子出现网瘾、厌学、不服从老师管理、逃课和父母吵架等一系列问题。面对青少年用手机上网的问题，一味禁止不行，放任自由也不行，关键是要让手机的使用符合孩子成长需要，控制在健康合理的范围内。

◆【素养行动】同学们在使用网络时，要规划好上网时间、懂得保护自己、懂得咨询父母或老师。

◆【素养行动结果】学会科学合理使用网络，避免沉溺于网络。

★It helps us get things done more quickly.

② **get sth. done 使某事被做**

e.g. Would you please help me get the door locked?
请问你能帮我把门锁了吗？ get 表示“使；让”，过去分词 done 在此作宾语补足语。
My watch didn't work, so I got it repaired.
我的手表坏了，所以我修理了它。 get sb. to do sth. 意为“让某人做某事”。
We got Mother to prepare our lunch. 我们让母亲准备我们的午餐。

考题在线 1 Grandpa wants to get his radio _____.
A. repair B. repaired C. repairing D. to repair
点拨：运用固定结构法。get sth. done 意为“使某事被做”。

★And if a friend lives far away, the Internet makes it easy to stay in touch.

③ **far away 遥远** 如果表示“离……很远”，则用“far away from...”。

far away 意为“遥远”，表示距离，在句中作状语或表语，有时 away 可以省略。

e.g. My grandparents live far away. 我爷爷奶奶住得很远。
He lives far away from the school. 他住得离学校很远。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

小贴士：如果 away 前有具体的数字修饰时，则不用 far。

My home is 5 miles away from the school. 我家离学校有五英里远。

考题在线 2 Nanjing is about 305 kilometres _____ Shanghai.

A. away to　　B. away from

C. far from　　D. far away from

点拨：运用固定结构法。far away from 意为“离……很远”，但 away 前有具体的数字时，要去掉 far。

④ [高频]**stay in touch 保持联系**

同义短语为 keep in touch。其中 touch 作名词，意为“联系”。

e.g. I have stayed/kept in touch with him since we parted.

自从我们分开以后，我与他一直保持联系。

Please stay/keep in close touch with me.

请与我保持密切联系。

拓展：get in touch with… 和……取得联系

lose touch 失去联系

out of touch 失去联系

★ **Spending too much time online is harmful to people's health.**

⑤ **be harmful to 对……有害**　敲黑板 中考高频考点。牢记！

相当于 do harm to... 它的反义短语为 be good for... 意为“对……有好处”。

e.g. Watching TV too much is harmful to your eyes.

看太多电视对你的眼睛有害。

考题在线 3 A little wine will not be _____ to your health. Just don't drink too much. [无锡]

A. helpful　　B. helpless

C. harmful　　D. harmless

点拨：helpful 意为“有帮助的”；helpless 意为“无帮助的”；harmful 意为“有害的”；harmless 意为“无害的”。根据“只是不要喝太多。”可推断“(喝)一点儿酒不会对你的健康有伤害的。”

★ **It may even cause them to be less social with family and friends.**

⑥ **cause** /kɔːz/ *v.* **使发生；引起；造成**

cause sb. sth. = cause sth. to/for sb. 给某人带来某事

e.g. His absence caused me much trouble.

他的缺席给我造成了许多麻烦。

What was the cause of the accident? 造成这一事故的原因是什么？　cause *n.* 原因；起因；理由；动机

辨析：cause 与 reason　敲黑板 易混点。注意区分！

cause 常与 of 连用，即“the cause of...”。reason 常与 for 连用，即“the reason for...”。

cause 起因；指引起某种后果的起因。	The cause of the accident was that he drove too fast. 事故的起因是他开车太快。
reason 理由，原因；指决定做某一件事或采取某一行动的理由，由此而得出结论或解释。	The reason for my absence was that I was ill. 我缺席的原因是我生病了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 4 Every year driving after drinking wine _____ a lot of traffic accidents. [内江]

A. happens B. provides C. causes

点拨：采用逻辑推理法。happen 发生，主语是发生的事情；provide 提供；cause 引起，主语是原因，宾语是结果。根据句意“每年酒后驾车引起大量的交通事故。”可知答案。

⑦ **less** /les/ *adj.*& *adv.* (little 的比较级) 更少的 (地)；更小的 (地) *n.* 较少量；较小的部分 敲黑板 易混点：注意区分!

e.g. The film was less interesting than the book. 这部电影不如书有趣。

We have less coffee than you have.

我们的咖啡比你们的少。

They have fewer eggs than you have.

他们的鸡蛋比你们的少。

辨析：less 与 fewer
① less 更少（小）的，作形容词讲时，常用来修饰不可数名词。是 little 的比较级。
② fewer 更少的，作形容词讲时，常用来修饰可数名词复数。是 few 的比较级。

考题在线 5 — Can you give me some advice on how to be slimmer?

— Eat _____ meat and _____ cakes. [常州]

A. less; less B. fewer; fewer

C. less; fewer D. fewer; less

点拨：上文句意“你能给我一些建议怎样变得更苗条吗？”提示下文意为“少吃肉、少吃蛋糕”。用 little 的比较级 less 修饰不可数名词 meat，用 few 的比较级修饰可数名词 cakes。两者都表示“更少的”。

一语辨异：We should do more work with fewer people and less money. 我们应该用更少的人和更少的钱做更多的工作。

★ **The Internet can be a useful tool, but don't let it take up all of your time.**

⑧ **take up** 占据；占用；开始从事；接受 (提议)

e.g. It will take up the whole afternoon to prepare a meal.

准备一顿饭要花整个下午的时间。

That big clock will have to go. It takes up too much space.

那个大钟得拿走。它占用了太多空间。

占用；占据

He took up writing after graduation. 毕业后他开始从事写作。

“开始从事”，后接名词、代词或动名词作宾语。

考题在线 6 —I don't think teachers should give too much homework to _____ the free time of students. [安顺]

—Exactly!

A. give up B. take up

C. look up D. put up

点拨：考查动词短语辨析。句意：“我认为老师们不应当布置太多的家庭作业来占据学生们的空闲时间。”“完全正确！”give up 放弃；take up 占据；look up 查阅；put up 悬挂；张贴。

考题在线答案 1. B 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. C 6. B

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见289页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成句子

1. Being tall gives him an _____ (优势) over the other basketball players. [南通]

2. This book is written in _____ (简明的) English.

3. He paid me in _____ (硬币).

4. The _____ (起因) of the fire is a cigarette end.

5. We have _____ (更少的) trouble now than before.

二、单项选择

6. —What do you think of the sofa?

—Not bad, but it may _____ too much space of our living room. [扬州]

A. take up B. put up

C. open up D. make up

7. —All things have advantages and disadvantages.

—Sure. _____. [徐州]

A. East or west, home is the best

B. The early bird catches the worm

C. Many hands make light work

D. Every coin has two sides

8. The woman got her coat _____ just now.

A. wash B. washed

C. to wash D. washes

9. —_____ is it from your home to your school?

—It is about 10 minutes' ride. [潍坊]

A. How long B. How soon

C. How far D. How often

10. There will be _____ cars in the city because people will prefer the subway. [长沙]

A. fewer B. less

C. more

三、连词成句

11. touch, with, old, friends, stay, my, I, in, now

_____.

12. do, want, how, you, to, far, travel

_____?

13. harmful, it, our, health, is, to

_____.

14. caused, the, lightning, baby, cry, the, to

_____.

15. advantages, truly, wonderful, some, the, are, of

_____.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 24 An E-mail to Grandpa

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Do you prefer writing a report on paper or on the computer? Why?
  你更喜欢在纸上写报告还是在电脑上呢？为什么？
- How often do you use your computer for work, study or fun?
  你多久使用一次你的电脑工作、学习或消遣？

课文朗读

Dear Grandpa, 亲爱的祖父：

How are you these days?
这些天您怎么样？

I am writing this e-mail on my new laptop. It is really nice and very fast. It is so helpful. We can do so many great things on a computer and with the Internet.
我正在我的新笔记本电脑上给您写这封电子邮件。它真的很漂亮并且很快。它很有帮助。我们可以在电脑上通过互联网做许多重要的事情。

I have learned how to use a chat program. Let's chat someday soon. My chat program even has video. It would be a lot of fun to see each other as we talk! Can we set up① a time to go online together? 我已经学会了如何使用聊天程序。不久后的某一天咱们一起聊天吧。我的聊天程序里甚至有视频。当我们说话时看到彼此将会很有趣！我们能约定一个时间一起上网吗？

At school this week, I did a report about Easter. My new computer made it fun and interesting. I did all of my research on the Internet. How did I do it? I just typed the right questions into the search engine. It is quite easy to find information on the web.
这周在学校里，我做了一个关于复活节的报告。我的新电脑使这个报告很有趣。我所有的调查都是在网上做的。我是怎么做的呢？我只是把正确的问题输到搜索引擎里。在网上相当容易就找到信息了。

I know you like reading. I know how to download e-books online. I will send some to you!
我知道你喜欢阅读。我知道在网上怎么下载电子书。我将给你发送一些！

I even learned how to find my way around the city. I found a map program on the Internet. It can give me directions to anywhere② I want to go. It's amazing. If I want to go to some new places, I can easily find my way. 我甚至学会了在城市周围怎样找到路。我在网上找到了一个地图程序。它可以给我指引任何我想去的地方的方向。它很令人惊奇。如果我想去一些新地方，我会很容易地找到路。

课文听力

Talk to you soon, 回头和你聊，

Wang Mei 王梅

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Listen and write true (T) or false (F).
听并写出正 (T) 误 (F)。

1. Wang Mei is writing an e-mail on her new computer.
   王梅正在她的新电脑上写一封电子邮件。(　　)
2. Wang Mei wants to set up a time to go online together with Danny.
   王梅想约定一个时间和丹尼一起上网。(　　)
3. This week at school, Wang Mei wrote a report about Christmas. 这周在学校里，王梅写了一篇关于圣诞节的报告。(　　)
4. Wang Mei will download some e-books for

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

her grandpa. 王梅将为她的祖父下载一些电子书。 ( )

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words or phrases in the box.

用方框中所给单词或短语的正确形式填空。

search 搜索	chat 聊天	program 节目	go online 上网	set up 安装好

1. If you spend too much time _____ online, your parents will be angry.
   如果你花太多的时间在网上_____，你的父母会生气的。
2. I don't know how to _____ a new computer. Can you help me?
   我不知道怎样_____一台新电脑。你能帮助我吗?
3. People began to _____ for the lost kid. 人们开始_____这个丢失的孩子。
4. When I want to relax, I turn on the radio and listen to my favourite radio _____.
   当我想放松时，我打开收音机听我最喜欢的无线电广播_____。
5. Li Ming wants to _____ and search the Internet for more information about Easter.
   李明想_____并搜寻网络获取更多的关于复活节的信息。

3 The following are some common ways to communicate with your friends. Check which ones you use most often and explain why.

下面是一些和你的朋友们交流的常用方式。给你最常用的方式打钩，并解释原因。

☐ write e-mails 写电子邮件　　☐ write letters 写信

☐ chat online 网上聊天　　☐ make a phone call 打电话

☐ visit his/her house 去他/她家作客　　☐ others 其他

I like to communicate with my friends by _____ because _____.

我喜欢通过_____和我的朋友们交流因为_____。

4 What do your classmates often do on the Internet? Do a survey of your class and write down the top two answers. 你的同班同学们经常在网上做什么? 对你班做一个调查并写下做得最多的两个答案。

Example: There are 64 students in my class. Of all the 64 students, 33 students like to write e-mails and search for information on the Internet.

例子：我班有 64 名学生。在这 64 名学生中，有 33 名学生喜欢在网上写电子邮件和查找信息。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注

•考点应用

★ Can we set up a time to go online together?

① set up 安排

e.g. I want to set up a time to meet with you.

我想安排个时间和你见面。

set up a time 约个时间

set up 成立

set up 还可表示"建立；开办"。

It is difficult for us to set up a school within a month.

对我们来说，在一个月内很难建立一所学校。

He set up a computer company.

他成立了一个电脑公司。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 1 —Our government has decided to _____ more hospitals and schools in Jiangbei New District of Nanjing.

—I'm very glad to hear that.

A. look up　　B. set up　　C. give up　　D. take up

★ **It can give me directions to anywhere I want to go.**

② **anywhere** /'eniweə(r)/ *adv.* 任何地方

e.g. I cannot find it anywhere. 我在任何地方都没找到它。

Do you want to go anywhere this evening?

今天晚上你想去什么地方吗?

anywhere 常用于否定句、疑问句和条件句中，代替 somewhere。anywhere 也可用于肯定句中，意为"在任何地方；随便哪个地方"。

考题在线 2 There has never been such a beautiful village _____ in the world.

A. anywhere　　B. everywhere　　C. somewhere　　D. nowhere

点拨：由 never 可知，本句表示否定意义。由句意"在世界上任何地方都没有一个如此漂亮的村庄。"可知用 anywhere"任何地方"。

考题在线答案 1. B　2. A

Unit Review

I. 课文原文、译文

Building Your Vocabulary 构建你的词汇库

I. Fill in the blanks with the words from this unit. The first letter is given.

用这个单元中的单词填空。首字母已给出。

1. He is familiar with the computer. He can type without looking at the k_____.

他对电脑很熟悉。他能不看_____打字。

2. The child h_____ himself in the closet when he heard his parents come in.

当他听到他父母进来时，这个孩子把他自己_____壁橱里。

3. After some awful rainy days, the sun finally a_____. 下了几天糟糕的雨后，太阳终于_____。

4. Because of excellent engineers, our country's electronic i_____ has developed a lot. 因为优秀的工程师，我们国家的电子_____得到了很大发展。

5. She wrote many letters to her old friend but didn't r_____ a reply. 她给她的老朋友写了许多信但没有_____一个答复。

II. Fill in the blanks with the phrases in the box. 用方框中的短语填空。

set up 安装好　depend on 依靠　write down 写下 be afraid 害怕　take up 占据

1. Please _____ your names on each page of the paper.

请在每页纸上_____你们的名字。

2. I don't want to _____ my parents for food and clothing.

我不想_____我父母为我提供食物和衣服。

3. She used to _____ to go out alone at night. 她过去常常 _____晚上独自出去。

4. I think these tables _____ too much

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

room. 我认为这些桌子_____太多空间。

5. How long will it take to _____ that new machine?_____那台新机器要花费多长时间?

Grammar in Use 语法运用

Rewrite the sentences using "if".

用"if"重写这些句子。

Example: 例子:

You know how to chat online. You can make friends with people from every corner of the world. 你知道怎样在网上聊天。你可以和世界上每个角落的人们交朋友。

If you know how to chat online, you can make friends with people from every corner of the world. 如果你知道怎样在网上聊天的话,你可以和世界上每个角落的人们交朋友。

1. You know how to use the computer. You can write your report on the computer. 你知道怎样使用电脑。你可以在电脑上写你的报告。

_____

2. You know another program. You can edit your passage more easily than before.
你知道另一个程序。你可以比以前更容易地编辑你的文章。

_____

3. You are careful on the Internet. It will make your life richer and easier. 你在网上很小心。它将使你的生活更加丰富更加容易。

_____

4. You spend too much time online. It will hurt your family and friendships. 你在网上花费太多的时间。它将伤害到你的家庭和友谊。

_____

Listening and Speaking 听说练习

I. Listen and repeat. 听并重复。



1. I often read English storybooks, magazines and newspapers.
我经常阅读英语故事书、杂志和报纸。

2. Could you speak more loudly? 你能说得更大声些吗?

3. With a good education, you can make a difference.
受到好的教育,你可以有所作为。

4. They used to be very active together.
他们过去在一起常常很积极。

II. Listen to the passage and write true (T) or false (F). 听文章并写出正(T)误(F)。

1. I was hit by a car when I was five.
我五岁时被一辆小汽车撞了。 ( )

2. I can't walk but I can play basketball with my friends. 我不能走路但是我能和我的朋友们一起打篮球。 ( )

3. Now I spend a lot of time reading every day. 现在我每天花很多时间阅读。 ( )

III. Group activity—a debate!

小组活动——一场辩论!

Everything has two sides—a good one and a bad one. Create a debate in your group.

每件事都有两面性——好的一面和坏的一面。在你的小组中组织一场辩论赛。

Step 1: Choose a topic (Of course, your topic must have two sides).

第一步:选择一个话题(当然,你的话题必须有两个观点)。

Step 2: Divide the students in your group into two teams.

第二步:把你组里的学生分成两队。

Step 3: The leader of each team chooses one side of the topic.

第三步:每队的领导者选择话题的一个观点。

Step 4: All of the members in each group search for more information to support their side of the topic and prepare a good argument.

第四步:每组所有的成员寻找更多的信息来支持他们对话题所持有的观点,准备一场好的辩论。

Putting It All Together 综合练习

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

I. Read the passage and write true (T) or false (F). 阅读文章并写出正 (T) 误 (F)。

Computers Are Useful Tools

电脑是有用的工具

Computers are fast and seldom make mistakes. They can do many everyday jobs quickly and easily. They are widely used in factories, hospitals and banks. 电脑很快而且很少出错。它们能很快很容易地做许多日常工作。它们被广泛用于工厂、医院和银行。

People, such as scientists, writers, teachers and students, use computers to do all kinds of work. But years ago, computers couldn't do what they do today. They were very big and expensive. Very few people were interested in them or knew how to use them. Today's computers are smaller, cheaper and much easier to use. People use them at home, at work and even when they travel.

像科学家、作家、教师和学生这样的人用电脑做各种各样的工作。但是很多年前，电脑不能做它们今天所做的。它们很大而且很贵。非常少的人对它们感兴趣或知道如何使用它们。今天的电脑变得更小、更便宜且更容易使用了。人们在家、上班甚至旅行时都在使用它们。

Computers and the Internet have changed the way we communicate and allow us to connect in ways we didn't think were possible in the past.

电脑和互联网已经改变了我们交流的方式，并且允许我们以过去认为不可能的方式 (相互) 联系。

1. Computers can't do everyday jobs.
   电脑不能做日常工作。 (　　)
2. Only factories, hospitals and banks use computers.
   只有工厂、医院和银行使用电脑。 (　　)
3. Years ago, few people were interested in computers.
   许多年前，很少人对电脑感兴趣。 (　　)
4. Today's computers are smaller, cheaper and much easier to use. 今天的电脑变得更小、更便宜且更容易使用。 (　　)

Self-Evaluation 自我评价

Find more examples from this unit. Then mark your stars.

从本单元找出更多的例子。然后标记你的星星。

I. Talking about the Internet 谈论互联网

How do you use the Internet? 你怎样使用互联网?

I can talk about the Internet and use it freely.

我会谈论互联网并自如地使用它。

II. Adverbial Clause with "if"

"if" 引导的状语从句

If I work hard this evening, I will complete my research. 如果我今天晚上努力工作的话，我将会完成我的研究。

I can use adverbial clauses with "if" properly.

我能正确地使用 "if" 引导的状语从句。

Everybody! Hear This! 各位！注意听这个！

Everybody! Hear this! 各位！注意听这个！

Here's a lesson you won't want to miss!

这儿有一节你不想错过的课！

Connect yourself to the Internet.

把自己与互联网连接。

Your computer is the tool. 你的计算机就是工具。

Type in where you want to go,

输入你想要去哪里，

Even talk to another school!

甚至是和另一所学校对话！

Everybody! Hear this! 各位！注意听这个！

Here's a lesson you won't want to miss!

这儿有一节你不想错过的课！

Type the words you want to say.

输入你想说的话。

关注微信公众号 "教辅资料站" 获取更多学习资料

Press “send” and you will see.

按“发送”键，你就会看见。

In a minute or two you may receive

一两分钟后你可能收到

An answer on the screen. 在屏幕上的一个回复。

Everybody! Hear this! 各位！注意听这个！

Here’s a lesson you won’t want to miss!

这儿有一节你不想错过的课！

Distance does not matter 距离不是问题

When you search the Internet.

当你在互联网上搜索时。

You can search around the world

你可以在全世界搜索

For information you won’t forget!

你不会忘记的信息！

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

if 引导的条件状语从句

考向一：if 作从属连词，意为“如果”，用来引导条件状语从句，表示主句动作发生的条件。if 引导的条件状语从句可放在主句之前，也可放在主句之后。但当 if 引导的条件状语从句放在主句之前时，常用逗号与主句隔开。

e.g. You will be late if you don’t hurry up.= If you don’t hurry up, you will be late.

如果你不快点，你就会迟到。

考向二：[**易错点**] 在含有 if 引导的条件状语从句的复合句中，如果主句用一般将来时，从句应用一般现在时表将来。

e.g. We will go to the farm if you are free this afternoon.

如果今天下午你有空，我们就去农场。

考题在线 1 We will achieve our China Dream _____ we work hard and never give up. [**资阳**]

A. and　　B. so　　C. if　　D. but

点拨：考查连词词义辨析。句意：如果我们努力工作，永不放弃，我们将会实现我们的中国梦。前句能够实现必须在后句的前提之下，所以后句应用 if 引导条件状语从句。

考向三：在含有 if 引导的条件状语从句的复合句中，如果主句是祈使句，从句也要用一般现在时。

e.g. Let’s go shopping if you are not busy.

如果你不忙的话，咱们去购物吧。

考向四：在含有 if 引导的条件状语从句的复合句中，如果主句含有情态动词，如 can, may, must 等，从句也要用一般现在时。

e.g. You can stay here for the weekend if you like.

如果你愿意，你可以留在这里过周末。

速记小筏：if 条件句：主将从现，主祈从现，主情从现。

拓展：（1）if 还可以引导宾语从句，意为“是否”。

考题在线 2 —What did Tom say to you just now, John?

—He asked _____. [**随州**]

A. why I am so happy today

B. who did I play football with after school

C. what will I do for the weekend

D. if I could go to the movies with him tonight

点拨：考查宾语从句用法。句意：——汤姆刚刚和你说什么了，约翰？——他问我今晚是否能和他一起看电影。宾语从句要用陈述语序，排除 B、C。主句为一般过去时，从句要用相应的过去时态（真理除外），排除 A。

（2）引导条件状语从句的连词和连词词组还有：unless（除非），as/so long as（只要）。

e.g. So long as we don’t lose heart, we will find a way to overcome the difficulty.

只要我们不泄气，就能找到克服困难的方法。

We won’t go to the cinema unless you agree. 除非你同意，否则我们将不去看电影。

考题在线答案 1. C　2. D

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见289页)

听力技巧

五边处理法(即边听,边理解,边复述,边做笔记,边猜测。另外,我们还应该通过一些有效途径在短时间内记住重要的信息,如年代、人物、事件、地点、单价、门牌号等。)

课文听力

听力过程

听 Lesson 23 ②,回答以下小题

1. The school project is _____
   A. The Internet—good.
   B. The Internet—bad.
   C. The Internet—good or bad?
2. What can we do on the Internet?
   A. We can only chat with friends.
   B. We can only share information.
   C. We can chat with friends, share information and use it to learn English.
3. _____ doesn't think the Internet is good for health if we spend too much time online.
   A. Li Ming
   B. Wang Mei
   C. Li Ming's friend

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

交代 what

The passage is mainly about the Internet. It has advantages and disadvantages.

In many ways, it makes life easier and simpler. It helps to get things done more quickly. It opens up the world to us. And the Internet makes it easy to stay in touch with friends who live far away.

But every coin has two sides. Spending too much time online is harmful to people's health. It may even cause them to be less social with family and friends. Some people attack the web or use the Internet to steal others' information.

We should use the Internet properly and carefully.

提出建议

单元话题

许多学生都热衷于上网,但上网对学生而言有利有弊。请你根据下表提供的信息用英语写一篇80词左右的小短文,描述上网的优点和缺点,谈谈自己的看法和做法。 [聊城]

优点	缺点
快速获得大量的信息;正确运用网络有助于学习;广交朋友。	经常玩电脑游戏、聊天浪费时间和金钱,并且不利于学习;可能上当受骗。
你的看法和做法……	

审题指导(把握中心,得方向分)

1. 时态:一般现在时
2. 要分层次来写:总述—优缺点—总结

写作技法(学会方法,巧得高分)

"对比法"描写网络的利弊

如果写作话题是网络的优点和缺点,可以使用对比法,并适当地表达自己的观点。

写作模板(学会套路,得基本分)

对比法
- 优点(advantages)
- 缺点(disadvantages)
- 你的看法(your views)

经典词句(妙用句式,得出彩分)

单词	advantage; disadvantage; cheat
短语	go online; be interested in; at the same time
句子	1.On the one hand...On the other hand… 2. It is harmful to our study. 3. Every coin has two sides. 4. We should make good use of it and stay away from unhealthy websites.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Today many students are interested in going online. But it has advantages and disadvantages.

On the one hand, we can get a lot of information quickly and make friends on the Internet. Also, it's a useful learning tool. On the other hand, playing computer games and chatting will waste time and money. It is harmful to our study. We may be cheated when we go online.

Every coin has two sides. I think we should make good use of it and stay away from unhealthy websites. At the same time, we shouldn't spend much time on it.

名师点评：

1. 文章使用"对比法"描写网络的利弊，并且适当地表达自己的观点。
2. 短文时态采用一般现在时。

添彩点：①转折连词 but 的运用，写出了使用网络的两面性，引出下文的话题。②运用了大量重点词语，如：be interested in（对……感兴趣）；make friends（交朋友）；cheat（欺骗）；go online（上网）；make good use of（充分利用）等。



V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见289页）

一、语法专练

1. 如果你想要更多的信息，你可以发邮件给我们。［黄石］

_____ you _____ more information, you _____ _____ an e-mail to us.

2. 如果你现在不出发，你就会错过末班车。［广州］

_____ you don't leave now, you _____ _____ the final bus.

3. 河流会变得越来越脏，除非我们采取措施保护它们。［安徽］

The rivers _____ _____ dirtier and dirtier _____ we take action to protect them.

4. 只要你不放弃，你就会成功。

_____ _____ _____ you don't give up, you will succeed.

5. ——你认为他们是否会和我们练习说英语？

——我认为如果他们有空的话他们会的。

—Do you think if they _____ _____ speaking English with us?

—I think they will if they _____ free.

二、单元知识浓缩

用方框中所给单词或短语的适当形式填空。

far away	too much	little	be able to
take up	aside from	information	
advantage	steal		

As is known to us, the Internet has changed the world. People _____[6] connect and share all kinds of _____[7] in seconds. However, the Internet has _____[8] and disadvantages.

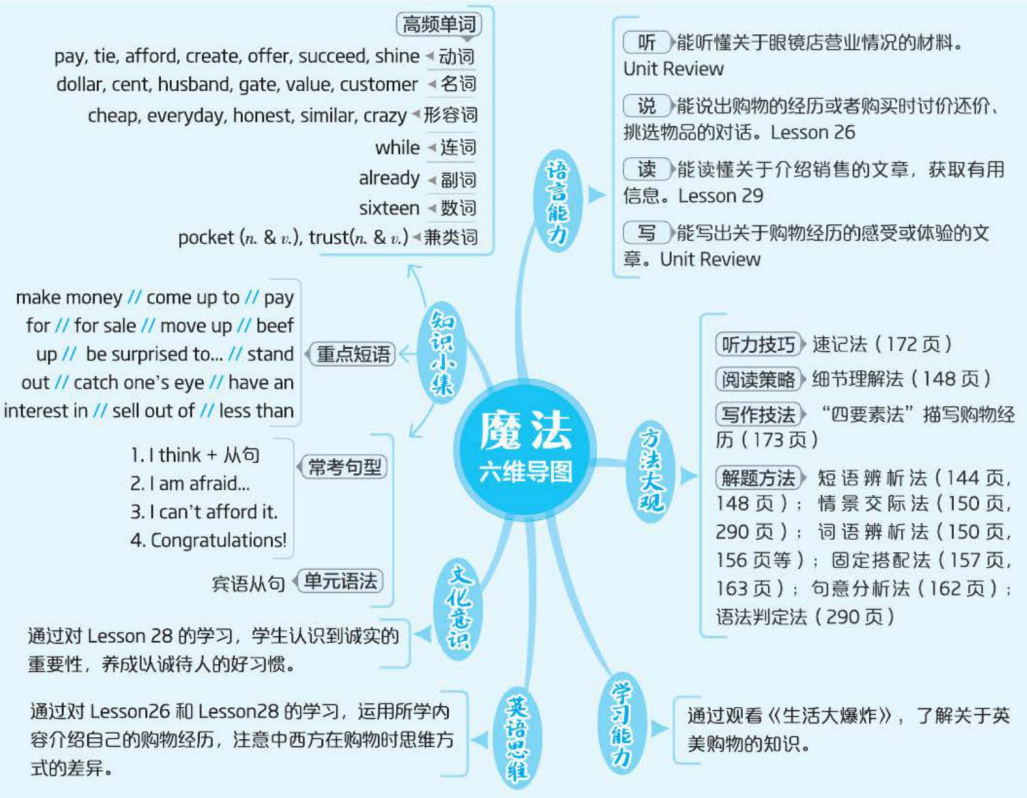
The Internet brings us so much convenience. For example, it makes life easier and simpler. It opens up the world to us. And if a friend lives _____[9], the Internet makes it easy to stay in touch. We can also buy or sell whatever we want on the Internet.

But every coin has two sides. Some of the disadvantages can become real problems if we don't take care. Spending _____[10] time online is harmful to people's health. It may even cause them to be _____[11] social with family and friends. _____[12] that, some people use the Internet _____[13] others' personal information. The Internet can be a useful tool, but don't let it _____[14] too much of your time. Use the Internet properly and carefully.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 Buying and Selling

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Lesson 25

必背单词

1. **pay** *v.*（paid/ paid）付（款）→ pay sb. 付（钱）给某人→ pay for sth. 为某物付款
2. **dollar** *n.* 美元→复数形式是 dollars，符号是 $ → pound *n.* 英镑（符号 £）
3. **sixteen** *num.* 十六

必背短语

4. make money 挣钱；赚钱

必背句子

5. **Have** you **got** any ideas, Jenny?

你有什么主意吗，詹妮?

Lesson 26

必背单词

1. **cheap** *adj.* 便宜的；廉价的 → expensive *adj.* 昂贵的（反义词）
2. **pocket** *n.* 口袋；袋子→ *v.* 挣；赚下；赢得
3. **tie** *v.*（用线、绳等）系；捆；绑→ tie sth. to / onto sth. 把……系在……上→ tie *n.* 绳子；领带
4. **while** *conj.* 当……的时候
5. **afford** *v.* 买得起；（有时间）做
6. **cent** *n.* 分

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

必背短语

7. come up to（为攀谈而）走到跟前；走近

8. any other 其他的

9. for sale 待售；供出售

10. go/walk over to 从一处到另一处

必背句子

11. What is it **for**? 它是干什么用的？

12. You can do your homework **while** you ride your bike.
当你骑自行车的时候，你可以做你的家庭作业。

13. I'm afraid I can't **afford** it. 我恐怕买不起它。

Lesson 27

必背单词

1. everyday *adj.* 每天的；日常的→ daily *adj.* 日常的（近义词）→ every day 每天

必背短语

2. move up 升级；提升；上升

必背句子

3. They steal money **by making** changes to the company's accounts.
他们通过修改公司的账目来偷钱。

Lesson 28

必背单词

1. husband *n.* 丈夫→ wife *n.* 妻子

2. gate *n.* 大门

3. honest *adj.* 坦白的；诚实的→ dishonest *adj.* 不诚实的（反义词）→ to be honest 说实话；说真话

4. value *n.* 价值→ of value to sb. 对某人有……价值
→ valuable *adj.* 贵重的；宝贵的

5. trust *v.* & *n.* 相信；信赖→ believe *v.* 相信

必背短语

6. be surprised to do sth.
惊讶于做某事 / 对做某事感到惊讶

必背句子

7. We **were surprised to** find that the farmer was so trusting.
我们很吃惊地发现这位农民居然如此相信别人。

8. On our way home, I **wondered if** everyone would be **honest**.
在我们回家的路上，我在想是不是每个人都会诚实。

Lesson 29

必背单词

1. create *v.* 创作；创造→ creation *n.* 创造；创建
→ creative *adj.* 有创造力的；创造性的

2. customer *n.* 顾客；主顾；客户→ custom *n.* 风俗；习惯→ customs *n.* 海关

3. already *adv.* 已经

4. similar *adj.* 相像的；相仿的→ be similar to 与……相似 → be similar in 在……方面相似

5. offer *v.* 提供；供给

6. shine *v.* （shone/ shone）发光；反射

7. succeed *v.* 成功；做成→ success *n.* 成功
→ successful *adj.* 成功的

必背短语

8. stand out 出色；杰出

9. catch one's eye 吸引某人的目光

10. have an interest in 在……方面有兴趣

必背句子

11. With a good quality product and excellent advertising, you will surely **succeed**. 既有好质量的产品又有杰出的广告，你就一定会成功。

Lesson 30

必背单词

1. crazy *adj.* 疯狂的；荒唐的
→ drive sb. crazy 让某人发疯
→ be crazy about sth. 对某物着迷

必背短语

2. sell out of 卖光

3. less than 少于

必背句子

4. Everyone thinks it's **too** dangerous **to** do homework on a bicycle, so **nobody** bought it.
每个人都认为在自行车上做家庭作业太危险了，因此没有人买它。

单元必背语法

1. Do you **know that** our basketball team is going to play in another city?
你知道我们的篮球队将去另一个城市比赛吗？

2. I don't think it would be safe to do my homework on a bicycle.
我认为在自行车上做作业是不安全的。

3. You might not always know **what they mean**.
你可能不总是知道它们是什么意思。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 25 Raising Money

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Have you ever had a bake sale? 你曾经有过烤饼义卖（经历）吗?
- Have you ever raised money? What did you do?
  你曾经筹集过资金吗? 你都做了些什么?

课文朗读

Brian: Hi Danny and Jenny. Do you know that our basketball team is going to play in another city? 嗨，丹尼，詹妮。你们知道我们的篮球队将去另一个城市比赛吗?

Jenny: Yes. But the trip costs a lot of money. Each player needs to pay ① /peɪ/$150. We need to make some money ② for the team!
是的。但是那个行程要花费很多钱。每个运动员需要付 150 美元。我们需要为篮球队赚一些钱!

Danny: How can we make money? I don't have a job. 我们如何赚钱呢? 我没有工作。

Brian: Maybe we can work together to raise some money ③. Have you got ④ any ideas, Jenny? 也许我们可以一起工作来筹一些钱。你有什么主意吗，詹妮?

Jenny: Maybe we can have a bake /beɪk/ sale. We can sell snacks and other things at lunch hour. 也许我们可以进行烤饼义卖。我们可以在午饭时间卖一些小吃和其他东西。

Brian: Good idea, Jenny! I'll bake something delicious. I think ⑤ everybody ⑥ likes cookies. 好主意，詹妮! 我会烤一些好吃的东西。我认为每个人都喜欢曲奇饼。

Danny: Yes! How much will they cost?
是的! 它们将卖多少钱呢?

Brian: One dollar /'dɒlə/ for four cookies.
一美元四个。

Danny: I'm going to buy sixteen /ˌsɪks'tiːn/!
我要买十六个!

Jenny: We need some advertising /'ædvətaɪzɪŋ/. I'll make a poster ⑦ /'pəʊstə/. What will you sell, Danny? 我们需要一些广告。我将会做一张海报。丹尼，你要卖什么呢?

I'm going to invent a new product!
我将要发明一种新产品!
Really? 真的吗?
Hmm... 嗯……

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and answer the questions.
阅读课文并回答问题。

1. Why do they want to raise money?
   他们为什么想筹钱呢?
2. When will they have a bake sale?
   他们什么时候将会进行烤饼义卖呢?
3. How much will Brian's cookies cost?
   布赖恩的曲奇饼将卖多少钱?
4. What is Danny going to sell?
   丹尼将要卖什么?
5. What does Jenny mean when she says, "Hmm..."?
   当詹妮说“嗯……”的时候，她是什么意思?

2 Listen to the passage and fill in the blanks.
听短文并填空。

课文听力

1. Each player needs to pay _____ for the trip.
   每个运动员需要为这次行程付_____。
2. Li Ming, Wang Mei and Li Lin decide to work together to _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

李明、王梅和李林决定一起工作来_____。

3. Wang Mei wants to bake some _____ to sell. 王梅想烤一些_____来卖。

4. Li Ming wants to _____ a new product to sell. 李明想_____一种新产品来卖。

5. Li Lin will make some _____ to help them. 李林将会做一些_____来帮助他们。

3 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words or phrases in the box.

用方框内单词或短语的正确形式填空。

sell 出售	play 玩耍	dollar 美元
pay 支付	make money 挣钱	

1. There are usually eleven _____ on a football team.
一个足球队通常有十一名_____。

2. Mr. Han chose a shirt, _____ for it and left the store. 韩先生选了一件衬衣，为它_____然后离开了商店。

3. That laptop cost you 2 000 _____ ?! That's too expensive! 那台笔记本电脑花了你两千_____？！那太贵了！

4. As an employee, I try to _____ for my company. 作为一名雇员，我努力为我的公司_____。

5. I often go to that bakery. I think it _____ the best cookies. 我经常去那家面包店。我觉得它_____最好的曲奇饼。

4 Work in pairs. Your class is going on a field trip. But first, you have to raise money for it. Make up a dialogue and act it out. 结对练习。你们班将要去野外旅行。但是首先，你们必须为这次野外旅行筹钱。编写一段对话并表演。

Task tips: 任务提示：

- When and where will you go on the field trip? 你们将于何时何地进行野外旅行?
- How much will the trip cost? 这次野外旅行将要花费多少钱?
- How much does each student need to pay? 每个学生需要支付多少钱?
- What will you do to raise money? 你将会做些什么来筹钱?

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注

pay—paid—paid

pay 的用法：
① pay sb. 付钱给某人
② pay for sth. 为某物付款；付某物的费用，该短语主语为“人”，for 后接“物”。
③ pay money for sth. 为某物付钱

•考点应用

★Each player needs to pay $150.

敲黑板 重点，中考高频考点，牢记！

① pay /peɪ/ *v.* 付(款)

e.g. I paid five *yuan* for the pen. 我买这支钢笔花了5元钱。
I want to pay him. 我想付钱给他。
How much did you pay for the car? 你买那辆车花了多少钱?
I paid 50 *yuan* for this dress. 我买这条连衣裙花了50元。

考题在线1 This food is free. You don't have to _____ it. [河北]

A. look for　　B. pay for
C. ask for　　D. wait for

点拨：采用短语辨析法。句意：这食物免费。你不必为它付钱。look for 寻找；pay for 支付；ask for 请求；wait for 等待。

★We need to make some money for the team!

② make money 挣钱；赚钱

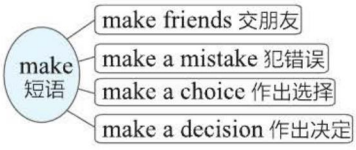
e.g. The movie should make money. 这部电影应该会赚钱。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

He made 600 pounds for his family last month.
上个月他为他的家人赚了 600 英镑。

make money for…
为……赚钱

拓展：make 短语



★Maybe we can work together to raise some money.

作目的状语

③ **to raise money 筹钱**

e.g. I bought a big box to collect books for kids in poor areas.
我买了一个大箱子，目的是为贫困地区的孩子收集书。

★Have you got any ideas, Jenny?

④ **have got 有**

have got 通常用在口语中，相当于一般现在时 have 的含义。have got 的疑问句形式是将 have 提前；否定形式是在 have 之后直接加 not。

e.g. —Have you got an umbrella?
你有一把雨伞吗？
—Yes, I have./ No, I haven't.
是的，我有。/ 不，我没有。

考题在线 2 Our team _____ another point! I am sure we'll win the game. [河北]

A. will get　　B. has got
C. is getting　　D. was getting

点拨：考查句子的时态。句意：我们队又得了一分！我肯定我们能赢这场比赛。由下一句句意“我肯定我们能赢这场比赛。”可知上一句应该是表示已经又得了一分，应该用现在完成时。

★I think everybody likes cookies.

I think… 为主句，everybody likes cookies 为省略了引导词 that 的宾语从句，作 think 的宾语。

⑤ **I think 我认为**

e.g. I think they have been there.
我认为他们去过那儿。

⑥ **everybody** /'evribɒdi/ *pron.* **每个人**

everybody 作主语时，谓语动词用单数，相当于 everyone。

e.g. —Is everybody/everyone here? 每个人都在这儿吗？
—No. Tom is not here. 不。汤姆没在。

★I'll make a poster.

⑦ **poster** /'pəʊstə/ *n.* (a large notice, often with a picture on it, that is put in a public place to advertise sth.) **招贴；海报**

常用短语：make a poster 制作海报

e.g. First, make a poster about the job, and then put it up on the wall at the gate. 首先，制作一份关于这份工作的海报，然后把它张贴在门口的墙上。

考题在线答案 1. B　2. B

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见289页)

一、根据首字母或汉语提示写出单词

1. I p_____ 200 *yuan* to him for the books.
2. Could you please make a _____ (海报) for us?
3. Our school is ready to _____ (募集) money for the old people in the poor mountain ous area. [枣庄]
4. The trip _____ (花费) a lot of money last year.
5. There are _____ (十六) girls in our class.

二、用所给单词的适当形式填空

6. Have you _____ (get) an idea?
7. We made some _____ (poster) about the cookie sale.
8. Danny _____ (pay) 50 *yuan* for the new book.
9. Liu Ming _____ (make) 1000 *yuan* for his son. 【导学号：6505386】
10. How many _____ (dollar) do you have?

三、连词成句

11. money, students, how, make, the, did
_____?
12. did, pet, this, you, for, how, much, pay
_____?
13. work, to, raise, money, we, together
_____.
14. think, likes, everybody, I , don't , cookies
_____.
15. is, new, something, today's, in, there, newspaper
_____.

Lesson 26 Cookies, Please!

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What do you do with your pocket money? 你如何处理你的零用钱?
- Can you think of an invention that would make your life easier? What is it?
  你能想出一种可以让你的生活变得更舒适的发明吗? 它是什么?

It's Thursday. Brian and Danny are selling things to raise money for the school basketball team. A girl comes up to① Brian's table.

课文朗读

今天是星期四。布赖恩和丹尼正在卖东西为学校篮球队筹钱。一个女孩来到了布赖恩的桌子前。

Girl: How much are the cookies?

曲奇饼多少钱呢?

Brian: They're cheap /tʃi:p/! You can buy four for only one dollar. 它们很便宜! 你仅仅用一美元就可以买四个。

Girl: Great. I'll take four, please.

太好了。请给我来四个。

Brian: Sure! One dollar, please. 好的! 请付一美元。

(The girl takes a one-dollar coin from her pocket /'pɒkɪt/ and pays for her cookies. 这个女孩从她的口袋里拿出一美元硬币为她买的曲奇饼付钱。)

Girl: Do you have any other② things for sale③?

你有其他东西要卖吗?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Brian: Sorry, I only have cookies. But I guess my friend Danny is selling something different. 对不起，我只有曲奇饼。但是我猜我的朋友丹尼正在卖一些与众不同的东西。

(The girl goes over to Danny's table. She sees a piece of wood with a red flag. 这个女孩走向丹尼的桌子。她看到了一块带有一面红旗的木头。)

Girl: What's that? 那是什么?

Danny: It's a Danny Desk-Cycle /'desk'saɪkl/! Do you want to buy one?
它是丹尼牌自行车桌！你想买一个吗?

Girl: What is it for? 它是干什么用的?

Danny: It's a desk. You tie /taɪ/ it onto your bike. You can do your homework while /waɪl/ you ride your bike.
它是一张书桌。你把它绑在你的自行车上。当你骑自行车的时候，你可以做你的家庭作业。

Girl: I don't think it would be safe to do my homework on a bicycle.
我认为在自行车上做家庭作业是不安全的。

Danny: Try it for one week. If you don't like it, I will give you your money back. 试用它一个星期。如果你不喜欢它，我会把钱退给你。

Girl: How much does it cost? 它多少钱?

Danny: It's only five dollars. That's a very low price for such a great product!
只要五美元。对于一个如此好的产品来说那是一个很低的价格!

Girl: No, that's too expensive. I'm afraid I can't afford /ə'fɔːd/ it. I only have a few cents /sents/. I gave most of my money to Brian for some cookies.
不，那太贵了。我恐怕买不起它。我只有几美分。我用我的大部分钱在布赖恩那儿买了一些曲奇饼。

Danny: I'm hungry. May I have some of your cookies? We can trade! 我饿了。我可以要一些你的曲奇饼吗? 我们可以交换!

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and write true(T) or false (F). 阅读课文并写正 (T) 或误 (F)。

1. Brian's cookies are expensive.
布赖恩的曲奇饼很贵。 (　　)
2. The girl pays one dollar for four cookies.
这个女孩一美元买了四个曲奇饼。 (　　)
3. Danny is selling some wood, bags and red flags. 丹尼正在卖一些木头、袋子和红旗。(　　)
4. Danny's invention is for doing homework.
丹尼的发明是用来做家庭作业的。 (　　)
5. The girl will buy the Danny Desk-Cycle.
这个女孩将会买丹尼牌自行车桌。 (　　)

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in the box. 用方框内单词的正确形式填空。

coin 硬币　tie 系；绑　while 当……的时候　afford 承担得起；买得起　cheap 便宜的　pocket 口袋

1. When David visits other countries, he likes to collect foreign _____. 当戴维参观其他国家时，他喜欢收集外国_____。
2. Though it's _____, it is of good quality. 尽管它_____，但质量很好。
3. He locked the door and put the key in his _____.
他锁上门并把钥匙放进他的_____。
4. I'll take care of your garden _____ you are away. _____你离开_____，我会照看你的花园。
5. We can't _____ to pay such a price. We don't have enough money. 我们不能_____付这样的价格。我们没有足够的钱。
6. Bob _____ the dog to the tree before he left. 鲍勃在他离开前把狗_____树上。

3 In the lesson, Danny uses some strategies to push his product. Find Danny's strategies and write them down. 在课文中，丹尼用了一些策略来推销他的产品。找出丹尼的策略并写下来。

Danny's Strategies: 丹尼的策略:

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Function of the product: 产品的功能：_____

Try out the product: 试用产品：_____

Attractive price: 吸引人的价格：_____

Imagine you are going to push a product. What will you say? Write some sentences.

设想你将要推销一种产品。你将会说些什么？写一些句子。

4 Work in pairs and make up a dialogue using the information from Activity 3.

结对练习，并用活动 3 中的信息编写一段对话。

You can use the following expressions:

你可以使用以下表达：

- How much...?……多少钱？
- They're cheap! 它们很便宜！
- That's fine. I'll take..., please.
  太好了。我要……，请。
- What is this for? 这是干什么用的？
- That's too expensive. I'm afraid I can't afford it. 那太贵了。我恐怕买不起它。

BUY 买　SELL 卖

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练　专攻中考阅读 60分

（答案见289页）

阅读策略

细节理解法（阅读时带着问题读文章，加强阅读的针对性，提高做题的准确率。比如，细节题主要考查考生对某句话的理解，我们可以根据题干内容从原文中找到相关的句子，然后进行比较和分析，确定最佳答案。）

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读 Lesson 26，回答问题

1. What's the main idea of Lesson 26?　（主旨大意题）

A. Cookies on sale.

B. Buy cookies.

C. Make cookies.

D. Cookies are expensive.

二、细读文章，解决细节理解题目

2. ⊙ We can buy _____ cookies for only one dollar.　（细节理解题）

A. two　B. three

C. four　D. five

3. ⊙ What does Danny sell?　（细节理解题）

A. A book.　B. A desk.

C. A bag.　D. A bicycle.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨　稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注

如果不需要说明所接近的对象，也可将 to 省略。

come up with 表示“提出；想出”。

•考点应用

★A girl comes up to Brian's table.

① come up to（为攀谈而）走到跟前；走近

本短语中 up 是副词，to 为介词，to 后可接表示人、地点或事物的名词。

e.g. She is coming up to me.

她正朝我走来。

考题在线 1 The government of China _____ the idea of the Belt and Road in 2013.　[岳阳]

A. came up with　B. cheered up　C. put up

点拨：短语辨析法。句意：中国政府在 2013 年提出了一带一路的想法。come up with 想出，提出；cheer up 使……高兴；put up 张贴，举起，搭建。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★ Do you have any other things for sale?

② **any other 其他的** 敲黑板 高频考点，牢记！

e.g. Mary is taller than any other girl in the class.
玛丽比班上其他任何一个女孩都高。

Do you have any other questions? 你还有其他的问题吗？

any other 的用法：
①用在肯定句中，后面常接可数名词单数。
②用在否定句或疑问句中，后面常接可数名词复数。

③ **for sale 待售；供出售** sale—sell

该短语常用来作后置定语、表语或状语。

e.g. Do you have anything for sale? 你有东西要出售吗？

Will the new TV be on sale tomorrow?
这台新电视明天将会打折销售吗？

辨析：for sale 和 on sale
① for sale 待售；出售
② on sale 打折销售；贱卖

考题在线 2 Mo Yan's books are very popular. You can find they are _____ (打折销售) in many languages. [聊城改编]

★ The girl goes over to Danny's table.

④ **go over to 从一处到另一处；朝……走去**

e.g. I saw you go over to a bookstore just now.
刚才我看见你朝一个书店走去。

★ You tie it onto your bike.

⑤ **tie** /taɪ/ *v.* (用线、绳等) 系；拴；绑 tie sth. to /onto sth. 把……系在……上

e.g. Tie the horse to the tree. 把马拴在树上。

一语辨异：He ties his tie every morning. 他每天早晨系领带。

拓展：tie 还可作名词，意为"绳子；线；领带"。

★ You can do your homework while you ride your bike.

⑥ **[高频] while** /waɪl/ *conj.* **当……的时候；在……期间** 引导时间状语从句

从句中的动词应用延续性动词，强调主句和从句的动作同时发生，或主句动作在从句动作持续过程中的某一时刻发生。

e.g. I met Anne while I was taking a walk in the park.
当我在公园里散步时，我遇到了安妮。

The film had been on for ten minutes when they got to the cinema.
当他们到达电影院时，电影已经开始 10 分钟了。

My brother was learning English while my sister was listening to music. 当我哥哥在学英语的时候，我妹妹在听音乐。

辨析：when 与 while
① when 接"时间点"，引导的从句的动作可以和主句的动作同时发生，也可以在主句的动作之前或之后发生。
② while 接"时间段"，主句的动作与从句的动作同时发生，但持续时间一般较长或主句的动作在从句的动作之中发生。

考题在线 3 Love your parents _____ they are alive. Don't wait until it is too late. [苏州]

A. while　　B. though　　C. because　　D. unless

点拨：考查连词。while 当……时；though 尽管；because 因为；unless 如果不。根据下一句"不要等到太迟了"可知，此处表示"父母在世的时候就爱他们"，故选 A，while 引导时间状语从句。

★ I'm afraid I can't afford it.

⑦ **[高频] I'm afraid... 我恐怕……** 其后常接 that 从句，且 that 常可省略。

口语中 I'm afraid 相当于 I'm sorry，是一种委婉的言辞，引出一个对方不愿

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

I'm afraid so.
我恐怕是那样的。
I'm afraid not.
我恐怕不是那样的。

意接受的情况或引出一个带有歉意的拒绝，意为“恐怕”。

e.g. I'm afraid (that) I can't go to your party next week.
我恐怕下周不能参加你的聚会。

考题在线 4 —Mum, I don't have anybody to play with. Can I have a pet? [温州]

—_____ Our apartment is too small.

A. Why not? B. I hope so.
C. Anything else? D. I'm afraid not.

点拨：采用情景交际法。Why not? 为什么不呢？ I hope so. 我希望如此。Anything else? 还有别的吗？ I'm afraid not. 恐怕不可以。根据上文提出问题实质是“要宠物”和下文的回答“公寓太小”，可知，此处的回答应该是对问句进行否定。

负担得起做某事
afford + to do
afford + 名词
负担得起；抽得出

⑧ [高频] **afford** /əˈfɔːd/ *v.* 买得起；(有时间)做，能做

e.g. Can they afford the new house? 他们能买得起那座新房子吗？

考题在线 5 I am afraid we cannot _____ to take a taxi. Let's go by underground instead. [天津]

A. refuse B. afford C. forget D. fall

点拨：词语辨析法。句意：我恐怕打车去我们支付不起。咱们改坐地铁吧。refuse 意为“拒绝”，afford 意为“买得起；担负得起”，forget 意为“忘记”，fall 意为“摔倒”。根据句意分析可知应该用 afford to do sth.，意为“支付得起做某事”。

afford 常和 can, could 或 be able to 连用，其后接名词、代词或动词不定式作宾语，常用于否定句或疑问句中。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. on sale 3. A 4. D 5. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见289页)

一、用方框中所给短语的适当形式填空

be afraid	for sale	any other
come up to	go over to	

1. Do you have _____ things to say?
2. There's no need to _____ .
3. Danny is _____ me.
4. This kind of book is _____.
5. We all _____ the shop.

二、单项选择

6. This hat is _____ sale. It is very cheap.
A. on B. of
C. in D. to

7. The Apple Watch is very beautiful, but it's too expensive. So I can't _____ it. [武威]
A. save B. support C. offer D. afford

8. Tim Cook called his mother every week even while he _____ around the world. [临沂]
A. was travelling B. is travelling
C. travelled D. travels

9. —May I use your computer, Mr. Black?
—_____. I am using it. [安徽]
A. Go ahead B. Thank you
C. Of course D. I'm afraid not

10. Could you record today's NBA basketball game for me? I can watch _____ later. [孝感]
A. one B. my C. your D. it

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 27 Business English

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Do you know any business terms in English? 你知道一些英语商务用语吗?
- Is business English different from everyday English? 商务英语与日常英语不同吗?

课文朗读

English is the language of international business. Do you know that business English can be different from ① everyday ② /'evrɪdeɪ/ English? In business, people sometimes speak English in interesting ways. You might not always know what they mean ③. Can you guess the meanings of the sentences below? 英语是国际商务语言。你知道商务英语可能不同于日常英语吗?在商务中,人们有时会以有趣的方式来讲英语。你或许并不总是知道它们是什么意思。你能猜出下列句子的意思吗?

Look at this one: Buy low, sell high. It's a short and simple sentence. Buy something at a low price, and then sell it at a high price. It makes sense, right? 看这句话:低买高卖。这是一个简短的句子。以低价买进某物,然后以高价卖出它。这就可以讲得通了,对吧?

What does We're in the red this month mean? Does it mean everyone is wearing red clothes? No! It means the business is losing money. Business people usually write red numbers below zero and black numbers above zero. Pretty simple, right? "这个月我们穿红色"是什么意思?它的意思是每个人都穿着红衣服吗?不!它意味着生意正在赔钱。商务人士通常用红色写负数,用黑色写正数。非常简单,对吗?

I am moving up ④ the ladder /'lædə/ may be difficult to understand ⑤. It means a person gets a better job or a better position /pə'zɪʃn/ at work. If someone tells you he or she is moving up the ladder, you should congratulate ⑥ /kən'grætʃʊleɪt/ this person. "我正在爬上梯子"可能很难理解。它的意思是一个人得到一份更好的工作或在工作中得到了更好的职位。如果有人告诉你他或她正在爬上梯子,你应该祝贺这个人。

How about I have to beef up my report? We know that beef is meat from cows. If you "beef something up", you make it big and strong—like a cow! This sentence means "I have to make my report stronger". 关于"我不得不补充我的报告"如何理解呢?我们知道牛肉是来自牛身上的肉。如果你"补充某物",你就使它大且强壮——就像一头牛!这句话的意思是"我不得不使我的报告更充分"。

There are many more interesting business terms including ⑦ /ɪn'klu:dɪŋ/: He's a fat cat (He's a rich person); and They cook the books (They steal money by making changes to the company's accounts /ə'kaʊnts/). 还有更多有趣的商务用语,其中包括:他是一只肥猫(他是一位富人);他们炒书(他们通过修改公司的账目来偷钱)。

Have you heard of any other business terms or sayings? 你听说过其他的商务用语或谚语吗?

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and find the meanings of these business terms.

阅读课文并找出这些商务用语的含义。

Buy low, sell high. 低买高卖。_____

We're in the red this month. 这个月我们穿红色。_____

I am moving up the ladder. 我正在爬上梯子。_____

I have to beef up my report. 我不得不补充我的报告。_____

He's a fat cat. 他是一只肥猫。_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

They cook the books. 他们炒书。_____

2 Listen to the passage and write true (T) or false (F).
听短文并写正 (T) 误 (F)。



1. If people learn English, they can have more success in business. 如果人们学英语，他们可能在商业上会有更多的成功。 (　　)
2. Business English is very easy to understand. 商务英语很容易理解。 (　　)
3. "Don't be a yes-man" means "Don't always say 'yes' without thinking". "不要当一个唯唯诺诺的人"意思是"不要总是不思考就赞同"。 (　　)
4. "I've made it" means "I have succeeded in business". "我做到了"意思是"我已经在商业上取得了成功"。 (　　)

3 Fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions.
用正确的介词填空。

1. —Who's the woman _____ red?
那位_____红色衣服的女士是谁?
—Oh, she's my English teacher, May!
噢，她是我的英语老师，梅!
2. My kite is in the tree. I must climb _____ the ladder and get it. 我的风筝在树上。我必须爬_____梯子拿到它。
3. If you work hard _____ your job, you will succeed. 如果你_____工作中刻苦努力，你将会成功。
4. They learn English _____ watching TV programs. 他们_____看电视节目来学习英语。
5. Saying "yes" _____ thinking makes you a yes-man. _____思考就点头会让你成为一个唯唯诺诺的人。
6. I don't understand. Can you explain it to me _____ another way? 我不理解。你可以_____另一种方式向我解释一下它吗?

4 Search the Internet and find more examples of business language. There are also many business terms and sayings in Chinese. Can you make a list of them?
在网上搜索并找到更多商务语言的例子。中文也有许多商务用语和谚语。你能把它们列出来吗?

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点批注

·考点应用

★Do you know that business English can be different from everyday English? 其反义短语为：the same as 和……一样。

① be different from 与……不同

e.g. The weather here is different from that in Jinan.
这儿的天气不同于济南。

与 everyday 相关的短语：
everyday English 日常英语
everyday life 日常生活

② everyday/'evrɪdeɪ/ *adj.* 每天的；日常的

融黑板 易混点，注意区分!

[易错点] 辨析: everyday 和 every day

everyday 日常的；每天的；形容词，后面可以直接跟名词，只作定语。	The everyday English should be learnt by heart. 应熟记日常英语。
every day 每天；天天；副词词组，作状语，通常位于句首或句末，用来修饰整个句子。	I go to school every day. 我每天上学。

一语辨异：I read everyday English every day. 我每天读日常英语。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★You might not always know what they mean.

③ **mean** /miːn/ *v.* 意思是

mean 还可表示“打算；意欲；意味着”

mean 作动词，意为“意思是”，不用于进行时，后面可以跟名词或 that 引导的宾语从句 (that 可省略)。

mean to do sth. 打算做某事

mean doing sth. 意味着做某事

e.g. What does the phrase mean? 这个短语是什么意思?

I mean to go with you. 我打算和你一起去。

This new rule will mean working overtime. 这一新规定意味着加班。

考题在线 —What's the _____ of the word "sorrow"?

—It _____ "sadness".

A. meaning; meaning　　B. means; meaning

C. mean; mean　　D. meaning; means

点拨：句意：——单词“sorrow”的意思是什么？——它的意思是“悲伤”。What's the meaning of…?……的意思是什么？It 为第三人称单数，故谓语动词用单三形式。

★I am moving up the ladder may be difficult to understand.

④ **move up 升级；提升；上升**

move up 是动副型短语，若宾语为代词，必须放在 move 和 up 之间。

e.g. This picture is too low. Please move it up.

这张图画（位置）太低了。请把它往上移。

His boss will move him up soon. 他的老板很快就会提拔他

⑤ **be+*adj.*+to do**

此句型可转换成“It +be 动词 +*adj.*+to do sth.”。

此句为“主语 +be 动词 +*adj.*+to do”结构。常用于此句型的形容词有 nice, easy, difficult, expensive, unpleasant 等。本句也可改写为 It may be difficult to understand I am moving up the ladder.

e.g. The question is easy to answer.=It is easy to answer the question.

回答这个问题很容易。

★...you should congratulate this person.

congratulate sb. 祝贺某人

congratulate sb. on sth. 因某事而祝贺某人

⑥ **congratulate** /kənˈgrætʃʊleɪt/ *v.* 祝贺

congratulate 的宾语必须是“受到祝贺的人”，而不能是“所祝贺的事”。

e.g. Let's congratulate your teacher. 让我们祝贺你的老师吧。

We congratulated him on his success. 我们祝贺他取得了成功。

★There are many more interesting business terms including:...

由它所构成的介词短语可以放在句末、句中，有时也可以置于句首。

⑦ **including** /ɪnˈkluːdɪŋ/ *prep.* 包括

e.g. There are about fifty people in the classroom, including two teachers. 教室里大约有 50 个人，包括两位老师。

including—include *v.* 包括；包含

include 指在一个整体中包括了其中一部分内容或项目等。

e.g. Your duties include putting the children to bed.

你的责任包括安顿孩子们上床睡觉。

考题在线答案 D

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见290页)

一、从方框中选择适当的单词填空

everyday	including	mean	ladder	congratulate

1. I _____ that's his own decision to resign or not.
2. English is important in our _____ life.
3. We should _____ her on her success.
4. Some inventions that led to the colorful movies are on show, _____ cameras.
5. Children can't climb up the _____.

二、根据汉语意思完成句子

6. 高中和初中的教学方式是不同的。
   The ways of teaching in senior school are _____ _____ those in junior school.[遂宁]
7. 日常英语很重要。
   _____ _____ is very important.
8. 莉莉明年要晋升了。
   Lily is _____ _____ next year.
9. 我祝贺你的伟大发现。
   I _____ you _____ your great discovery.
10. 它的意思是一个人找到了一份更好的工作。
    It _____ a person gets ____ ____ job.

Lesson 28 Ms. Liu's Great Idea

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Do you know any mottos about honesty? 你知道一些关于诚实的格言吗?
- Would it be difficult to open a shop without a salesperson? Why or why not?
  开商店没有售货员难吗? 为什么难或为什么不难?

课文朗读

One day, Ms. Liu received an e-mail from Rose, her English friend. Rose just took a weekend trip with her husband /'hʌzbənd/ to the countryside. She said they had a wonderful shopping experience. 有一天，刘老师收到来自她的英国朋友罗丝的一封电子邮件。罗丝和她的丈夫周末刚刚去了乡村旅游。她说他们有了一次美好的购物体验。

...

Along a small road, we saw a sign on a gate /geɪt/: "Fresh Eggs for Sale". We parked the car and walked into the shop. No one was around. Then I saw another sign: "Help Yourself!" On the table, there was a note: "Please take eggs from the baskets and leave ① your money in the box. We appreciate ② /ə'pri:ʃɪeɪt/ your honesty /'ɒnɪstɪ/!" We were surprised to ③ find that the farmer was so trusting /'trʌstɪŋ/. I took my eggs and put some money in the box. On our way home, I wondered if everyone would be honest /'ɒnɪst/ ④. 沿着一条小路，我们在一扇大门上看到一张标志牌："出售新鲜鸡蛋"。我们停下车并走进这家商店。周围没有一个人。然后我看到另外一张标志牌："请自便！"在桌子上有一张便条："请从篮子中取走鸡蛋，(然后)把你的钱放在盒子里。我们感谢您的诚实！"我们很吃惊地发现这位农民居然如此相信别人。我拿出自己要的鸡蛋并往盒子里放了一些钱。在我们回家的路上，我在想是不是每个人都会诚实。

...

When Ms. Liu read this story, she smiled. She

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

had an idea. She would help her students open this kind of shop at her school. Students could take things from the shop and leave money in a box. The shop would raise money for school activities.

当刘老师读这个故事的时候，她笑了起来。她有了一个主意。她将帮助她的学生们在学校开设这样的商店。学生们可以从商店里拿走东西并把钱放在盒子里。商店可以为学校活动筹集资金。

It was a great idea! Ms. Liu believed that most people want to be honest. This shop would be a good way for students to learn the value⑤ /'vælju:/ of honesty. The perfect motto /'mɒtəʊ/ for this shop would be, "Take what you need. Give what you can. We trust⑥ /trʌst/ you!"

这是一个很棒的主意！刘老师相信大多数人都想成为一个诚实的人。这个商店将会是学生们了解诚实价值的一种好方式。这个商店的完美格言将会是："带走你所需要的，留下你所能给予的。我们相信你！"

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and fill in the blanks. 阅读课文并填空。

Rose is Ms. Liu's English friend. She went on a trip to the _____ on the weekend with her _____. She bought some eggs in a special shop. There was _____ in the shop. She just followed the signs and _____ herself. She took the eggs and put the money in a box. She was _____ that the farmer trusted others. Ms. Liu learned from her story. She decided to help her students _____ a shop like this. Then they could _____ money for school activities. Ms. Liu believes that most people want to be _____ and that students should know the _____ of honesty. 罗丝是刘老师的英国朋友。她和她的_____在周末到_____去旅行了。她在一家特殊的商店里买了一些鸡蛋。这家商店里有_____。她只是遵循标志牌并自己_____。她拿了一些鸡蛋并在一个盒子中放了一些钱。她很_____这位农民（如此）相信别人。刘老师从她的故事中学到了（很多东西）。她决定帮助她的学生们_____一个这样的商店。那么他们可以为学校活动_____资金。刘老师相信大多数人想要_____，并且学生们应该了解诚实的_____。

2 Fill in the blanks with the words in the box. 用方框内的单词填空。

gate 大门　honest 诚实的　trust 信任　value 价值　believe 相信

1. George says that he has tried to be an _____ man all his life.
   乔治说他一生都在努力做一个_____人。
2. She says that she will wait for me at the _____. 她说她会在_____等我。
3. They think that no one knows the _____of this book. 他们认为没有人知道这本书的_____。
4. You should _____ that your dream will come true someday.
   你应该_____你的梦想有一天会实现。
5. We know that we can _____ Xiao Zhang because he is a good guy.
   我们知道我们可以_____小张，因为他是一个好人。

3 Match the sentences. 把句子连线。

1. I received a letter from Peter. It said 我收到一封来自彼得的信。上面写道	that they can finish it on time. 他们可以按时完成它。
2. We are lost. Do you know 我们迷路了。你知道	that she is a new student here. 她是这儿的一位新学生。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3. Jim failed this time, but we believe
这次吉姆失败了，但是我们相信
how we can get to the Shanghai Hotel?
我们如何到达上海旅馆?

4. I haven't seen that girl before. I think
我以前从未见过那个女孩。我认为
that he will try his best to do better next time.
下次他会尽最大的努力做得更好。

5. It's a difficult job. But everyone believes
这是一项艰难的工作。但是每个人相信
that he would come to visit me the next week.
他下周会来拜访我。

4 Work in groups. Take turns telling a story about honesty.
小组练习。轮流讲述关于诚实的故事。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点批注　·考点应用

★Please take eggs from the baskets and leave your money in the box.

辨析：leave 与 forget
①"leave＋宾语＋地点状语"表示"把……落在……"。
②forget"忘记"，指忘记具体的东西，通常不能与表示地点的单词或短语连用。

① **[高频] leave** /li:v/ *v.* 忘了带；丢下

e.g. When he got home, he found that he had left his English book at school. 当他到家的时候，他发现他把英语书忘在学校里了。

Oh, I've left my cellphone in my office.
噢，我把我的手机忘在我的办公室里了。

Don't forget the tickets and an umbrella. 别忘了票和雨伞。

考题在线 1 —I can't find my English textbook.
—Is it possible that you _____ it at home? **[武威]**
A. lost　B. saw　C. left　D. gave

点拨：词语辨析法。句意：——我找不到我的英语书了。——有可能你把它忘在家了吗？把某物忘在某地，用 leave，过去式 left。其他选项 lose，lost 丢失，see，saw 看见，give，gave 给，都不符合句意。

★We appreciate your honesty!

appreciate 后可接名词、代词、动词的-ing 形式等作宾语，但不能接不定式作宾语。

② **appreciate** /ə'pri:ʃieɪt/ *v.* (to be grateful for sth. that sb. has done; to welcome sth.) **感激；感谢**

e.g. He appreciated their confidence. 他感激他们的信任。

We shall appreciate hearing from you again.
如再次收到你的来信，我们将十分感激。

要表示程度，可用 deeply，highly，(very) much 等副词修饰。

[易错点]appreciate 后一般接"事"作宾语，不接"人"作宾语，这与 thank 的用法恰恰相反。

e.g. I appreciate your kindness. 我感谢你的好意。

He highly appreciated their help. 他非常感谢他们的帮助。

★We were surprised to find that the farmer was so trusting.

③ **[高频] be surprised to...** 惊讶于……/ 对……感到惊讶

e.g. I'm surprised to see you here. 在这儿看到你我感觉很意外。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

I'm surprised at your appearance. 对于你的出现，我感到惊讶。

I'm surprised at seeing you here. 在这儿看到你，我感到很惊讶。

考题在线 2 She was very _____ (surprise) at the answer.

be surprised to do sth. 惊讶于做某事 / 对做某事感到惊讶

be surprised at (doing) sth. 惊讶于（做）某事 / 对（做）某事感到惊讶

to one's surprise 令某人惊讶的是

★ On our way home, I wondered if everyone would be honest.

④ [高频] **honest** /'ɒnɪst/ *adj.* 坦白的；诚实的

honest 是以元音音素开头的单词，当表示“一个诚实的……”时，前面要用不定冠词 an。

e.g. His father is an honest businessman. 他父亲是个诚实的商人。

honest 是形容词，在句中可作定语或表语，其前可用 quite, perfectly, very 等副词修饰。

dishonest adj. 不诚实的

honesty n. 诚实

honestly adv. 诚实地；正当地

考题在线 3 —Do you watch *Peppa Pig* on TV? It's so funny!

— Well, no, to be _____, I think it's quite silly. [无锡]

A. curious B. brave C. gentle D. honest

点拨：固定搭配法。句意：——你在电视上看《小猪佩奇》吗？那太有趣了！——噢，没有，说实话，我觉得那很愚蠢。curious 好奇的；brave 勇敢的；gentle 绅士的，文雅的；honest 诚实的。此处用到固定搭配 to be honest 表示“说实话”。

核心素养之文化意识

培养“诚实守信”素养

◆诚实守信是我们中华民族的优良传统 (tradition)，人们都喜欢和诚实的人交往共事。诚实的人会逐渐形成宽容博大的胸怀。国外也同样重视孩子的诚实教育。美国从幼儿园和小学起就重视对孩子的诚信教育。在德国，家长们普遍遵守这样一个原则 (principle)：教育孩子诚实守信，家长必须首先做好榜样。

【素养行动】请反思一下自己在现实生活中是否欺骗过他人，有则改之，无则加勉。只要我们真诚待人，就能赢得良好的声誉，获得他人信任 (trust)。

【素养行动结果】认识诚实的重要性，养成以诚待人的好习惯。

★ This shop would be a good way for students to learn the value of honesty.

敲黑板 本课重点，牢记！

⑤ **value** /'vælju:/ *n.* 价值

e.g. This book is of great value to me in my studies.= This book is very valuable to me in my studies. 这本书对我的学习有很大的价值。

This letter is of no value to her.=This letter is not valuable to her. 这封信对她没有价值。

value 作动词，意为“重视；珍惜”。

The Chinese highly value the family ties. 中国人高度重视家族关系。

value–valuable

在下列短语中常可转换：be of value =be valuable（是）有价值的，be of no value = be not valuable（是）没有价值的。

考题在线 4 Sometimes we can even make friends and get _____ (value) experiences by helping others. [哈尔滨]

考题在线 5 —Let's do something for our dad.

—Good idea. We should always _____ father's love for us. [宜昌]

A. explain B. suppose C. wonder D. value

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨：采用词语辨析法。句意：——我们为我们的爸爸做点事情吧。——好主意。我们应该永远珍视爸爸对我们的爱。explain 解释；suppose 认为；wonder 想知道；value 珍视，重视。

方法真题练

We trust you!



⑥ **trust** /trʌst/ *v.* 相信；信任

辨析 trust 和 believe

trust 信任；相信。多指相信某人，语气较重，表示深信不疑。	trust sb. 相当于 believe in sb.，意为“信任某人”。
believe 相信；认为。多指相信某人所说的话。	believe sb./what sb. said 强调的是相信事情的真实性，或者强调某人说的话的真实性。

e.g. I trust him completely. 我完全信任他。

Don't believe that man easily; he is so strange.

不要轻易相信那个人所说的话，他是如此奇怪。

考题在线答案 1. C 2. surprised 3. D 4. valuable 5. D

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见290页）

一、根据句意及首字母提示完成单词

1. Let's meet at the school g_____.

2. Do you know the v_____ of that book?

3. Don't l_____ your camera in the car.

4. In Western countries, dogs are usually considered h_____ and good friends of humans. [宁波改编]

5. Don't t_____ him. He always tells lies.

二、单项选择

6. Could you tell me the way _____ the zoo? [湘西]

A. on B. to C. in

7. My grandpa knows the history and medical _____ of many plants. [扬州]

A. wealth B. price C. value D. cost

8. They were surprised _____ that the singer was just a college student.

A. know B. to know C. known D. knew

9. —I'll always stand by you when you are in need.

—It's nice of you. Your support is really ____. [武汉]

A. appreciated B. thanked

C. helped D. depended

10. —I'm sorry, Mr Hu. I _____ my English exercise book at home.

—It doesn't matter. Please remember _____ it here this afternoon. [黄冈]

A. forgot; to bring B. left; to take

C. forgot; to take D. left; to bring

三、连词成句

11. don't, the, park, car, here

_____.

12. your, appreciate, trust, I

_____.

13. should, everyone, honest, be

_____.

14. left, my, at , pen, I, home, yesterday

_____.

15. learn, value, we, of, should, the, honesty

_____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 29 How to Push a Product

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文 • 导读

Pre-reading（读前）

• What is important for pushing a product?
对于推销产品而言，什么是重要的?

• If you had your own product to sell, how would you push it?
如果你有自己的产品要销售，你会如何推销它呢?

课文朗读

While-reading（读中）

• How many suggestions are mentioned in this passage?
多少条建议在这篇文章中提到了?

• What will get you more customers? 什么会让你有更多的顾客?

❶ After a lot of hard work, you finally have your product. But that's only half the battle /'bætl/. Now you have to get people to buy it.
经过大量的努力工作，你终于拥有了你的产品。但那只是成功的一半。现在你必须让人们来买它。

❷ Is your product easy to use? How can your product improve people's lives? Why should people buy YOUR product? Remember, you need to make your product stand out ①. So tell people what is special about it. How can you do that? Here are a few suggestions. 文章主题句
你的产品容易使用吗? 你的产品会如何改善人们的生活? 为什么人们应该买你的产品? 记住，你需要让你的产品脱颖而出。所以要告诉人们它的特别之处是什么。你如何才能做到那样呢? 这里有一些建议。

❸ Create ② /kri:'eɪt/ an ad /æd/. First, study your customers' /'kʌstəməz/ ages, interests and other information. Second, choose a type of ad—TV, bus, magazine, newspaper or Internet. Third, decide what your ad will tell people about your product. Find ways to catch their eye ③. 创作一则广告。
首先，研究你的顾客的年龄、兴趣爱好和其他的信息。第二，选择一种广告——电视广告、公共汽车广告、杂志广告、报纸广告或网络广告。第三，决定你的广告想要告诉人们关于你的产品的什么信息。找出吸引他们目光的方法。

❹ Go to trade shows and present your product. People coming to trade shows already ④ /ɔ:l'redɪ/ have an interest in ⑤ similar ⑥ /'sɪmɪlə/ products. They can experience your product, enjoy it and even come to love it.
去商品交易会展示你的产品。来商品交易会的人们已经对类似的产品有了兴趣。他

导读批注

批 体裁：
议论文

批 文章结构：
总—分—总

批 句子：
（左侧画"﹏"处）
逐渐地向本课时话题靠拢。

批 句子：
（左侧画"﹏"处）
用疑问句作为段落开头，引起读者注意，为引出话题作好铺垫。

批 词语赏析：
（左侧画"﹏"处）
在文中恰当地使用表示顺序的词，显得条理性强，思路清晰。

批 主题句：
第3、4、5段中每段的第一句均为该段的主题句，起到总结概括的作用。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

批 词语赏析：

（右侧画"～"处）

get to know 准确地表达了一种渐变的过程：即从不认识到逐渐了解。

们能体验你的产品，享受它甚至渐渐喜欢上它。

⑤ Push your product using samples and good deals. People get to know the advantages of your product after they experience using it. Offering ⑦ /ˈɒfərɪŋ/ samples /ˈsæmplz/ and deals will get you more customers.

用样品和便宜的价格来推销你的产品。人们用过你的产品之后才会渐渐知道它的优点。提供样品和便宜的价格会让你有更多的顾客。

⑥ These suggestions can make your product really shine ⑧ /ʃaɪn/. However, good quality /ˈkwɒlɪtɪ/ is the most important thing. With a good quality product and excellent advertising, you will surely /ˈʃʊəlɪ/ succeed ⑨ /səkˈsiːd/.

这些建议可以使你的产品真正地闪闪发光。然而，好质量才是最重要的。既有好质量的产品又有杰出的广告，你就一定会成功。

批 词语赏析：

（右侧画"～"处）

运用 however 一词，不但起到了转折的作用，而且也自然地过渡到另一个话题。既不显得突兀，也运用得很得体。

May I help you? 我可以帮你吗?

What would you like to buy? 你想要买什么?

Learning Tip 学习提示

If you "push" a product, what are you doing? Well, if it's a push-pin, you may be really pushing it. But if you're "pushing" a product, you are trying to sell it.

如果你"推销"一种产品，你会做什么？嗯，如果它是一个图钉，你也许是真的在摁它。但如果你在"推销"一种产品，你就是在尽力卖掉它。

There is a push-pin holding up this piece of paper.

有一个图钉固定着这张纸。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔（见173页）

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and write true (T) or false (F). 阅读课文并写正 (T) 误 (F)。

1. Making your product is just half the battle. 制作你的产品只是成功的一半。 (　　)
2. There are only three ways to push a product. 只有三种方法来推销产品。 (　　)
3. Customers learn the advantages of a product by using it.
   顾客通过使用产品来了解它的优点。 (　　)
4. Only excellent advertising can help you succeed. 只有优秀的广告能帮你成功。 (　　)

2 Write down the topic sentences of paragraph 3, 4 and 5. 写出第三、四和五段的主题句。

	Topic Sentence 主题句
Paragraph 3 第三段	
Paragraph 4 第四段	
Paragraph 5 第五段	

3 Complete the passage with the correct forms of the words or phrases in the box.

用方框内单词或短语的正确形式完成短文。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

customer 顾客	similar 相似的	offer 提供	excellent 优秀的
stand out 出色	catch one's eye 吸引某人的目光		

It's not easy to make your product succeed. Because there are always _____ products on the market, you have to put in more effort. You should choose specific _____, then create a perfect ad to _____. When they buy your product, _____ them good service. Remember, _____ advertising will always make your product _____.

让你的产品成功并不是一件容易的事情。因为市场上总是有_____产品，所以你必须付出更多的努力。你应该选择特定的_____，然后创作一个完美的广告来_____。当他们购买你的产品时，_____他们好的服务。记住，_____广告总会使你的产品_____。

PROJECT 活动设计

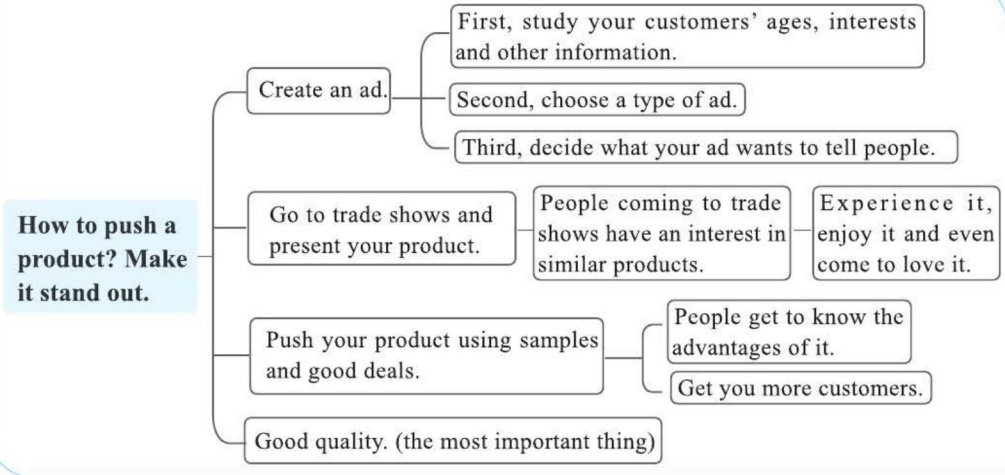
ADS FOR NEW PRODUCTS! 新产品的广告！

A product is something that you sell. In small groups, think of a new product. It can be a funny product or a product that helps people. Think hard and have fun! Create an advertisement for your product. You can get useful information from TV, newspapers or the Internet. Here are some ideas: 产品就是你销售的东西。在小组中，想出一种新的产品。它可以是一种有趣的产品或者是一种帮助人的产品。努力思考并且玩得开心！为你的产品创作一个广告。你可以从电视上、报纸上或互联网上获得有用的信息。这里有一些想法：

- What does your product do? 你的产品有什么功能?
- Who would want to buy it? 谁会想买它?
- What kind of ad would sell your product best? A TV ad? A radio ad? A newspaper ad?
  哪种广告会使你的产品最畅销？电视广告？广播广告？报纸广告?
- How much money would people pay for your product?
  人们愿意花多少钱来买你的产品?

As a group, present your ad to the class. 以小组为单位，把你们的广告展示给全班同学。

课文背诵指南



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

·考点批注

·考点应用

★Remember, you need to make your product stand out.

一语辨异：She is creative. She creates many things and she can also make her own clothes. 她很有创造力。她创造了很多东西，还会做自己的衣服。

① **stand out** 出色；杰出

e.g. Amy stands out among those girls. 艾米在那些女孩当中特别出众。

★Create an ad.

creation—creative
↓ ↓
n. 创造 adj. 创造性的；有创造性的

② **create** /kri:'eɪt/ *v.* 创作；创造

e.g. She is very creative—she writes poetry and paints.
她极富创造力，既赋诗又作画。

考题在线 1 —I can't believe it. Tony has invented a tree-planting machine.
—Really? He is so _____. [温州]
A. shy B. rude C. creative D. friendly

★Find ways to catch their eye.

catch one's eye 是固定短语。其中 eye 用单数，而不能用复数 eyes.

③ **catch one's eye** 吸引某人的目光

e.g. Can you catch that girl's eye? 你能吸引那位女孩的目光吗?

拓展：catch one's eye 的同义短语：draw one's eye/attention

★ People coming to trade shows already have an interest in similar products.

一般位于 be 动词、助动词之后，行为动词之前，也可位于句末加强语气。

辨析：already，yet 与 still
① already"已经"，常用于肯定句中，有时用于疑问句和否定句，表示惊讶。
② yet"已经；还"，用于否定句或者疑问句中，谈论尚未发生可能发生的事。
③ still"仍然；还"，表示某事仍在继续，一般位于句中。

④ **already** /ɔ:l'redɪ/ *adv.* 已经

e.g. I have already finished doing my homework.
我已经做完了我的家庭作业。
I have seen the film already. 我已经看过这部电影了。
The tea is not cold yet. 茶还没有凉。
I still don't understand. 我仍然不明白。

考题在线 2 I have _____ finished my homework. I finished it an hour ago. [南宁]
A. yet B. already C. ever D. never

点拨：句意分析法。句意：我已经完成了我的家庭作业。我是一个小时前完成的。由句意可知用 already。

⑤ **have an interest in** 在……方面有兴趣

[重点] have an interest in 后可接名词、代词或动名词作宾语。

e.g. Why do you have an interest in stamps? 你为什么对邮票有兴趣?
Hou Yifan showed a great interest in chess when she was young.
侯逸凡在小时候就对国际象棋表现出极大的兴趣。

考题在线 3 Do you have an interest in _____ English?
A. learn B. learns C. to learn D. learning

与其含义类似的短语：
take an interest in 对……有兴趣；
show an interest in 对……表现出兴趣；
be interested in 对……感兴趣。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

⑥ **similar** /'sɪmɪlə/ *adj.* (like sb./sth. but not exactly the same) 相像的；相仿的；类似的

e.g. Mary's hat is similar to Jane's.
玛丽的帽子和简的相似。

be similar to...
与……相似

考题在线 4 Cats and tigers belong to the cat family（猫科动物）, so cats _____ tigers in many ways.

A. are similar to　　B. are similar from

C. are different from　　D. are different to

点拨：固定搭配法。be similar to "与……相似" 和 be different from "与……不同" 是固定搭配，故排除 B、D 两项。由句意 "猫和老虎属于猫科动物，因此猫在很多方面与老虎相似。" 可知答案。

★**Offering samples and deals will get you more customers.**

⑦ **offer** /'ɒfə/ *v.* 提供；供给

e.g. I offered a new plan.
我提出一个新计划。

She offered to carry the box for her mother.
她提出帮她母亲搬箱子。

The boss offered us a car.
那位老板提供给我们一辆小汽车。

offer 的用法
offer + n.
offer to do sth.
（主动）提出做某事
offer sb. sth.
提供给某人某物

敲黑板 中考高频考点，牢记！

辨析: offer 与 provide

offer "提供，供给"；表示主动提供服务、工作等，侧重愿意给予。	At the party, he offered me a glass of wine. 在聚会上，他给我一杯酒。
provide "提供，供给"；仅仅出于责任提供，没有主动慷慨之意。	The hotel always provides good service for tourists. 宾馆总是给游客提供优质服务。

offer sb. sth. = offer sth. to sb.

provide sb. with sth. = provide sth. for sb.

考题在线 5 —In the past five years, China has played an important role in the Belt and Road.

—It has _____ many nations a great chance to communicate. [宜昌]

A. offered　　B. supported

C. included　　D. directed

点拨：词语辨析法。句意：——在过去的五年内，中国在一带一路中扮演着重要的角色。——它给很多国家提供一个交流的好机会。offered "提供"；supported "支持"；included "包括"；directed "指示"。

★**These suggestions can make your product really shine.**

⑧ **shine** /ʃaɪn/ *v.* 发光；反射

shine—shone—shone

e.g. The sun was shining after weeks of rain.
下了几个星期的雨后，太阳终于出来了。

关注微信公众号 "教辅资料站" 获取更多学习资料



★**With a good quality product and excellent advertising, you will surely succeed.**

⑨ **[高频] succeed** /səkˈsiːd/ *v.* **成功；做成；继承**

e.g. If you try hard, you will succeed. 如果你努力，你就会成功。

[难点、易错点]succeed 的词形变化 敲黑板 难点，易错点，高频考点，牢记！

词语变形

- succeed 动词，“成功”
  e.g. Did you succeed in the exam? 你考试及格了吗?
- success 名词，“成功”“成功的人”
  e.g. Failure is the mother of success. 失败是成功之母。
- successful 形容词，“成功的”“有成就的”
  e.g. The performance was successful. 演出很成功。
- unsuccessful 形容词，“不成功的；失败的”
  e.g. He was unsuccessful in his attempt to climb Mt Everest. 他登珠穆朗玛峰的尝试失败了。

考题在线 6 The road to _____ (succeed) is to work honestly. [兰州]

考题在线答案 1. C 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. A 6. success

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见290页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. The sun _____ (发光) brightly in a cloudless sky.
2. How can I _____ (创作) an ad?
3. New technology _____ (提供) us more chances to know about the society. [鄂州]
4. We are sure that the first National Youth Games will be _____ (成功的). [福州]
5. We have _____ (相似的) hobbies and interests. [宁夏]

二、用方框内所给单词或短语的适当形式填空

pass	stand out	be similar to
have an interest in	catch one's eye	

6. My hobby _____ hers.
7. At last, we all succeeded in _____ the exams.
8. He _____ in the team for his height.
9. Xi La, a singer from Malaysia, _____ when she was first on the stage. I like her.
10. Why do you _____ learning English?

三、单项选择

11. —Jack _____ to help at the underground station on Saturdays.
    —Cool! Let's join him next Saturday. [深圳]
    A. offers B. refuses C. forgets
12. —It's important for us to know _____ all the subjects.
    —Yeah, group work is my favorite. [河北]
    A. how to study B. when to study
    C. which to study D. what to study
13. The government plans to _____ more jobs for young people.
    A. create B. do
    C. offer D. become
14. —Can you tell the differences between these two pictures?
    —Differences? Oh, no. They look quite _____. [金华]
    A. different B. similar
    C. strange D. interesting
15. —How difficult the road to _____ is!
    —So it is! You need lots of hard work to _____.
    A. success; succeed B. success; success
    C. succeed; succeed D. succeed; success

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 30 A Cookie Sale

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What event or activity from this school term is most memorable to you?
  这个学期，什么事情或活动对你来说是最难忘的?
- What did you do before helping someone? 在帮助某人之前你做什么?

课文朗读

Dear Li Ming, 亲爱的李明：

How are you doing? Things are OK here, but school life is very busy!

你好吗? 这里一切顺利，但是学校生活非常繁忙!

Recently Jenny, Danny and I raised some money for our school basketball team. I baked cookies and sold them all! I'm happy that so many people liked my cookies. Jenny did a good job, too. She made a poster for our cookie sale. Everyone knew about it. I sold out of① my cookies in less than② an hour! Can you believe it?!

最近詹妮、丹尼和我为我们学校的篮球队筹集了一些资金。我烤了曲奇饼并把它们都卖光了! 我很高兴那么多人都喜欢我的曲奇饼。詹妮也做得很棒。她为我们的曲奇饼销售做了一张海报。每个人都知道了这件事情。我不到一小时就卖光了我的曲奇饼! 你能相信这件事情吗?!

Danny is always crazy③ /'kreɪzɪ/! He invented a new product—the Danny Desk-Cycle. Everyone thinks it's too dangerous to④ do homework on a bicycle, so nobody⑤ bought it. He really needs to improve his invention! 丹尼总是很疯狂! 他发明了一种新产品——丹尼牌自行车桌。每个人都认为在自行车上做家庭作业太危险了，因此没有人买它。他确实需要改进他的发明!

Brian 布赖恩

Dear Brian, 亲爱的布赖恩：

Good for you! 你真行!

Selling cookies is a great idea to help others! Every year our school sends books to another school in a village. One day, Ms. Liu had a great idea. She wanted to help us open a shop to raise money for school activities. Maybe we can sell cookies in the store. We can make them ourselves and use the money to buy more books. 卖曲奇饼是一个帮助他人的好主意! 每年我们学校都会给一个村庄里的另一所学校邮寄书籍。有一天，刘老师有了一个好主意。她想帮助我们开一家商店来为学校活动筹集资金。也许我们可以在商店里卖曲奇饼。我们可以自己做曲奇饼并用这笔钱来买更多的书籍。

I'll talk with Ms. Liu and some of my classmates. I think that they will support the idea. Are we good bakers /'beɪkəz/? I'm not sure, but we know we must work hard! 我会和刘老师以及我的一些同班同学谈一谈。我认为他们会支持这个想法的。我们是好的面包师吗? 我不确定，但我们知道我们必须努力工作!

Li Ming 李明

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 **What did Jenny, Danny and Brian do to raise money? Read the first e-mail and retell the story. You can use the information below to help you.** 为了筹集资金，詹妮、丹尼和布赖恩做了什么? 阅读第一封电子邮件并复述这个故事。你可以用以下信息来帮助你。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Raise 筹集 money 资金
- Jenny→make a poster 詹妮→做一张海报
- Danny→sell the Danny Desk-Cycle→too dangerous 丹尼→卖丹尼牌自行车桌→太危险了
- Brian→sell cookies→ sell out 布赖恩→卖曲奇饼→卖光

2 Read the second e-mail and answer the questions. 阅读第二封电子邮件并回答问题。

1. How does Li Ming's school help another school in a village every year?
   每年，李明的学校是如何帮助一个村庄里的另一所学校的?
2. How can they make money this year?
   今年他们会如何挣钱?
3. Do you think Li Ming's classmates will support the idea? Why or why not?
   你认为李明的同班同学们会支持这个想法吗？为什么会或为什么不会?

3 The words or phrases in italics are from this lesson. Tick the correct answers to make the sentences meaningful. 斜体的单词或短语出自本课。给正确答案打钩，使句子有意义。

1. Thomas Edison was the _____ to make the electric bulb. It was his *invention*.
   托马斯·爱迪生是_____发明电灯泡的人。电灯泡是他的发明。
   ☐ first 第一个　　☐ second 第二个
2. You speak _____ English than before. You really *improved* a lot.
   你英语讲得比以前_____。你确实提高了很多。
   ☐ poorer 更差　　☐ better 更好
3. If a person or a thing _____ you, it is *dangerous*.
   如果一个人或一件东西_____了你，那是危险的。
   ☐ hurts 伤害　　☐ touches 触摸
4. The students think Ms. Liu's idea is _____, so they all *support* her.
   学生们认为刘老师的想法是_____，所以他们都支持她。
   ☐ boring 无聊的　　☐ great 极好的
5. Brian *sold out of* his cookies, so he _____. 布赖恩卖光了他的曲奇饼，所以他_____。
   ☐ doesn't have any cookies now 现在没有曲奇饼了
   ☐ still has some cookies now 现在还有一些曲奇饼

4 Work in groups. What can you do to help students in another school? Talk about it with your group members. 小组练习。你能做些什么来帮助另一所学校的学生呢？同你的小组成员谈谈。

Task tips: 任务提示：

You can use the following expressions: I think..., I guess ..., I hope ...

你可以用以下表达方式：我认为……，我猜想……，我希望……

For example, you can donate books to them or volunteer to be a teacher there.

例如，你可以为他们捐书或自愿成为那里的一位老师。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★ I sold out of my cookies in less than an hour!

① **sell out of 售完；卖光** 后面跟表示商品的名词、代词作宾语。

e.g. The couple sold out of their grapes soon.

那对夫妇很快卖完了他们的葡萄。

② **less than 少于** （指数量）不到；不足

e.g. In less than an hour he finished the work. 不到一个小时他就完成了工作。

Two is less than three. 二比三小。比……（小）少

He is less honest than his elder brother. 他不如他哥哥诚实。less...than... 不如……

[**难点**] not less than 和 no less than 敲黑板 难点，理解！

not less than + 基数词，表示“不少于；至少；不止”，无强调多少之意。	There are not less than 40 students in this class. 这个班至少有 40 名学生。
no less than + 基数词，表示“达……之多”，强调数量之多，带有感情色彩。	No less than 1, 000 people were missing in the earthquake. 地震中失踪的人数达一千人之多。

★ Danny is always crazy!

③ **crazy** /'kreɪzɪ/ *adj.* **疯狂的；荒唐的**

e.g. It's crazy of you to buy a second-hand car at such a high price.

你真是疯了，以那么高的价格买一辆二手车。

be crazy about sth. 对某物着迷

It's crazy of sb. to do sth. 某人做某事真是愚蠢/疯了。

★ Everyone thinks it's too dangerous to do homework on a bicycle, so nobody bought it.

④ **too…to… 意为“太……而不能……”** 敲黑板 高频考点，牢记！

too 后接形容词或副词，to 后接动词原形。

e.g. We went to the station too late to catch the train.

我们去车站太晚了，没能赶上那趟火车。

考题在线 1 His grandpa is _____ old _____ do any housework.

A. too; to B. so; that C. as; as D. not; until

⑤ **nobody 作不定代词，意为“没有人”** nobody 只能指人而不能指物，相当于 no one。nobody 作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。

e.g. I knocked at the door, but nobody was in. 我敲门了，但是没有人在。

[**注意**] no one/nobody 常用来回答疑问词 who 提出的问句，使用时不与 of 短语连用。

e.g. —Who has been there? 谁去过那里?

—No one/Nobody. 没有人。

Everybody is here now. 现在每个人都在这里了。

Somebody is waiting for you at the gate. 有人在门口等你。

I didn't meet anybody new at the party. 在那次聚会上我没有碰到任何新人。

辨析：everybody, somebody, anybody 与 nobody

① everybody 每个人，相当于 everyone。

② somebody 某个人，相当于 someone，不确定指哪个人。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

③ anybody 任何人，相当于 anyone，常用于否定句或疑问句中。

④ nobody 没有人，相当于 no one，表示否定。

Nobody mentioned anything to me about it. 没有人跟我提过这件事。

考题在线 2 —I'm worried about tomorrow's talent show.

—Be confident! If you don't believe in yourself, _____ will.

[随州]

A. nobody B. anybody C. everybody D. somebody

考题在线答案 1. A 2. A

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见291页)

一、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

1. Brian _____ (sell) out of his cookies last week.
2. I finished my homework in _____ (little) than an hour last night.
3. The village thought we had gone _____ (crazy).
4. The box is too heavy for the little boy _____ (carry).
5. There was _____ (nobody) in the office.

二、连词成句

6. too, to, young, to, my, go, brother, is, school

_____.

7. happy, people, I, was, my, that, liked, cookies

_____.

8. homework, than, hour, I, less, finished, in, the, yesterday, an

_____.

9. selling, to, great, help, cookies, is, a, others, idea

_____.

10. is, he, crazy, skiing, about

_____.

Unit Review

I. 课文原文、译文

Building Your Vocabulary 构建你的词汇库

Ⅰ. Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words. The first letter is given.

用单词的正确形式填空。首字母已给出。

1. —Is this product expensive?

这个产品贵吗?

—No, it's very c_____.

不，它非常_____。

2. Doing the housework is an e_____ task for my mum.

对我妈妈来说，做家务是一项_____任务。

3. It is a sunny morning, and the sun is s_____. 这是一个晴朗的早晨，太阳是_____。

4. Good friends should t_____ each other.

好朋友应该互相_____。

5. Mike came in with his hands in his p_____. 迈克两手插_____进来了。

Ⅱ. Complete the passage with the correct words. 用恰当的单词完成短文。

Zhang Wei loves music. He always dreamed of having a guitar. But his family is poor. He always told himself that it was only a dream. Then one day, it was his fourteenth

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

birthday. His father _____ him a special present. It was in a big box. When Zhang Wei _____ the box, he saw a guitar in it. He was very excited. He thanked his father. Do you know how much his father _____ for the guitar? It _____ him over 1 500 *yuan*!

张伟喜欢音乐。他一直梦想着拥有一把吉他。但是他的家庭贫困。他总是告诉自己那只是一个梦。然后有一天，是他的十四岁生日。他的父亲_____他一份特殊的礼物。礼物在一个大箱子里。当张伟_____这个箱子时，他看到一把吉他在里面。他非常激动。他感谢了他的父亲。你知道他父亲_____多少钱买了这把吉他吗？它_____他一千五百多元钱！

Grammar in Use 语法运用

Rewrite the sentences using "Simon says that..." 用"西蒙说……"重写下列句子。

1. Will Danny improve his invention?
   丹尼会改进他的发明吗？
   Simon says that Danny will improve his invention. 西蒙说丹尼将会改进他的发明。
2. Will your product succeed?
   你的产品会成功吗？
   Simon says that 西蒙说 _____.
3. Does he work hard in school?
   他在学校学习努力吗？
   Simon says that 西蒙说 _____.
4. Is the girl going to buy Brian's cookies?
   这个女孩打算买布赖恩的曲奇饼吗？
   Simon says that 西蒙说 _____.
5. Does Jenny have any ideas?
   詹妮有一些想法吗？
   Simon says that 西蒙说 _____.

Listening and Speaking 听说训练

Ⅰ. Listen to the passage and answer the questions.
听文章并回答问题。



1. What does the Bright Eyes Store sell?
   这家明亮眼镜店出售什么？
2. What is on sale now? 现在什么东西在促销？
3. When does the store close on Tuesdays?
   这家商店在星期二什么时候关门？
4. How long is the store open on weekends?
   这家商店在周末营业多长时间？
5. What's special on Sundays?
   在周日有什么特殊的？

Ⅱ. Complete the following dialogue. Then act it out. 完成下列对话。然后把它表演出来。

A: Can I help you? 我可以帮您吗？

B: Yes. I'd like to buy a blackboard. Can you show me one? 是的。我想买一块黑板。你可以帮我拿一块看一下吗？

A: Sure. 当然可以。_____

B: It looks nice, but it's too big. 这块看起来不错，但它太大了。_____

A: Sorry, the smaller ones are sold out. Look at this whiteboard. 对不起，小一点的黑板都卖完了。看一看这块白板吧。

B: Oh, it's just right. 哦，它正好。_____

A: $50. 五十美元。

B: $50? 五十美元？_____

A: Well, I'm afraid it's the cheapest one.
嗯，我恐怕它是最便宜的一块了。

B: OK. I'll take it. 好的。我就买它了。

A: Thank you. 谢谢你。

Putting It All Together 综合运用

Ⅰ. Complete the passage by choosing the best answers from below.
从下面选出最佳答案来完成文章。

Wendy Wang and Her Company
王温迪和她的公司

Have you heard of the 15-year-old girl who set up a company of her own? Wendy Wang is that girl. She started the business two years ago. She has already __1__ several successful computer games. They are so

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

__2__ that over half a million games are sold every year. Now her whole family works in her business, and she is __3__ in school.

你听说过十五岁就创建了一家自己的公司的女孩吗？王温迪就是那位女孩。她两年前开办了这家公司。她已经__1__几个成功的电脑游戏。它们如此__2__以至于每年有五十多万个游戏被卖出。现在她的全家都在她的公司工作，而且她__3__在上学。

She gets up early in the morning and talks with her family about the __4__ over breakfast. Every weekday, she goes to school in her own car with a driver, __5__ she is not old enough to drive. 她早晨起得很早，并且在吃早餐时和她的家人谈论__4__。每个工作日，她都会让司机开她自己的车送她上学，__5__她还不到开车的年龄。

She enjoys school, but some of the work is too easy for her to feel __6__. She usually gets A's in all her __7__, so the other students often ask her for __8__. 她喜欢上学，但是有些功课对她来说太简单了而感觉不到__6__。她通常所有的__7__都会得“A”，所以其他学生经常向她寻求__8__。

She finishes her homework in half an hour after her driver takes her home. After dinner, she goes to her office and __9__ to work on her computer, writing games until 2:00 a. m. Usually she doesn't need as much __10__ as other children.

她在司机送她回家后半小时内完成作业。晚饭后，她去她的办公室并在电脑上__9__工作，一直写游戏到深夜两点。通常她并不需要像其他孩子们一样多的__10__。

( )1. A. worked 工作　B. played 玩耍
C. written 写　D. bought 买

( )2. A. afraid 害怕的
B. popular 流行的
C. expensive 昂贵的
D. surprised 惊讶的

( )3. A. still 仍然　B. hardly 几乎不
C. often 经常　D. sometimes 有时

( )4. A. lessons 课　B. friends 朋友
C. exams 考试　D. business 生意

( )5. A. and 和　B. so 所以
C. because 因为　D. if 如果

( )6. A. interesting 有趣的
B. interested 感兴趣的
C. different 不同的
D. difficult 困难的

( )7. A. games 游戏　B. businesses 生意
C. friends 朋友　D. subjects 科目

( )8. A. money 钱　B. help 帮助
C. grades 年级　D. results 结果

( )9. A. gets 到达　B. finds 发现
C. stops 停止　D. hurries 急忙

( )10. A. food 食物　B. sleep 睡觉
C. fruit 水果　D. pleasure 高兴

II. Play Market Stall and write a short passage about it.

玩集市货摊的游戏并写一篇关于它的短文。

- Divide the class into three large groups.
把全班分成三个大组。
- Two of the groups set up imaginary market stalls. The stalls can sell anything the group members wish. The two stalls will compete for customers. 其中的两个组建立想象中的集市货摊。这些货摊可以卖任何小组成员想卖的东西。这两个货摊将为争夺顾客而竞争。
- The third group will be the customers. The customers take turns visiting the stalls and deciding what to buy and where to buy it.
第三组将当顾客。顾客们轮流拜访各个货摊并决定买什么及在哪里买。
- Write a short passage about it.
写一篇关于它的短文。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Self-Evaluation 自我评价

Find more examples from this unit. Then mark your stars.

从本单元找出更多的例子。然后标出你的星级。

Ⅰ. Raising Money 筹钱

We can sell snacks and other things at lunch hour. 我们可以在午饭时间卖小吃和其他东西。

I can talk about raising money in English.

我能用英语来谈论筹钱。

Ⅱ. Talking about Business 谈论生意

You can buy four for only one dollar.

你可以仅用一美元买四个。

I can talk about selling in English.

我能用英语来谈论卖东西。

Ⅲ. Object Clause 宾语从句

I don't think it would be safe to do my homework on a bicycle. 我认为在自行车上做家庭作业是不安全的。

I can use object clauses properly.

我可以恰当使用宾语从句。

I'll Buy It! 我要买它!

How much does it cost? 它多少钱?

How much does it cost? 它多少钱?

Let's go shopping, At the mall!

咱们去购物，在商场!

Take some money, Buy something small.

带一些钱，买一些小东西。

Many products, To choose from!

许多产品，供我们选择!

Not too expensive? 不太贵?

I'll buy some! 我要买一些!

How much does it cost? 它多少钱?

How much does it cost? 它多少钱?

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

宾语从句

考点1 [重点] 宾语从句分类



宾语从句
- 动词的宾语从句
- 介词的宾语从句
- 形容词的宾语从句

考向：宾语从句在句中作及物动词或介词的宾语，从句放在主句之后，前后不用逗号分开，有些形容词(afraid, sure 等)作表语时也可以接宾语从句。

e.g. I don't think we should waste paper.
我认为我们不应该浪费纸。
I'm pleased with what he said.
我对他所说的感到满意。

考点2 宾语从句的引导词

考向一：that 引导的宾语从句表示陈述意义，且 that 在从句中常可省略。

e.g. I think (that) he'll be back in a moment.
我认为他一会儿就会回来。

考向二：if 和 whether 两者一般可以互换，但是其后直接接 or not 或引导词前有介词时，只能用 whether 不能用 if。

e.g. I wonder whether or not to wear a coat.
我想知道该不该穿外套。
We don't know if/whether he is at home.
我们不知道他是否在家。

考向三：[易错点] 连接代词主要有 who, whom, whose, what 等。

e.g. Can you tell me whom you are waiting for? 你能告诉我你正在等谁吗?

考向四：[易错点] 连接副词主要有 when, where, why, how 等。

e.g. He didn't tell me when we could meet again. 他没有告诉我什么时候我们能再见面。

考题在线1 —I want to know _____ we will have the meeting.
—Maybe in the classroom. [百色]
A. where B. when C. who D. whether

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

速记小筏：

宾语从句引导词

宾语从句三姊妹，that, if/whether, wh-/how 展风采。展风采有三关，引导词、语序、时态在把关。主从时态要一致，陈述语序永不变。陈述请你选 that，疑问需用 if/whether 连。特殊问句作宾从，原来问词不用换。三关过后莫得意，人称、标点需注意。留意变脸的 if/when，从句的简化记心间。

考点3 [高频] 宾语从句应注意的问题

考向一：[重点] 宾语从句的语序应用陈述语序，即：连接词＋主语＋谓语＋其他成分。

e.g. I don't know what they are looking for.
我不知道他们正在找什么。

考题在线 2 —Could you tell me _____ tomorrow?
—It will be sunny. [青岛]
A. what will the weather be like
B. what the weather will be like
C. when will the weather be sunny
D. when the weather will be sunny

点拨：考查宾语从句用法。由答语“明天将会是晴朗的”，可知上文应是询问天气，故可排除选项 C、D；宾语从句应用陈述语序。

考向二：[重点、难点] 宾语从句的时态：

a. 在含有宾语从句的复合句中主句是一般现在时，从句根据实际情况使用任何时态。

e.g. The headmaster hopes everything goes well. 校长希望一切进展顺利。

b. 主句是过去时态，从句要用相应的过去时态。

e.g. He asked who could answer the question.
他问谁能回答这个问题。

c. 当宾语从句表示的是一个客观真理或者事实时，不管主句是什么时态，从句都用一般现在时。

e.g. Yesterday the teacher told us the earth goes around the sun.
昨天老师告诉我们地球围绕太阳转。

考向三：当从句的原句为以下句子以及 what, who 作主语时，语序不变：What's wrong? / What's the matter? / What's happening?

e.g. Can you tell me who is over there?
你能告诉我谁在那里吗？

考题在线 3 —Excuse me. Do you know _____?
—Sorry, I don't know, either. [龙东]
A. when will the examination begin
B. how can I get to the airport
C. what's wrong with the mobile phone

点拨：考查宾语从句的语序。句意：——打扰一下，你知道_____吗？——对不起，我也不知道。宾语从句要用陈述语序。

考向四：[易错点] 当主句的谓语动词是 think, believe 等动词，且主语是第一人称时，宾语从句的否定要放在主句中。

e.g. I don't think he looks like his father.
我认为他长得不像他爸爸。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. B 3. C

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见291页)

听力技巧

速记法（听力理解过程中的信息加工主要依赖于瞬时记忆，为了不让瞬时记忆超载，教学中要注意减少记忆单位，让学生抓住词、句、文之间的联系，增强记忆效果。对于年龄、日期、时间及价格等记忆难度大的内容，可以做一些简单的笔记。）



听力过程

听 Listening and Speaking Ⅰ，选择正确答案。

1. The Bright Eyes Store is the best _____ store in this area.
2. All of our _____ are on sale at a very low price.
3. The store is open from _____ to Friday at 9:00 a.m.
4. It is open from _____ to 6:00 p.m. on weekends.
5. If you come on _____, you will get a free gift.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

交代 what

The passage is about how to push a product.

With a lot of hard work, you have your product. But how can you get people to buy it? You need to make your product stand out. Here are a few suggestions:

提示下文，也是本文主题句

Create an ad.

Go to trade shows and present your product.

Push your product using samples and good deals.

These suggestions can make your product really shine. However, good quality is the most important thing. With a good quality product and excellent advertising, you will surely succeed.

单元话题

在生活中，我们都曾有过独自购物的经历。请你以“Shopping”为题，把记忆最深刻的一次购物经历写下来。

要求：1.100 词左右；

2. 字迹工整，语言流畅，表达准确，逻辑清晰。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

认真阅读写作内容要求，可获得以下写作信息：

(1) 体裁：记叙文；

(2) 人称：第一人称；

(3) 时态：一般过去时；

(4) 提示：根据问题夹叙夹议。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“四要素法”描写购物经历

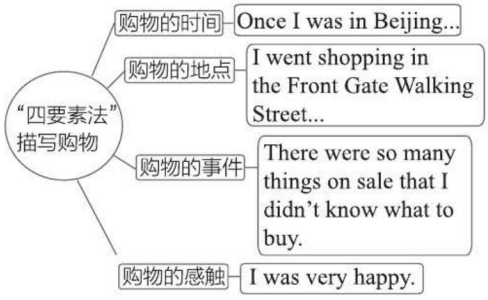
要素一：购物的时间；

要素二：购物的地点；

要素三：购物的事件；

要素四：购物的感触。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	once, souvenir, suddenly, therefore, refuse, successfully
短语	on sale, decide to do sth., bargain with sb. about the price, at first, at last, be going to do sth.
句子	It was the first time that…

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Shopping

Once I was in Beijing, I went shopping in the Front Gate Walking Street, for I wanted to buy some souvenirs for my friends.

There were so many things on sale that I didn't know what to buy. Suddenly, I saw two statues which looked so beautiful. I decided to buy them. So I asked the price. “It's twenty *yuan* each,” said the boss. I tried to bargain with him about the price. He refused at first, but when I was going to leave, he stopped me and said, “OK. You can have both of them for ten *yuan*.” Therefore, I bought both of them home at last.

I was very happy, because it was the first time that I had bargained with a businessman about the price so successfully.

名师点评：本文运用“四要素法”描写购物经历。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. 第一段明确指出购物的时间和地点；第二段描写“砍价”经历；第三段描写购物感触。

2. 本文描写购物经历，所以采用一般过去时。

添彩点：①Once 点出本文时态为一般过去时。②for 的运用突出逻辑性，“我”去前门大街购物，因为“我”想给我的朋友买纪念品。③重点短语的运用：on sale 廉价出售；bargain with sb. about the price 与某人讨价还价；decide to do sth. 决定做某事；at first 起初；at last 最后；be going to do sth. 将要做某事。重点句式的运用：It was the first time that…。



V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见291页)

一、语法专练

1. — I am worried about _____ I can enter a good high school or not.

—Take it easy. Believe in yourself! [咸宁]

A. that B. when C. whether D. where

2. —I don't know if Sam _____ tomorrow.

—Don't worry. I will tell you as soon as he _____. [天水]

A. will come; comes

B. comes; will come

C. will come; will come

D. comes; comes

3. Could you tell me _____? [遂宁]

A. when will they leave Beijing

B. when would they leave Beijing

C. when they will leave Beijing

D. when they would leave Beijing

4. —What did Mr. Wang ask you just now?

—He asked me _____ yesterday afternoon. [宿迁]

A. why I am absent from school

B. why I was absent from school

C. why am I absent from school

D. why was I absent from school

5. —Could you tell me _____?

—Sure. Go down the street, and you can find it at the second crossing! [滨州]

A. where is the supermarket

B. where the supermarket is

C. when does the supermarket open

D. when the supermarket opens

二、单元知识浓缩

用方框内单词或短语的适当形式填空。

pay	afford	cheap	while	dollar	crazy
tie	sell out of	be going to	make money		
less than	come up to	go over to			

Our school basketball team _____[6] play in another city, but each player needed to _____[7] as much as $150. So Brian, Jenny and Danny decided to_____[8] for the team.

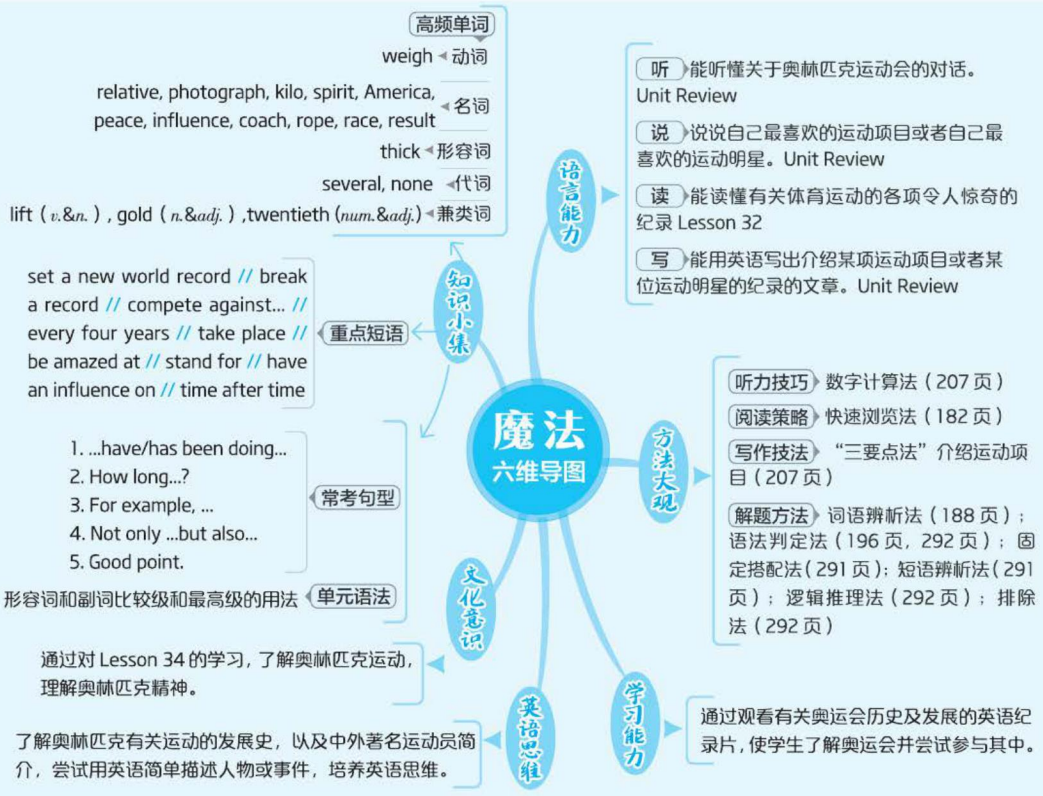
On Thursday, Brian and Danny were selling things to raise money for the school basketball team. A girl _____[9] Brian's table. Brian's cookies were very _____[10]. One _____[11] for four cookies. The girl bought four cookies. Besides the girl, many people also liked Brian's cookies, so he _____[12] them in _____[13] an hour.

Then the girl _____[14] Danny's table. Danny was always _____[15]. He invented the Danny Desk-Cycle. What was it for? People could _____[16] it onto the bike. Then they could do their homework _____[17] they rode the bike. But it was too expensive. The girl couldn't _____[18] it.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 Be a Champion!

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Lesson 31

必背单词

1. **relative** *n.* 亲戚；亲属→ a close relative 近亲 → a distant relative 远亲

必背短语

2. stand on one foot 一只脚站立
3. set a new world record 创造一项新的世界纪录
4. break a record 打破纪录

必背句子

5. **How long** will I have to do this? 我必须要这样做多久呢?
6. I have been **standing on one foot** for more than three minutes. 我已经单脚站立三分多钟了。

Lesson 32

必背单词

1. **thick** *adj.* 厚的→ thin *adj.* 薄的
2. **photograph** *n.* 照片→ photographer *n.* 摄影师
3. **lift** *v.*& *n.* 举起；抬起；电梯
4. **weigh** *v.* 有……重；重→ weight *n.* 重量
5. **kilo** *n.*(= kilogram) 千克
6. **several** *pron.* & *adj.* 三个以上；一些；几个的；数个的

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

‖必背短语

7. be full of 充满→be filled with 被……充满

‖必背句子

8. A train must **weigh** more than 30 000 kilos!
一列火车肯定有三万多千克重!

Lesson 33

‖必背单词

1. spirit *n.* 精神；心灵

‖必背短语

2. every four years 每四年

3. ask sb. to do sth. 让某人做某事→ask sb. not to do sth. 让某人别做某事

4. find out 弄清；查明

5. compete against 与……竞争；对抗

6. take place 发生；举行

7. be amazed at... 惊讶于……

‖必背句子

8. Good point. 说得好。

9. They held the event **every four years** in Olympia.
他们每四年在奥林匹亚举行一次比赛。

10. Now both men and women can **take part in** the Olympics!
现在男女都可以参加奥运会!

Lesson 34

‖必背单词

1. America 美洲；美国
→American *n.* 美国人 *adj.* 美国的；美洲的

2. peace *n.* 和平→peaceful *adj.* 和平的；平静的

‖必背短语

3. no matter which 无论哪个

4. for example 例如

5. stand for 代表

Lesson 35

‖必背单词

1. gold *n.*& *adj.* 金；黄金制品；金色的
→golden *adj.* 金的；金色的

2. influence *n.* 影响；作用→have an influence on sb./sth. 对某人 / 物有影响

3. coach *n.* 教练；辅导教师

‖必背短语

4. dream team 梦之队

5. have an influence on 对……有影响

6. time after time 多次；反复；不断地

7. not only…but also… 不但……而且……

8. give up 放弃

‖必背句子

9. They **had a great influence on** people everywhere—not just in the Olympic Games. 他们对人们的影响无处不在——不仅仅是在奥运会上。

Lesson 36

‖必背单词

1. rope *n.* 绳

2. race *n.* 赛跑；速度竞赛
→racer *n.* 参赛的人（或动物）

3. result *n.* 结果；成绩→the result of… ……的结果→as a result of… 因为……

4. none *pron.* 一个也没有；毫无

5. twentieth *num.*& *adj.* 第二十（的）

‖必背句子

6. She jumped 180 times in one minute **without** stopping.
她在一分钟内不间断地跳了 180 次。

7. We **used** a watch **to see** who was the fastest.
我们用手表计时来看谁最快。

单元必背语法

1. The gathering is **more important than** a world record!
这个聚会比一项世界纪录更重要!

2. Mine flew **farther than** Jenny's airplane, but Brian's flew the farthest.
我的纸飞机比詹妮的飞得远，但是布赖恩的飞得最远。

3. They also represent their countries at **the highest** level.
他们也代表了他们国家的最高水平。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 31 Don't Fall, Danny!

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What world records do you know of? 你知道哪些世界纪录?
- Do you think you can set a record in your class? What is it?
  你认为你能在你的班级里创造一项纪录吗? 它是什么呢?

课文朗读

Jenny: Danny, why are you standing on one foot?
丹尼, 你为什么单脚站立呢?

Danny: I want to set a new world record①. I will be the champion② /'tʃæmpɪən/ of standing on one foot③!
我想创造一项新的世界纪录。我将会是单脚站立的冠军!

Jenny: And how do you feel? 你感觉怎么样呢?

Danny: I'm so tired! How long④ will I have to do this? 我很累! 我必须要这样做多久呢?

Jenny: Brian is coming. We can ask him. He has a book of world records. 布赖恩来了。我们可以问问他。他有一本世界纪录的书。

Danny: Hi Brian. I have been standing⑤ on one foot for more than three minutes. I want to break a world record. Do you know what the record is?
嗨, 布赖恩。我已经单脚站立三分多钟了。我想打破世界纪录。你知道这项纪录是多少吗?

Brian: (He looks in his book.) The record is eight hours. Don't stop, Danny. In seven hours and fifty-seven minutes, you'll be the champion!
(他看了一下他的书。) 这项纪录是 8 小时。丹尼, 不要停。7 小时 57 分钟后, 你将会是冠军了!

Danny: That's too long! I'll be late for supper!
那时间太长了! 我晚饭将会迟到的!

Jenny: We're having pizza at our house. Don't worry. I'll bring⑥ you a piece later.
我们将要在家里吃比萨。不要担心。我呆会儿会给你带来一块。

Danny: That's very kind of you, Jenny. But my family is going to have a gathering tonight. Many relatives⑦ /'relətɪvz/ are coming, and my mum is cooking chicken. I love chicken!
詹妮, 你太好了。但是我全家今天晚上将有一个聚会。许多亲戚都会来而且我妈妈将会做鸡肉。我喜欢鸡肉!

Brian: Well, you can't walk there on one foot.
喔, 你不能单脚走到那里吧。

Danny: (He puts his foot down.) I'll walk there on two feet. The gathering is more important than a world record!
(他放下了脚。) 我会用两只脚走到那儿。这个聚会比一项世界纪录更重要!

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and write true (T) or false (F). 阅读课文, 并写正 (T) 误 (F)。

1. Danny dreams about breaking the record for standing on one foot.
   丹尼梦想着打破单脚站立的纪录。 ( )
2. The world record for standing on one foot is eight minutes.
   单脚站立的世界纪录是 8 分钟。 ( )
3. Jenny will have chicken for supper.
   詹妮晚饭将会吃鸡肉。 ( )

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4. Danny doesn't realize his dream.
丹尼没有实现他的梦想。 ( )

2 Read the lesson again and answer the questions. 再读课文并回答问题。

1. How does Danny feel while standing on one foot? 当丹尼单脚站立时，他感觉如何呢?
2. Who has a book of world records?
谁有一本世界纪录的书?
3. What is Danny's mother going to prepare for supper? 丹尼的妈妈将为晚饭准备什么呢?
4. How long does Danny stand on one foot? Why does Danny give up? 丹尼单脚站立了多长时间? 丹尼为什么放弃了呢?

3 Complete the passage with the correct forms of the words in the box.
用方框内所给单词的正确形式完成短文。

break 打破 set 创立 feel 感觉 champion 冠军

At the London Olympic Games, Sun Yang became China's first male Olympic swimming _____ after winning the 400-metre freestyle. He also _____ a new record in the 1 500-metre freestyle. "I dreamed of winning the gold medals, but I never expected to _____ a world record. I _____ excited, "said Sun Yang.

在伦敦奥运会上，孙杨在赢得 400 米自由泳后成为中国第一位男性奥运游泳_____。他在 1500 米自由泳中也_____一项新的纪录。"我梦想赢得金牌，但我从没想到会_____一项世界纪录。我_____激动，"孙杨说。

4 Have you heard of *the Guinness World Records*? Do you know who can do the most hula-hoops? Do you know who can drink the most beer in one minute? Find some interesting records and make a chart. 你听说过《吉尼斯世界纪录大全》吗? 你知道谁转呼啦圈最多吗? 你知道在一分钟内谁能喝最多的啤酒吗? 找出一些有趣的纪录并制成表格。

Event 事情	Record 记录

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

★ I want to set a new world record.

① set a new world record 创造一项新的世界纪录

e.g. Do you want to set a new world record?
你想创造一项新的世界纪录吗?

It is not easy to set a record for the high jump.
创造一项跳高纪录不容易。

Do you think you could break a record one day?
你认为有一天你能打破一项纪录吗?

It's hard to keep/hold a record.
保持一项纪录很难。

拓展: national records 国家纪录
Asian records 亚洲纪录

record 常用短语
① set a record (for...)"创造一项(……)纪录"可以和 make a record(for...)互换使用。

② break a record 打破一项纪录

③ keep/hold a record 保持一项纪录

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★I will be the champion of standing on one foot!

② **champion** /'tʃæmpɪən/ *n.* (a person, team, etc. that has won a competition, especially in a sport) 冠军；第一名；优胜者

e.g. She had been coached by a former Wimbledon champion.
她得到过一位前温布尔登网球锦标赛冠军的指导。

③ **stand on one foot 单脚站立** 其中 on 为介词，意为“以……方式”。

e.g. How long can you stand on one foot? 你能单脚站立多长时间？

辨析：how long，how soon 与 how often
① how long 多长时间；用来提问时间的长短，答语通常是表示一段时间的状语。
② how soon 多久；主要用来表示对将来的一段时间的提问。
③ how often 多长时间一次；主要用来提问在某一段时间内某个动作发生的次数。

★How long will I have to do this?

④ [高频]**How long...?……多长时间?** 敲黑板 中考高频考点，牢记！

e.g. —How long did you stay in the office? 你在办公室里呆多长时间了?
—For four hours. 四个小时。
—How soon will he be back? 他将要多久才回来?
—In an hour. 一小时以后。
—How often do you go to the cinema? 你多久去一次电影院?
—About three times a year. 大约一年三次。

考题在线 1 —_____ do you sleep every day, Eric?
— For about eight hours. [宿迁]

A. How much　　B. How fast
C. How often　　D. How long

点拨：考查特殊疑问词组辨析。答语 for 引导的表示一段时间的时间状语提示用 how long“多久”提问。

★I have been standing on one foot for more than three minutes.

⑤ [高频] **现在完成进行时的用法** 结构是“have/has been +现在分词”

现在完成进行时，表示从过去某一时间开始一直持续到现在的动作，还有可能持续到将来，常与 since 或 for 连用。

e.g. I have been writing a book since last week.
从上周开始我就在写一本书。

辨析：现在完成进行时与现在完成时

①现在完成进行时强调的是动作从过去持续到现在，且可能还将继续下去。

e.g. I have been doing it for years. 我已经做了几年了。 说明这个动作没有断过，现在还在做

②现在完成时更强调从过去某时开始的动作给现在留下某种结果和影响。

e.g. I have done it. 我已经做了。 强调做过的事情本身，现在是否在做不是关键

★I'll bring you a piece later.

⑥ **bring** /brɪŋ/ *v.* 带来

常用于“bring sth. to +地点名词”结构中。bring sb. sth. = bring sth. for sb. 表示“给某人带来某物”。

e.g. Can you bring your friend to the park tomorrow?
明天你能把你的朋友带到公园来吗?

Bring the book for me.=Bring me the book. 把那本书带给我。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

辨析：bring, take 与 fetch



e.g. Take this to the bank for me, would you?
请替我把这送到银行去，好吗？

She's gone to fetch the kids from school.
她去学校接孩子了。

考题在线 2 Will you please _____ me some snacks?

A. bringing　B. bring　C. brings　D. to bring

点拨：句意：你能给我带一些零食来吗？Will you please 后面要跟动词原形。

★ **Many relatives are coming, and my mum is cooking chicken.**

⑦ **relative** /'relətɪv/ *n.* 亲戚　可数名词，其复数形式为 relatives。

e.g. A lot of relatives will come to my home for my grandpa's eightieth birthday. 许多亲戚会来我家为我爷爷过八十大寿。

考题在线答案　1. D　2. B

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练　稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见291页)

一、从方框中选择适当的单词或短语并用其适当形式填空

relative	champion	bring
set a record	stand on one foot	

1. It's not easy to _____.
2. Li Qi was once a _____ of *The Voice of China* Ⅱ. He was a top singer.
3. Do you have _____ in the town?
4. Why is Danny _____?
5. Dad _____ a notebook for us yesterday.

二、单项选择

6. You can't be late _____ school.
A. of　B. off　C. on　D. for

7. My father will be back from Beijing _____ a week.　【导学号：6505386】
A. for　B. on　C. in　D. at

8. The boy has a good habit to _____ all the things in right places.　[呼和浩特]
A. put away　B. put up
C. take away　D. take up

9. —_____ have you studied in this school?
— For nearly three years.　[盐城]
A. How often　B. How far
C. How much　D. How long

10. —My car _____. Could you please give me a ride tomorrow?
—I'm sorry I can't. I'm _____ London tomorrow morning.
A. is new; leaving
B. has broken down; leaving for
C. had broken; leaving for
D. is expensive; leaving

三、连词成句

11. do, standing, feel, after, you, how, foot, on, one
_____?

12. what, record, the , know, I, is
_____.

13. forget, homework, don't, to, your, bring
_____.

14. kept, he, record, a, has, world
_____.

15. has, for, been, Danny, his, doing, two, homework, hours
_____?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 32 My Favourite Record

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Have you ever won a competition? What competition did you win?
  你曾经赢过一场比赛吗？你赢过什么比赛？
- How do you feel when you get a prize? 当你获奖时，你感觉如何呢？

Dear Li Ming, 亲爱的李明：

课文朗读

This week in school, we made a list of records for our class. 这周在学校，我们列出了一张班级纪录清单。

My favourite record was for the best paper airplane. Mine flew farther ① than Jenny's airplane, but Brian's flew the farthest. He was so proud ②.

我最喜欢的纪录是最佳纸飞机。我的飞机比詹妮的飞机飞得远，但布赖恩的飞机飞得最远。他非常自豪。

My friend Sandra won the record for the largest book. How large was it? It was 60 cm long, 40 cm wide and almost 21 cm thick /θɪk/! It was full of ③ her family's photographs ④ /'fəʊtəgrɑ:fs/.

我的朋友桑德拉赢得了最大书籍的纪录。它多大呢？它有 60 厘米长，40 厘米宽，将近 21 厘米厚！这本书里放满了她家人的照片。

Brian has a book about world records. Some records are hard to believe! One man lifted ⑤ /lɪftɪd/ a bus. Another man pulled a train with his teeth. Isn't that amazing!

布赖恩有一本关于世界纪录的书，一些纪录真是令人难以置信！一个人举起了一辆公共汽车。另一个人用牙齿拉动了一列火车。那难道不令人惊讶吗！

Danny 丹尼

Hi Danny, 嗨，丹尼：

How could the man pull a train with his teeth! A train must weigh ⑥ /weɪ/ more than 30 000 kilos /'ki:ləʊz/! 那个人怎么会用牙齿拉动一列火车呢！一列火车肯定有三万多千克重！

I liked reading about your class records. Brian's airplane won? That's great! By the way, our school held its spring sports meet several ⑦ /'sevrəl/ days ago. I won first place in the long jump and broke the school record! Now I have my own record, too. 我喜欢读你们的班级纪录。布赖恩的飞机赢了？那太好了！顺便说一下，我们学校几天前举行了春季运动会。我赢得了跳远冠军并打破了学校纪录！现在，我也有自己的纪录了。

Well, it's time for me to go to bed. I'll brush my teeth very well tonight. Someday, I might have to pull a train with them!

好了，我该上床睡觉了。今晚我要好好地刷牙。有一天，我可能得用它们拉一列火车！

Li Ming 李明

Danny had fun with his class records. Did you have fun with yours? 丹尼从他班上的纪录里获得了乐趣。你从你们班的纪录里得到乐趣了吗？

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and answer the questions.
阅读课文并回答问题。

1. Whose paper airplane flew the farthest in Danny's class?
   在丹尼的班级，谁的纸飞机飞得最远？
2. What record did Sandra set?
   桑德拉创造了什么纪录？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. How large was Sandra's book? What was in it? 桑德拉的书有多大？它里面放了什么？

4. How did Li Ming feel when he heard that a man pulled a train with his teeth?
当李明听说一个人用牙齿拉动一列火车时，他感觉如何呢？

5. What record did Li Ming set in the spring sports meet?
李明在春季运动会中创造了什么纪录？

2 Complete the passage with the correct forms of the words in the boxes.
用方框中所给单词的正确形式完成短文。

photograph 照片　photographer 摄影师 keep 保持

Why do you think some people like taking _____ when they visit another place? Pictures are the best way to _____ memories. Many people take a camera with them everywhere they go. Do you think being a _____ is a good job? 当一些人到另一个地方参观时，你觉得他们为什么喜欢拍_____？照片是_____回忆的最好方式。许多人去哪里都会带着照相机。你觉得成为一名_____是一份好工作吗？

several 一些　lift 举起　become 成为；变成

A 12-year-old British schoolboy broke the record for his age group during a weightlifting event. He _____ a 90 kg weight in the competition. He hopes to _____ an Olympic weightlifter and win _____ gold medals for his country one day. 一位 12 岁的英国男生在举重比赛中打破了同年龄组的纪录。他在比赛中_____90 千克的重量。他希望有一天_____一名奥运举重选手，并且为自己的国家赢得_____金牌。

PROJECT 方案

CLASSROOM CHAMPIONS! 教室冠军！

It's hard to break a world record. But you could be a champion in your classroom!
打破世界纪录很难。但是你可以成为教室里的冠军！

As a class, brainstorm some different records. Who can run the fastest? Who can spell the most English words? 当做一堂课，想一些不同的纪录。谁能跑得最快？谁能拼出最多的英语单词？

With your classmates, choose and write down a list of records. Then find out who holds each record in your class.
和你的同班同学们一起选择，并写下一张纪录列表。然后，找出谁在你们班保持了每项纪录。

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练　专攻中考阅读 60分

（答案见291页）

阅读策略

快速浏览法 (1) 阅读文章开头的一、二段，力求抓住文章大意、背景情况等。(2) 阅读段落的主题句和结论句，略去细节不读，以求得略读速度。(3) 注意转折词汇和序列词。（转折词汇如 however, but 等；序列词如 firstly, secondly 等。）

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读 Lesson 32, 选择正确答案

1. ⊙ In this lesson, the main idea is _____.
（主旨大意题）

A. the favourite record
B. the largest book
C. the best paper airplane
D. the school record

二、细读文章，解决细节类题目

2. _____ flew farther than Jenny's airplane.
（细节理解题）

A. Danny's　B. Li Ming's
C. Wang Mei's　D. Sandra's

3. Li Ming won first place in the _____ and broke the school record.　（细节理解题）

A. race　B. diving　C. high jump　D. long jump

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★ **Mine flew farther than Jenny's airplane, but Brian's flew the farthest.**

① **farther** /'fɑːðə(r)/ *adv.* 更远 far — farther — farthest

e.g. Many of us were too tired to go farther.

我们当中许多人太累了走不了更远。

We had to travel farther/further than we had expected.

我们不得不走得比我们预计的更远。

We considered the problem further. 我们进一步地考虑了这个问题。

考题在线 1 She jumps _____ of us four.

A. far B. farther C. farthest D. further

点拨:句意:在我们四个人中她跳得最远。far 远;farther 更远;farthest 最远;further 更远,进一步地。根据 of us four 可知该用最高级。

辨析:further 与 farther
①两个词都是 far 的比较级,表示距离时可互换。
②further 还可用于表示抽象含义,强调程度,意为"进一步地;深层地";而 farther 只能表示具体的距离,不能用于抽象含义。

★ **He was so proud.**

② **proud** /praʊd/ *adj.* 骄傲的;自豪的 常用短语:be/feel proud of 为……感到骄傲。

proud 在句中既可作表语,也可作定语。其后可接 of 短语、不定式或 that 从句。

e.g. We are proud that we are Chinese. 我们为我们是中国人而自豪。

★ **It was full of her family's photographs.**

③ **be full of** 充满 同义短语为 be filled with

e.g. His bag is full of books.=His bag is filled with books.

他的包里装满了书。

④ **photograph** /'fəʊtəgrɑːf/ *n.* 照片 是可数名词,相当于 photo

e.g. I planned to enlarge this photograph. 我计划放大这张照片。

I took a photograph of my father. 我给爸爸拍了张照片。

拓展:photographic *adj.* 摄影的
photographer *n.* 摄影师

常用短语
take a photograph/photo of sb. 给某人照相;
a photograph/photo of sb. 某人的照片

考题在线 2 —Look at that photo. What a happy family!

—Yes, it's a photo _____ my family. [新疆]

A. at B. into C. of D. in

★ **One man lifted a bus.**

⑤ **lift** /lɪft/ *v.* (to raise sb./sth. or be raised to a higher position or level) (被)举起;抬起

它通常指克服重力而抬起、举起某物,尤指把重物从平面或较低处向上举起,可引申为"提升;鼓舞"。

v. lift 举起 n. lift/elevator 电梯





e.g. This trunk is too heavy for me to lift. 这个大箱子太重,我提不动。

They took the lift up to the shop. 他们乘电梯到上面的商店去了。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

辨析：weigh 和 weight
① weigh 动词，有……重；重
② weight 名词，重量；体重

对重量提问，可用：
How much...weigh ?
What is the weight of...?
How heavy...?

★ **A train must weigh more than 30 000 kilos!**

⑥ **weigh** /weɪ/ *v.* 有……重；重

e.g. How much do you weigh? 你体重多少?

Do you often weigh yourself?

你经常称体重吗?

He gained some weight recently. 近来，他的体重增加了。

How much does the big dog weigh?=What is the weight of the big dog?=How heavy is the big dog? 这条大狗有多重?

考题在线 3 You can lose w_____ by eating less and exercising more. [济宁]

★ **By the way, our school held its spring sports meet several days ago.**

⑦ **several**/'sevrəl/ *pron.& adj.* 三个以上；一些；几个的；数个的

e.g. I bought several books yesterday. 我昨天买了好几本书。

拓展：several, many, a few, a number of 等修饰可数名词复数；much, a little 等修饰不可数名词；some, any, a lot of , lots of, plenty of 等既可修饰可数名词复数又可修饰不可数名词。

several 作形容词时只能修饰可数名词，相当于 a few/some。

考题在线 4 There are _____ (几个，一些) people in the park.

考题在线答案 1. C 2. C 3. weight 4. several/some/a few

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见291页)

一、根据首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. The desk is too heavy for him to l_____.
2. You'd better put on your t_____ coat. It's cold outside.
3. The huge stone w_____ more than 2, 000 kg.
4. He bought _____ (几个的) books yesterday.
5. She took lots of beautiful _____ (照片) during her stay in Europe. [福州]

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. This is not my hat. _____ (my) is red.
7. We Chinese feel very _____ (pride) of China's astronauts. [南宁]
8. The fattest man weighing 300 _____ (kilo) in China, died in April, 2014.
9. I'm too tired. I can't go any _____ (far).
10. Would you like to be a _____ (photograph)?

三、连词成句

11. be, their, of, country, them, proud, should

_____.

12. books, the, is, of, bag, full

_____.

13. went, farther, he, expected, than, anyone

_____.

14. Amy, arm, wave, lifted, to, her

_____.

15. on, hundred, several, students, the, gathered, playground

_____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 33 2 800 Years of Sports

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Have you ever watched the Olympics on TV? What did you watch?
  你曾在电视上看过奥运会吗？你都观看了哪些项目？
- Do you think the Olympics are important? Why or why not?
  你认为奥运会重要吗？为什么重要或为什么不重要？

课文朗读

Ms. Liu: Yesterday I asked you to do some research on the history of the Olympics. Did anyone find out ① when the Olympics began?
昨天我让你们做一些关于奥运会历史的调查。有人查清楚奥运会是何时开始的吗？

Wang Mei: Yes, I searched it on the Internet. The year was 776 BC. That was about 2 800 years ago.
是的，我在网上查找到了。它开始于公元前776年。那大约是在2 800年前了。

Ms. Liu: Excellent! Did anyone find out where the ancient Olympics began?
好极了！有人查清楚古代奥运会发源于何地吗？

Li Ming: I know that! They started in Greece.
我知道！它们开始于希腊。

Ms. Liu: That's right. The ancient Greeks wanted to have the best athletes /'æθli:ts/ compete /kəm'pi:t/ against ② each other. They held the event every four years ③ in Olympia /əʊ'lɪmpɪə/.
正确。古希腊人想让最好的运动员互相竞争。他们每四年在奥林匹亚举行一次比赛。

Wang Mei: But those first Olympics were very different from today's. Women couldn't take part in the games.
但是最初的那些奥运会与现在的奥运会非常不同。妇女不能参加比赛。

Ms. Liu: Good point, Wang Mei. Married ④ /'mærɪd/ women couldn't even watch the games!
王梅，说得好。已婚妇女甚至不能观看比赛！

Li Ming: Now both men and women can take part in ⑤ the Olympics! I also found out that the modern Olympics began in 1896 and took place every four years. In 2008, China hosted /'həʊstɪd/ the 29th Olympic /ə'lɪmpɪk/ Games. It was so exciting!
现在男女都可以参加奥运会！我还查到现代奥运会开始于1896年，并且每四年举行一次。2008年，中国主办了第二十九届奥运会。这太激动人心了！

Wang Mei: The ancient Greeks would be amazed /ə'meɪzd/ at ⑥ how the Olympic Games have grown to become a world event!
古希腊人会惊讶于奥运会是如何发展成为一个世界性的比赛项目的！

Ms. Liu: One thing has not changed about the games—athletes compete in a spirit ⑦ /'spɪrɪt/ of fair play. They also represent /ˌreprɪ'zent/ their countries at the highest level.
关于奥运会有一件事从没改变过——运动员们以公平竞争的精神来比赛。他们也代表了他们国家的最高水平。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and match the questions with the answers. 阅读课文并把问题和答案连起来。

1. When did the Olympics begin? 奥运会是什么时候开始的?
2. Where did the ancient Olympics start? 古代奥运会开始于何地?
3. When did the first modern Olympics begin? 第一届现代奥运会是什么时候开始的?
4. When were the Beijing Olympics? 北京奥运会是什么时候?
5. Was this the first time for China to hold the Olympic Games? 这是中国第一次举办奥运会吗?

In 1896. 在 1896 年。
In 2008. 在 2008 年。
Yes, it was. 是的,它是。
In 776 BC. 在公元前 776 年。
In Greece. 在希腊。

2 Listen to the passage and fill in the blanks. 听短文并填空。

课文听力

The Olympic Games are _____ and _____. The ancient Olympics started in _____ BC and lasted for more than a thousand years. They took place every four years. _____ could not compete in the ancient Olympics. In 1896, a _____ started the modern Olympic Games. He believed the games would help bring _____ and fair play to people all over the world. Now there are _____ and _____ Olympics every four years.

奥运会既_____又_____。古代奥运会开始于公元前_____年并且持续了一千多年。它们每四年举行一次。_____无法参加古代奥运会。在 1896 年,一位_____开创了现代奥运会。他相信奥运会将有助于给全世界的人们带来_____和公平的比赛。现在每四年都有_____和_____奥运会。

3 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words. The first letter is given.
用单词的正确形式填空。首字母已给出。

1. Although Guo Wenjun was m_____ and had a baby, she still practiced hard for the Olympics and finally won a gold medal.
尽管郭文珺已经_____并有了一个孩子,但她仍然为奥运会艰苦训练并最终赢得一枚金牌。
2. Xu Haifeng won the first Olympic gold medal at the Los Angeles Olympics in 1984. Since then, Chinese a_____ have achieved excellent performances throughout the world. 许海峰在 1984 年洛杉矶奥运会上赢得首枚奥运金牌。从那时起,中国的_____在全世界都有出色的表现。
3. London is an old but m_____ city. It was the h_____ of the 30th Olympic Games. Over two hundred countries and districts c_____ in the games. 伦敦是一个古老却_____城市。它是第 30 届奥运会的_____。二百多个国家和地区_____此次奥运会。

4 Let's do a quick quiz! 咱们做个快速的测验!

1. Who is the father of modern Olympics? 谁是现代奥运会之父?
2. How many sports did the first ancient Olympics have? 第一届古代奥运会有多少个体育项目?
3. How many countries took part in the first modern Olympics? 有多少个国家参加了第一届现代奥运会?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4. When were women allowed to compete in the Olympics? 妇女是何时被允许参加奥运会的?

5. Who was the first Chinese athlete to take part in the Olympics? 谁是中国第一位参加奥运会的运动员?

1. Pierre de Coubertin. 皮埃尔·德·顾拜旦。
2. Only one. It is running. 仅仅一个。是赛跑。
3. Thirteen. 十三个。
4. The 1900 Paris Olympics, the second modern Olympics.
在 1900 年巴黎奥运会上，也就是第二届现代奥运会。
5. Liu Changchun. 刘长春。

Now try to find more facts about the Olympics. 现在努力找出更多关于奥运会的事实。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★ Did anyone find out when the Olympics began?

辨析：find out, find 与 look for
① find out 找出。它多指通过调查、询问、研究之后搞清楚、弄明白，通常含有经过困难、曲折的经历最终找到或弄清楚较难找到的、抽象的东西的含义。

① find out 找出；查清楚

e.g. Can you find out when the flight will take off?
你能查出这次航班何时起飞吗？

I can't find my pen. Can I borrow yours?
我找不到我的笔了。能借一下你的笔吗?

The young couple were looking for their lost baby everywhere.
这对年轻的夫妇正在到处寻找他们丢失的孩子。

② find 找到，发现。强调"找"的结果，其宾语往往是某件丢失的东西或人。

③ look for 寻找。指有目的地寻找，强调"找"这个动作，结果如何不清楚。

★ ...wanted to have the best athletes compete against each other.

② compete against 与……竞争；对抗

e.g. We can't compete against/with them on price.
我们在价格上无法与他们竞争。

John is competing against Mike for the first place.
约翰正在和迈克竞争第一名。

compete against sb. 与某人竞争
compete against sb. for sth. 为某事与某人竞争

考题在线 1 Our ping-pong players are competing _____ the players from another school _____ the medal.(填介词)

核心素养之文化意识

培养"竞争与合作"素养

◆竞争 (competition) 是在不牺牲他人利益的前提下，追求目标 (goal)。而合作 (cooperation) 则是为谋求共同的利益彼此配合的社会行为。作为初中生，首要任务就是学习，同学之间既存在着竞争也存在着合作。如果我们自己没有信心 (confidence)，不和其他同学勇敢竞争，那么我们就是学习上的懦夫 (coward)。但是为了自己的成功，不肯相互合作，那更是一种做人的失败 (failure)，因为这个社会是合作的社会，任何一个人都不可能掌握所有的知识。

【素养行动】让我们做一个有竞争力且善于合作的全面发展的学生。
【素养行动结果】学会与他人合作，并且独立自强，具有较强竞争力。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★**They held the event every four years in Olympia.**

③ **every four years 每四年**

every 和基数词、序数词、other 或 few 连用，表示时间或空间的间隔，意为“每……；每隔……”。

every + 基数词 + 复数名词 = every + 序数词 + 单数名词。

e.g. every few months 每几个月

He comes here every three days.=

He comes here every third day. 他每三天来这儿一次。

★**Married women couldn't even watch the games!**

④ **married** /'mærɪd/ *adj.* **结婚的；已婚的**

be/get married to 表示“与……结婚”。

e.g. One of my friends got married to an American boy.

我的一个朋友和一个美国男孩结婚了。

拓展：marry 是 married 的动词形式，表示“嫁；娶”，后面直接跟宾语。

e.g. My parents have been married for forty years.

我的父母已经结婚 40 年了。

marry 是短暂性动词，不能与一段时间连用，若与时间段连用，需用 be married 替代。

考题在线 2 Annie _____ Jeff when they were both 25 years old.

A. got married　　B. married

C. married with　　D. married to

点拨：句意：当他们都是 25 岁的时候安妮嫁给了杰夫。marry sb. 表示嫁给某人。

★**Now both men and women can take part in the Olympics!**

⑤ **[高频] take part in 参加** 敲黑板 高频考点，牢记！

e.g. He doesn't take an active part in many school activities.

他不积极参加许多学校的活动。

part 前通常不用冠词，但是如果 part 前有形容词修饰，要加不定冠词。

辨析: take part in, join 与 join in

① take part in 指主动参加会议或群众性活动等，并在活动中发挥作用。

② join 指加入某个团体、组织或某个人群中，并成为其成员之一。

③ join in 多指参加小规模的活动，如球赛、游戏等，常用于日常口语，可以和 take part in 互换。

考题在线 3 We're going to the East Lake Park on Sunday. Will you _____ us?

A. join in　　B. take part in　　C. join　　D. take part

点拨：运用词语辨析法。join in 后面跟表示球赛、游戏等的名词，可与 take part in 互换；join 指加入某个团体、组织或某个人群中。

★**The ancient Greeks would be amazed at how the Olympic Games have grown to become a world event!**

⑥ **be amazed at... 惊讶于……** 相当于 be surprised at...

be amazed at 后跟名词、代词或动词的 -ing 形式作宾语。be amazed to 后跟动词原形

e.g. He is amazed at the news. 他对这条新闻感到很惊讶。

We were amazed to hear the news. 听到这条新闻，我们感到很惊讶。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**One thing has not changed about the games—athletes compete in a spirit of fair play.**

⑦ **spirit** /'spɪrɪt/ *n.* (the part of a person that includes their mind, feelings and character rather than their body) 精神；心灵

spirit 作"精神；心灵"讲时，既可作可数名词也可作不可数名词。

e.g. Fang Junming, from Hubei, showed the spirit of sacrifice. 来自湖北的方俊明表现出了牺牲精神。

Are there such things as spirits? 有灵魂这样的东西吗？

spirit 还可作"灵魂；幽灵"讲，此时是可数名词。

He is in low spirits. 他情绪低落。

spirit 作"情绪"讲时，多用复数形式。

考题在线答案 1. against/with; for 2. B 3. C

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见292页)

一、用所给词(组)的适当形式填空

1. Both Peter and Bob _____ (be) good at playing football.

2. Our football team _____ (compete) against yours yesterday.

3. Now Chinese teenagers have plenty of chances _____ (take part in) all kinds of outdoor activities. [云南]

4. Yang Lei was _____ (marry) to a doctor last month.

5. They were all in high _____ (spirit) when they heard the good news.

二、单项选择

6. —I'm going to Hong Kong next month. What about you, Jenny?

—I will _____ social practice. [贵港]

A. take part in B. take place

C. take off D. take action

7. Every country wants to have the best athletes _____ each other.

A. to competing against

B. compete against

C. to compete for

D. compete for

8. _____ my father _____ my mother take good care of me. I love them so much. [福州]

A. Either; or B. Both; and

C. Neither; nor

9. We need to do some research to _____ the answer. [河北]

A. find out B. look out

C. hand out D. take out

10. —How happy the grandparents are!

—Yes, they _____ for fifty years. [眉山]

A. have been married

B. have married

C. have got married

D. married

三、连词成句

11. ever, have, on, TV, you, watched, the, Olympics

_____?

12. will, we, find, truth, the, soon, out

_____.

13. is, amazed, he, at, result, the

_____.

14. held, event, four, they, the, every, years, in Olympia

_____.

15. did, get, she, married, last, year

_____?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 34 Modern Olympics

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Which mascot do you like best? 你最喜欢哪个吉祥物?
- What do you think is the same in every Olympics? 你认为在每届奥运会中有什么相同之处?

课文朗读

In the modern Olympics, some things are the same no matter which country is hosting, and some things change.

在现代奥运会中，不管哪个国家举办它，有些东西是一样的，而有些东西会改变。

For example①, the Olympic symbol is always the same. The five rings stand for② the five continents /'kɒntɪnənts/ united together. The blue ring stands for Europe, the red ring for America③ /ə'merɪkə/, the yellow ring for Asia, the green ring for Australia and the black ring for Africa. 例如，奥林匹克的标志总是一样的。五环代表五大洲团结在一起。蓝色环代表欧洲，红色环代表美洲，黄色环代表亚洲，绿色环代表大洋洲，黑色环代表非洲。

The Olympic motto, "Faster, Higher, Stronger", stays the same for every Olympics.And of course, the torch /tɔ:tʃ/—a symbol of peace④ /pi:s/, light and friendship—is always there.

奥林匹克的格言，"更快，更高，更强"，在每届奥运会上都保持不变。当然，象征着和平、光明和友谊的火炬一直都会有。

However, some things are different. The Olympic slogan /'sləʊgən/, for example, is created by the host city, and it reflects /rɪ'flekts/ the spirit of those Olympics. Do you remember the slogan for the 2008 Beijing Olympic Games? It was "One world, one dream". 然而，有些东西会不同。例如，奥运会的口号是由主办城市创造并且反映那些奥运会的精神。你还记得 2008 年北京奥运会的口号吗? 它就是"同一个世界，同一个梦想"。

Each host country creates its own mascot and song. The Olympic mascot /'mæskət/ is often an animal with a national feature /'fi:tʃə/. The Olympic songs are always popular around the world. Do you remember the song "You and Me"? It touched⑤ many people's hearts.

每个主办国家创造自己的吉祥物，创作自己的歌曲。奥运会吉祥物经常是代表一个国家特点的动物。奥运会歌曲总会在全世界流行。你还记得《我和你》这首歌吗? 它打动了许多人的心。

Some things have stayed the same, and some things have changed over the years. But one thing has always been the same—to do the best and to compete fairly /'feəlɪ/. 一些东西保持不变，而一些东西这些年已经改变。但有一件事始终是相同的——做到最好和公平竞争。

Dig In 拓展

There are also the Paralympic Games, which have been held alongside every Olympics since 1988. It grew from a small gathering of British World War Ⅱ veterans in 1948 to one of the largest sporting events of the 21st century. Did you know there are also Winter Olympics and Special Olympics? 自 1988 年以来，每届奥运会之后还会举办残奥会。它从 1948 年第二次世界大战的英国老兵的小聚会发展成为 21 世纪最大的体育竞赛之一。你知道还有冬奥会和特奥会吗?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Look at the items below. Are they the same or different in every Olympics? Read the lesson and write "S" for "same" or "D"for "different". 看下面所列项目。它们在每届奥运会上是相同还是不同? 阅读课文,写上"S",代表"相同",或写上"D",代表"不同"。

1. The Olympic slogan 奥运会口号 ( )
2. The Olympic torch 奥运会火炬 ( )
3. The Olympic mascot 奥运会吉祥物 ( )
4. The Olympic symbol 奥运会标志 ( )
5. The Olympic motto 奥运会格言 ( )
6. The Olympic song 奥运会歌曲 ( )

2 Underline the comparative and superlative adjectives and adverbs.

在形容词和副词的比较级和最高级下面画线。

1. Danny says that supper is more important than a world record.
   丹尼说晚饭比一项世界纪录更重要。
2. Mine flew farther than Jenny's airplane, but Brian's flew the farthest.
   我的飞机比詹妮的飞机飞得远,但是布赖恩的飞机飞得最远。
3. My friend Sandra won the record for the largest book.
   我的朋友桑德拉赢得了最大书籍的纪录。
4. The ancient Greeks wanted to have the best athletes compete against each other.
   古希腊人想让最好的运动员来互相竞争。
5. Fewer countries take part in the Winter Olympics than in the Summer Olympics.
   与夏季奥运会相比,参加冬季奥运会的国家会少一些。

3 Since 1984, each host city of the Olympic Games has invented a slogan to show the value of the Olympic spirit and express the common wishes of people all over the world. Search the Internet and fill in the chart.

从 1984 年以来,每届奥运会的主办城市都创造一个口号来展示奥林匹克精神的价值,表达全世界人们的共同愿望。从网上查找资料并填写表格。

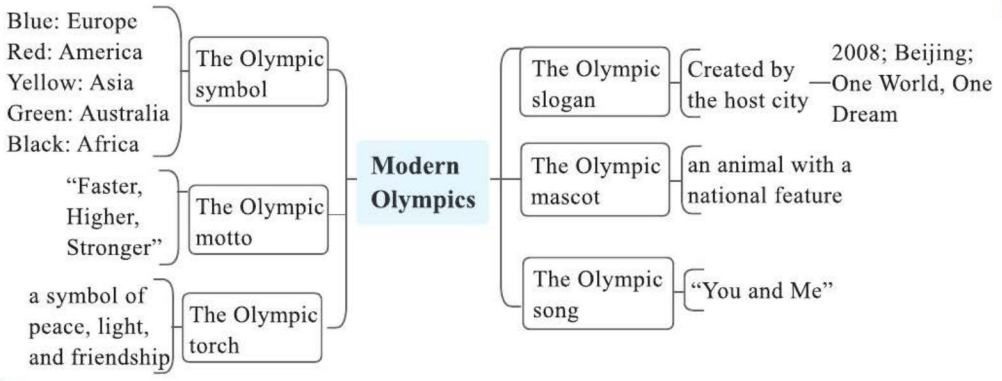
Year 年份	2012	2008	2004	2000	1996
Host City 主办城市	London 伦敦	Beijing 北京	_____	Sydney 悉尼	_____
Slogan 口号	Inspire a Generation 激励一代人	_____	Welcome Home 欢迎回家	_____	The Celebration of the Century 世纪庆典

4 Can you find more things that are the same or different in the modern Olympics? Talk with your partner.

在现代奥运会中,你能找出更多相同的东西或不同的东西吗? 和你的同伴讨论一下。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

①for example 通常在句中作插入语，可从说明任何成分，可位于句首、句中或句末，用逗号将其与句子的其他部分隔开。

②such as 通常位于它所引出的同位语之前。

stand for 不能用于被动语态，也不能用于进行时态。

represent 作动词，意为"代表"，多指代表某人或某个团体，指实体代表。

★For example, the Olympic symbol is always the same.

① for example 例如　敲黑板 中考高频考点，牢记！

e.g. What would you do if you met a wild animal—a lion, for example?

如果你遇上野兽，例如一头狮子，你会做什么?

拓展：such as 意为"例如"，一般只能引出同位语，而且只能是名词性同位语。

e.g. The farm grows various kinds of crops such as wheat, corn, cotton and rice. 这个农场种植各种各样的庄稼，例如麦子、玉米、棉花和稻米。

★The five rings stand for the five continents united together.

② stand for 代表

e.g. NBA stands for National Basketball Association.

NBA 代表（美国）全国篮球协会。

Mr. Green represented the company at the meeting.

格林先生代表公司出席了会议。

考题在线 1 用括号内所给短语将句子译成英语。 [潍坊]

EQ 代表什么? (stand for)

_____

点拨：此句是一个特殊疑问句，EQ 是一个名词，stand for 是动词词组，助动词用 does。

★..., the red ring for America, ...

America → American（形容词）
American → Americans（名词）

③ America /ə'merɪkə/ 美洲；美国

e.g. I bought some wampum from North America.

我从北美买了一些贝壳串珠。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Bill Gates is an American citizen. 比尔·盖茨是一个美国公民。

考题在线 2 In order to improve her listening skills, Wang Ling often listens to English news and watches _____ (美国的) films.[云南]

点拨：句意：为了提高她的听力技巧，王玲经常听英语新闻，看美国电影。

★ **And of course, the torch—a symbol of peace, light and friendship—is always there.**

④ **peace** /pi:s/ *n.*(a situation or a period of time in which there is no war or violence in a country or an area) 和平

e.g. We are all eager for peace. 我们都渴望和平。

She lives a peaceful life. 她过着平静的生活。

They simply can't seem to live in peace with each other. 他们好像就是不能和睦相处。

peaceful adj. 和平的；爱好和平的；平静的

常用短语：
① in peace 和平地，安静地，宁静地，安详地；
② peace of mind 内心的宁静，神安气定；
③ at peace 处于和平状态，处于平静的状态。

★ **It touched many people's hearts.**

⑤ **touch** /tʌtʃ/ *v.* 打动 接代词作宾语

e.g. The story touched all of us. 这个故事使我们大家感动。

Their poverty touched his heart. 他们的穷困触动了他的心。

接名词作宾语

考题在线答案 1. What does EQ stand for ? 2. American

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见292页)

一、选择单词或短语并用其适当形式填空

peace America stay the same stand for touch my heart

1. Are you from _____?
2. What does "UN" _____?
3. The two countries have been at _____ for many years.
4. The signs in the park _____ all the time.
5. The song "You and Me" _____.

二、单项选择

6. WTO stands _____ the World Trade Organization.
   A. on B. of C. for D. in
7. There are ten _____ students in my class.
   A. America B. Americas
   C. American D. Americans
8. Please remember _____ your notebook here tomorrow. [泸州]
   A. brings B. brought
   C. bringing D. to bring
9. She just felt the same _____ he did.
   A. as B. for C. in D. on
10. I like to eat something sweet, _____ candy, ice-cream and chocolate.
    A. such as B. even though
    C. so that D. as well as

三、连词成句

11. think, do, the, what, you, in, same, Olympics, is, the
    _____?
12. Olympic, the, symbol, the, always, is, same
    _____?
13. touched, which, heart, song, your
    _____?
14. an, mascot, often, animal, Olympic, is, the
    _____.
15. there, many, the, Americans, in, are, room
    _____?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 35 The Dream Team

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Which sports team do you like best? Why? 你最喜欢哪个体育队？为什么？
- What is the most important part of a team? 一个团队中什么是最重要的部分？

At the 1992 Olympics, the U. S. basketball team defeated ① /dɪ'fi:tɪd/ all the other teams and won the gold ② /gəʊld/ medal /'medl/. People called them the Dream Team. They had a great influence ③ /'ɪnfluəns/ on people everywhere—not just in the Olympic Games. A dream team is considered to be the greatest team in its field. There are many dream teams in the world of sports. Canada's dream team plays on ice—it's the country's ice hockey team. For Brazil /brə'zɪl/, it might be the men's volleyball or soccer team. 在1992年奥运会上，美国篮球队打败其他所有队，赢得了金牌。人们称他们为梦之队。他们对人们极大的影响无处不在——不仅仅是在奥运会上。一个梦之队被认为是其领域内最强大的团队。在体育界有很多梦之队。加拿大的梦之队在冰上比赛——它就是国家冰上曲棍球队。对巴西来说，梦之队可能是男子排球队或足球队。

What is China's dream team? Many people would say that it's the diving /'daɪvɪŋ/ team. The team won the most gold medals for China in the most recent Olympics. China also has dream teams in ping-pong and badminton /'bædmɪntən/. Time after time, these teams have won gold medals for China. 什么是中国的梦之队呢？许多人可能会说是跳水队。这个队在最近的奥运会上为中国赢得的金牌最多。中国的乒乓球和羽毛球也有梦之队。一次又一次，这些团队为中国赢得了金牌。

However, there is more to a dream team than winning gold medals. A dream team has not only ④ the best players and the best coach ⑤ /kəʊtʃ/, but also the best team spirit. All of the players must work hard and do their best ⑥ for the team. By working together, they perform better, and they never give up. That's what makes a dream team! 然而，想成为一个梦之队，并不仅仅是要赢得金牌。一个梦之队不仅仅要有最好的运动员和最好的教练，还要有最好的团队精神。所有运动员都必须刻苦训练，为团队尽自己最大的努力。通过集体训练，他们表现得更好，而且他们永不放弃。那就是为什么一个团队会成为梦之队！

Learning Tip 学习提示

Other than the dream teams mentioned above, do you know of any other dream teams?
除了以上提到的梦之队，你还知道其他的梦之队吗？
running 跑步　soccer 足球　gymnastics 体操
basketball 篮球　swimming 游泳

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and answer the questions.
阅读课文并回答问题。

1. What is the dream team of the U. S.?
   美国的梦之队是什么？
2. Is the diving team China's only dream team? 跳水队是中国唯一的梦之队吗？
3. What does a dream team have?
   一个梦之队应具备什么？
4. How can the players perform better?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

运动员们如何才能表现更好?

2 Complete the clues and do the crossword.

补全提示并完成字谜。

ACROSS 横向

1. The weather has a big i_____ on agriculture. 天气对农业有很大_____。

DOWN 纵向

2. Lin Dan, a famous Chinese player, started playing b_____ at the age of nine. 林丹，中国著名运动员，九岁时，开始打_____。
3. Her hair is so blond that it almost looks like g_____. 她的头发如此金黄以至于看起来几乎就像_____。
4. We have been practicing *Snow White* for over a month.We are going to p_____ it tomorrow. 我们排练《白雪公主》已经一个多月了。我们明天将要_____它。
5. The c_____ held a team meeting to discuss the reasons why they failed._____开了一个团体会议来讨论他们失败的原因。

3 Complete the passage with the correct forms of the given words.

用所给单词的正确形式完成短文。

Not every famous athlete is the one who goes the _____ (fast) or the _____ (high). Sometimes people win in other ways. In 1992, at the Barcelona Olympics, Canadian rower Silken Laumann came third in a race. But some people thought her bronze medal was as _____ (good) as the gold medal. Just before the Olympic race, she was seriously injured. But she didn't want to miss the Olympics, so she practiced as soon as she got out of the hospital. Taking part in the Olympics was _____ (important) than winning for her.

并不是每一位著名运动员就是跑得_____(快)或者跳得_____(高)的那个人。有时候，人们会以其他方式赢得比赛。1992 年，在巴塞罗那奥运会上，加拿大桨手西肯·劳曼在比赛中获得第三名。但是有些人认为她的铜牌和金牌一样_____(好)。就在奥运会比赛前，她受了很重的伤。但她不想错过奥运会，所以她一出院就训练。对于她来说，参加奥运会比赢得比赛_____(重要)。

4 Work in groups. Take turns acting out a sport. While one group member acts, the others try to guess what sport it is.

小组活动。轮流来表演一个体育项目。当一个小组成员表演时，其他成员尽量猜一猜是哪项体育运动。

You can ask the following questions: Is it played inside or outside? Is it on land or in water? Is it a solo event or a team event? 你可以问以下问题：它是室内运动还是户外运动？它是陆地运动还是水上运动？它是单人项目还是团体项目？

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★ At the 1992 Olympics, the U. S. basketball team defeated all the other teams and won the gold medal.

辨析：defeat，beat 与 win

① defeat /dɪ'fi:t/ *v.* 战胜；击败

① defeat 战胜；击败，其后的宾语通常是比赛或战斗的对手，强调结果。

e.g. The enemies were defeated in a battle. 敌人在一场战斗中被击败了。

He defeated the champion in three rounds. 他三回合击败了冠军。

They beat the enemies. 他们打败了敌人。

She won the race. 她赢了比赛。

② beat 打败，后接的宾语也是比赛或战斗的对手，强调结果，常可以和 defeat 互换。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

③ win 赢；获胜，其后常接比赛或战斗方面的名词作宾语。

考题在线 1 No one can _____ us except ourselves.

A. defeat　　B. defeated　　C. win　　D. won

点拨：采用语法判定法。句意：没有人能打败我们，除了我们自己。“打败”的宾语是表示“人”的词时，用 defeat 或 beat；句中的情态动词后跟动词原形。

② **gold** /gəʊld/ *n.* (money, jewellery, etc. that is made of gold) 金币；金饰品；黄金制品

n. 金子

e.g. All that glitters is not gold. 闪光的并非都是金子。

adj. 金色的

The tree leaves turn gold in autumn. 秋天树叶变成金黄色。

★ They had a great influence on people everywhere—not just in the Olympic Games.

have an influence on sb./sth. 结构，意为“对某人/某事有影响”。

③ **influence** /'ɪnflʊəns/ *n.* 影响；作用

e.g. Mr. Wang had a great influence on me. 王老师对我的影响很大。

The news had an influence on her.=The news had an effect on her. 这条消息对她有影响。

可以互换

influence 还可作动词，意为“影响；对……起作用”。

What you read influences your thinking.

你读的东西对你的思想有影响。

★ A dream team has not only the best players and the best coach, but also the best team spirit.

④ [高频]**not only…but also…** 不但……而且……

敲黑板 中考高频考点。牢记！

not only...but also... 可连接相同的句子成分或并列句。当其连接两个并列主语时，句子的谓语动词遵循“就近原则”，即谓语动词的形式与 but also 后的主语在人称和数上保持一致。

e.g. He not only speaks English fluently but also writes English well.

(连接谓语) 他不但英语说得很流利，而且写得很好。

He speaks not only English but also French.

(连接宾语) 他不但说英语，而且说法语。

Not only I but also Tom is interested in watching TV.

(连接主语) 不仅我，而且汤姆也对看电视感兴趣。

Not only does my sister like English, but also she likes maths.

我的姐姐不但喜欢英语，而且喜欢数学。

当 not only...but also... 连接两个分句并且 not only 位于句首时，not only 分句要用倒装结构。

考题在线 2 Not only Jack but also I _____ crazy about the football match. [新疆]

A. am　　B. is　　C. are　　D. be

⑤ **coach** /kəʊtʃ/ *n.* (a person who trains a person or team in sport) 教练

e.g. Tony Woodcock has joined the team as a coach.

托尼·伍德科克加盟该队担任教练。

★ All of the players must work hard and do their best for the team.

⑥ **do one's best** 尽某人最大努力

同义短语 try one's best

e.g. You should do/try your best to learn English well.

你应尽力把英语学好。

考题在线答案 1. A　2. A

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见292页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成句子

1. The price of _____ (黄金制品) is falling this year.
2. They are _____ (教练) of our team.
3. Our trainer had a strong _____ (影响) on the team.
4. I believe nothing can _____ (击败) you.
5. I don't think Scotland will _____ (赢).

二、单项选择

6. _____ his partner _____ he has been to Paris, so they know Paris well. [恩施]
   A. Neither; nor B. Not only; but also
   C. Either; or
7. Not only you but also he _____ playing basketball in our school.
   A. like B. likes C. liking D. to like
8. I do not know whether I can win, but I will _____.
   A. work B. come on
   C. do my best D. effort
9. What parents say and do has a strong _____ on the development of children.
   A. change B. stress
   C. progress D. influence
10. —Did your school _____ the basketball match?
    —No. We were _____.
    A. win; defeated B. defeat; lost
    C. defeat; won D. lose; defeated

Lesson 36 Classroom Olympics

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文·导读

Pre-reading (读前)

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Would you like to hold a classroom Olympics?
  你想举办一次班级奥运会吗?
- What events would your classroom Olympics have?
  你们的班级奥运会会有哪些比赛项目?

课文朗读

While-reading (读中)

- Who won first place in the jump rope event? 谁在跳绳项目中获得了第一?
- Why was Brian sad? What place did he come?
  布赖恩为什么伤心? 他排了多少名?

Dear Li Ming, 亲爱的李明:

This week in school, we had our own classroom Olympics! Our class had five different events—jump rope, long jump, sit-ups, push-ups and "Jump over the Dinosaur". Everyone① competed in each event, one by one.

这周在学校,我们举行了自己的班级奥运会! 我们班有五个不同的比赛项目——跳绳,

导读批注

批 体裁: 应用文

批 考点:
(画"～"处)
找文章主题句

批 背景:
when: this week
who: Jenny's class
what: classroom Olympics

批 词语赏析:
(画"～"处)
everyone 和 each 的应用准确地表达了此次运动会参加人员及参加项目。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

跳远，仰卧起坐，俯卧撑和“跳恐龙”。每个人都逐个参加了每个项目。



The events were fun! Sandra won first place in the jump rope /rəʊp/ event. She jumped 180 times in one minute without stopping. Lisa won second place in the long jump. She jumped very far, but Kim jumped farther. 这些项目都很有趣！桑德拉在跳绳比赛中赢得了第一名。她在一分钟内不间断地跳了 180 次。莉萨在跳远比赛中获得了第二名。她跳得很远，但金跳得更远。

But my favourite event was Danny's. He called it “Jump over the Dinosaur”. It was a race ② /reɪs/. Each person walked on some paper pizzas, climbed through a cardboard donut and then jumped over a toy dinosaur. We used a watch to see who was the fastest. 但是我最喜欢的项目是丹尼的。他称它为“跳恐龙”。它是一项速度竞赛。每个人走过一些纸比萨，爬过一个纸板炸面圈，然后跳过一个玩具恐龙。我们用手表计时来看谁最快。

What was the result ③ /rɪ'zʌlt/? Danny won the race! None ④ /nʌn/ of us could catch him! But I was close ⑤. I was only two seconds slower than Danny. 结果如何呢？丹尼赢得了这次比赛！我们当中没有人能赶上他！但是我紧随其后。我只比丹尼慢两秒钟。

批 句子：（画“ ”处）用疑问句设置悬念，引起读者注意，增加阅读兴趣。

Brian was sad because he lost. He came in twentieth ⑥ /'twentɪəθ/. He did his best, but he kept falling off the pizzas! 布赖恩很伤心因为他输了。他排第 20 名。他尽了自己最大的努力，但总是从比萨上掉下来！

Jenny 詹妮

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔☞（见 207 页）

批 词语赏析：（画“ ”处）only 一词运用得恰如其分，表达了 Jenny 和 Danny 最终结果上的接近。

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and answer the questions. 阅读课文并回答问题。

1. How many events did Jenny's classmates invent for the classroom Olympics? What are they?
   在班级奥运会中，詹妮的同班同学们发明了多少种比赛项目？它们是什么？
2. What things did they need to prepare for Danny's event? 他们需要为丹尼的比赛项目准备什么东西？
3. Who was the champion of the “Jump over the Dinosaur” event? 谁是“跳恐龙”这个项目的冠军？
4. How did Brian feel? Why? 布赖恩感觉如何？为什么？
5. What did Jenny think of the events? 詹妮觉得这些比赛项目如何？

2 Fill in the blanks with the words in the box. 用方框内的单词填空。

none 没有一个　result 结果　rope 绳子　event 比赛项目

1. A/An _____ is a race or a competition. 一个_____就是一项比赛或竞争。
2. A/An _____ is a very thick strong string. 一根_____就是一条又粗又结实的线。
3. The accident was a/an _____ of bad driving.
   这次事故是不良驾驶的_____。
4. He went to many bookstores, but _____ of them had the book he wanted.
   他去了许多家书店，但是它们中_____有他想要的书。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3 Look at the table and make sentences following the examples. 看表格并按下列例子造句。

Event/Name 项目 / 姓名	Jump Rope 跳绳	Long Jump 跳远	Sit-ups 仰卧起坐	Push-ups 俯卧撑	Jump over the Dinosaur 跳恐龙
Jenny 詹妮		1.87 m1.87 米	40/min 40 个 / 分		25 seconds 25 秒
Sandra 桑德拉	180/min (winner)180 次 / 分 (冠军)		45/min 45 个 / 分		28 seconds 28 秒
Lisa 莉萨		1.97 m1.97 米	39/min 39 个 / 分		
Kim 金	169/min 169 次 / 分	2.01 m(winner) 2.01 米 (冠军)			30 seconds 30 秒
Danny 丹尼	135/min 135 次 / 分			42/min 42 个 / 分	23 seconds (winner) 23 秒 (冠军)
Brian 布赖恩	155/min 155 次 / 分			46/min 46 个 / 分	40 seconds 40 秒

Example：例子：

Lisa jumped farther than Jenny in the long jump. 在跳远比赛中，莉萨比詹妮跳得远。

Danny was the fastest in the "Jump over the Dinosaur"event. 在"跳恐龙"比赛中，丹尼是最快的。

4 Work in groups of four to design an event. What will you need? What will the rules be? Talk about it with your group members.

四人一组来设计一个比赛项目。你们会需要什么？规则将会是什么？和你的小组成员讨论一下。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用

★Everyone competed in each event, one by one.

敲黑板 高频考点，牢记！

① [高频] **everyone** /'evriwʌn/*pron.* 人人；所有人

e.g. She gave everyone a piece of paper. 她给每个人一张纸。

Everyone in our class likes reading. 我们班里人人都喜欢读书。

He is such a good egg that everyone likes him.

他是一个大好人，人人都喜欢他。

Every one of them wants to go shopping.

他们每个人都想去购物。

考题在线 1 _____ needs one or two close friends to share his happiness and sadness with. [盐城]

A. Someone　　B. No one

C. None　　D. Everyone

点拨：考查不定代词辨析。句意：每个人都需要一两个亲密的朋友来分享他的幸福和分担他的忧愁。横线后面的事情是正常人都需要的，故用不定代词 everyone 作主语。

•考点批注

相当于 everybody，可作主语或宾语。

everyone 作主语时，谓语动词要用单数形式。

辨析：everyone 与 every one

① everyone 作不定代词，只能指人，后不能跟介词 of。

② every one 既可指人也可指物，后面可以跟介词 of。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★ It was a race.

② **race** /reɪs/ *n.* (a competition between people, animals, vehicles, etc. to see which one is the faster or fastest) 赛跑；速度竞赛

e.g. In our school sports meet, I broke the record in the 100-metre race.
在我们学校的运动会上，我打破了 100 米赛跑的纪录。

★ What was the result?

result 的常用短语：
the result of……的结果
as a result of 作为……的结果，由于
as a result 结果

③ **result** /rɪˈzʌlt/ *n.* 结果；成绩

e.g. One result of the accident is that three students were injured.
这起事故的后果之一是有三个学生受伤。

She died as a result of her serious injuries. 她由于受重伤而死亡。

★ None of us could catch him!

none 用于否定三者或三者以上的人或物，其对应词是 all。

④ **none** /nʌn/ *pron.* 一个也没有；毫无

e.g. None of us saw him. 我们谁也没有看见他。

[重点] none 一般要跟 of 连用，表示：没有人；没有任何东西。

知识微课

①none of +复数名词，后面动词用单复数均可。
②none of +不可数名词，后面动词只能用单数。

e.g. None of us enjoy getting up early.
我们当中没有一个人喜欢早起。

None of that money on the table is mine. 桌上没有一分钱是我的。

[易错点] 辨析: no one, none 与 nothing

融黑板 易错点，高频考点，牢记！

no one 单独使用时只用于指人，用作单数。一般用来回答 who 及含 anyone, anybody 的疑问句。	—Who is in the room? 谁在房间里? —No one. 没有人。
none 用于指人或物，可与 of 连用，用作单数或复数。一般用来回答 how many, how much 引导的疑问句。	—How many students are there in the classroom? 教室里有多少学生? —None. 一个也没有。
nothing 用于指物，不与 of 连用，用作单数。一般用于回答含 anything 的一般疑问句及 what 引导的特殊疑问句。	—What is in the box? 盒子里有什么? —Nothing. 什么也没有。

No one can call back yesterday.
昨日不复来。



考题在线 2 —I tried several ways to work out the math problem, but _____ of them worked.
—Never give up. I believe you'll make it. [鄂州]
A. all B. each C. none D. neither

点拨：all 代指三者或三者以上，表示肯定意义；each 指两个或两个以上的人或事物中每个，表肯定意义；none 指三者或三者以上，表示否定意义；neither 指两者，表示否定意义。根据“several 几个；若干”判断数量是三者或三者以上。

★ But I was close.

⑤ **close** /kləʊs/ *adj.* & *adv.* 亲密的；接近 常与 to 搭配

e.g. Beijing is close to Tianjin. 北京距离天津近。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Please stand close to me. 请靠近我站着。

Close your eyes. 闭上你的眼睛。

The road was closed to traffic for two days. 这条路被封了两天。

My close friend sits close to me. We close our eyes waiting at a closed door.

我亲密的朋友靠近我坐着。我们闭上眼睛在一个紧闭的门那儿等。

close v.
关；合拢；停业
close up 关门停业
closed adj.
关闭，表一种状态，
反义词为 open

考题在线 3 I always share my happiness with my _____ friends.

A. close B. closed C. closing D. to close

点拨：close 当动词讲时，意为“关上”；当形容词讲时，意为“亲密的，接近”；closed 形容词，“关着的”；closing 形容词，“结尾的”。根据 share my happiness，可知与亲密的朋友分享自己的快乐。

★**He came in twentieth.**

它是 twenty 的序数词。在英语中：20~90 之间整十的序数词由对应的基数词变末尾的 y 为 ie，再加 -th 构成。

⑥ **twentieth** /ˈtwentɪəθ/ *num.* 第二十

e.g. thirty→thirtieth 第三十；fifty→fiftieth 第五十；sixty→sixtieth 第六十。

考题在线答案 1. D 2. C 3. A

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见 292 页）

一、选词并用其适当形式填空

none	rope	race	result	twentieth

1. Sam fell behind in the _____.
2. _____ of us like to go skating in winter.
3. Lucy was nervous before she knew the _____ of the exam.
4. The _____ was too long, so we cut it in half.
5. The Space Age began in the _____ century.

二、单项选择

6. —Morning, class. Is _____ here?
—No, sir. Tom is absent. [武汉]
A. anyone B. everyone
C. none D. someone

7. In the school, I asked one boy and two girls about the name of their headmaster, but _____ of them could help me. [内江]
A. neither B. none C. both D. all

8. Nobody could solve this difficult problem alone _____ others' help. [德州]
A. with B. for C. without D. from

9. No one _____ at home yesterday.
A. is B. was C. are D. were

10. My home is _____ the school, so I often walk home.
A. close B. close to
C. far D. far from

三、根据汉语完成句子

11. 这个小孩从桌子上摔下来，摔伤了胳膊。
The child _____ _____ the table and hurt his arm.

12. 足球比赛的结果正在广播电台播报。
The _____ _____ the football match is being broadcast on the radio.

13. 我们中没有一个人去过国外。
_____ _____ us has been abroad.

14. 那个婴儿不停地哭喊着。
The baby kept _____ and _____.

15. 布赖恩很难过，因为他排第二十名。
Brian was very sad because he _____ _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit Review

I. 课文原文、译文

Building Your Vocabulary 构建你的词汇库

Ⅰ. Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words. The first letter is given.

用单词的正确形式填空。首字母已给出。

1. Skipping is good exercise. R_____ are cheap and light enough to carry everywhere.
跳绳是很好的运动。_____便宜又足够轻可以带到任何地方。

2. She kept running for half a year and lost ten k_____ in weight. 她一直坚持跑步半年了，体重减掉十_____。

3. China won 38 g_____ medals in the 2012 London Olympic Games.
在2012年伦敦奥林匹克运动会上，中国赢得了38枚_____牌。

4. Brian thought of some great ideas for the classroom Olympics, but n_____ of them were accepted. 布赖恩为班级奥运会想出了一些好主意。但是它们当中_____被采纳。

5. My favourite book is *War and P*_____.
我最喜欢的书是《战争与_____》。

Ⅱ. Complete the passage with the correct words. 用正确的单词完成短文。

One day, the animals were holding a sports meet in the forest. There was a 100-metre _____ between a tortoise and a hare. At first, the hare was very happy because he thought he could run _____ than the tortoise. A few times during the race, he stopped to rest. The tortoise knew that he couldn't run as fast as the hare. But he didn't _____ up. He did his _____ to catch up with the hare. He ran and ran. In the end, the tortoise _____! All the animals jumped up and down to cheer for the tortoise! 有一天，动物们正在森林里举行一场运动会。在乌龟和兔子之间有一个100米的_____。刚开始，兔子非常高兴，因为他认为他会比乌龟跑得_____。在比赛中，他几次停下来休息。乌龟知道他不可能和兔子跑得一样快。但他并没有_____。他尽自己_____来追赶兔子。他跑呀跑呀。最后，乌龟_____！所有的动物都跳上跳下地为乌龟欢呼喝彩！

Grammar in Use 语法运用

Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words. 用单词的正确形式填空。

1. Compare this new computer with the old one, you will see which is _____ (good).
把这台新电脑与那台旧电脑进行比较，你就会发现哪台_____(好)。

2. Lesson 1 is much _____ (easy) than Lesson 2. 第一课比第二课_____(简单)得多。

3. Danny jumps _____ (far) in my class.
在我的班级里丹尼跳得_____(远)。

4. There's nothing _____ (bad) than going out with wet hair in the cold.
没有比在寒冷的天气里顶着湿头发出去_____(糟糕)的事情了。

5. The doctor advises me to eat _____ (little) meat. 医生建议我吃_____(少)肉。

Listening and Speaking 听力与会话

Ⅰ. Listen to the dialogues and tick the correct answers.

听对话并勾出正确答案。



1. How many seconds did Zhuang Yong take?
庄泳用时多少秒?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

□ 54.48 seconds.54.48 秒。

□ 54.64 seconds.54.64 秒。

□ 54.46 seconds.54.46 秒。

2. What kind of athlete is the special guest, Jeff Johnson?

特别嘉宾杰夫·约翰逊是哪一领域的运动员?

□ He is a basketball player.

他是一位篮球运动员。

□ He is a hockey player.

他是一位曲棍球运动员。

□ He is a volleyball player.

他是一位排球运动员。

3. What does the man play while riding his bicycle backwards?

当这个人倒骑自行车时，他在表演什么?

□ He plays the violin. 他在拉小提琴。

□ He plays the piano. 他在弹钢琴。

□ He plays the guitar. 他在弹吉他。

Ⅱ. Make up a dialogue with your partner.

与你的同伴一起编写一段对话。

Task tips: 任务提示：

Do you play any sports? What sports do you like to watch? What sports are you good at? How often do you exercise? Are you a member of a sports team? 你做运动吗? 你喜欢观看什么运动项目? 你擅长什么运动? 你多长时间锻炼一次? 你是体育队的一员吗?

Example: 例子：

A: I see you are a regular runner. Have you taken part in any competitions?

我看你经常跑步。你参加过一些比赛吗?

B: Yes. Our school held a sports meet last week. I competed in the 800-metre race. 是的。上周我们学校举办了一场运动会。我参加了 800 米赛跑。

A: What was the result? 结果如何?

B: I was the champion. I practice running every day. Which sports do you like best?

我是冠军。我每天练习跑步。你最喜欢什么运动?

A: I like watching basketball games, but I can't play very well. My classmate, Liu Lei, is the best player in our class. He is on our school team.

我喜欢看篮球比赛，但我打得不太好。我的同班同学刘雷是我们班最好的运动员。他是我们校队的。

B: Sports are very important. We can't do any work well without good health. 运动非常重要。没有好身体，我们就无法做好任何工作。

A: You are right. We can start exercising together. 你说得对。我们可以一起开始锻炼。

B: OK. 好的。

Putting It All Together 综合训练

Ⅰ. Read the passage and answer the questions.

读短文并回答问题。

China Rising at the Winter Olympics

中国在冬季奥运会上崛起

Fewer countries take part in the Winter Olympics than in the Summer Olympics. It's easy to understand why. In many countries, the weather is too hot for sports such as skiing and skating. 参加冬季奥运会的国家相比夏季奥运会较少。这很容易理解是为什么。在很多国家对于像滑雪和滑冰这样的运动项目来讲，天气太热了（而无法举行）。

China is a newcomer to the winter games. In 1980, China sent athletes to the Winter Olympic Games for the first time. At the 1992 Winter Games, Chinese speed skater Ye Qiaobo won China's first Olympic medals—silver in the 500-metre and in the 1 000-metre speed-skating events. 中国是才参加冬奥会的。在 1980 年，中国首次派运动员参加冬奥会。在 1992 年冬奥会上，中国速滑运动员叶乔波在 500 米和 1000 米速滑运动项目中首次为中国赢得奥林匹克奖牌——银牌。

China is now a world power in speed skating. Yang Yang won China's first gold

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

medal in the 2002 Winter Olympics. China is also strong in figure skating. At the 2010 Games in Vancouver, Canada, China finally won gold and silver medals in pair skating. This made China the undisputed champion of the event. 现在中国在速滑方面达到了世界级实力。在 2002 年冬奥会上杨扬为中国赢得首枚金牌。中国的花样滑冰项目实力也很强大。在 2010 年加拿大温哥华冬奥会上，中国最终在双人滑冰项目中赢得金牌和银牌。这使中国成为这个项目不容置疑的冠军。

1. Why do fewer countries take part in the Winter Olympics?
   为什么参加冬奥会的国家较少?
2. When did China first send athletes to the Winter Olympics?
   中国何时第一次派运动员参加冬奥会?
3. Who won the first gold medal for China in the Winter Olympics?
   谁在冬奥会上为中国赢得首枚金牌?

II. Write, Draw and Guess.

写一写，画一画并猜一猜。

Divide the class into two teams.

把全班分成两队。

- Each team needs ten blank cards. On each card, the teams write a sentence using comparative or superlative adjectives or adverbs. (For example: This tree is bigger than the other one. This pencil is the longest.) 每队需要十张空白卡片。在每张卡片上，队员们用形容词或副词的比较级或最高级写下一个句子。(例如：这棵树比另一棵树大。这支铅笔是最长的。)
- The two teams trade their cards. One by one, the team members draw pictures on the blackboard to represent their sentences. The teammates try to guess what the sentence says. 两队交换卡片。队员们一个一个地在黑板上画图来表示句子的含义。队友们尽力去猜想句子所要表达的含义。
- The team that gets the most correct answers wins! 得到正确答案最多的队获胜!

Self-Evaluation 自我评价

Find more examples from this unit. Then mark your stars.

从本单元中找出更多例子。然后标出你的星级。

I. Talking about the Olympics and Records 谈论奥林匹克运动会和纪录

China hosted the 29th Olympic Games. 中国举办了第二十九届奥运会。

I can talk about the Olympics and records in English. 我可以用英语来谈论奥运会及纪录。

II. Comparative and Superlative Adjectives and Adverbs 形容词和副词的比较级和最高级

Mine flew farther than Jenny's airplane, but Brian's flew the farthest. 我的飞机比詹妮的飞机飞得远，但布赖恩的飞机飞得最远。

I can use comparative and superlative adjectives and adverbs properly.

我可以正确使用形容词和副词的比较级和最高级。

III. Object Clause 宾语从句

Do you know what the record is? 你知道纪录是什么吗?

I can use object clauses properly.

我能恰当使用宾语从句。

Good Luck to You! 祝你好运!

Do your best! 尽你最大的努力!

Don't give up! 不要放弃!

Swim as fast as you can! 尽可能快地游泳!

Good luck to you! 祝你好运!

Good luck to you! 祝你好运!

Make your country proud! 使你的国家自豪!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

We believe in you! 我们相信你!

Do your best! 尽你最大的努力!

Dive right in! 立即跳入水中!

Up and down the pool you go!

在游泳池里上下游动!

You've won the race! 你已经赢得比赛!

You've won the race! 你已经赢得比赛!

You have made us proud!

你已经让我们感到骄傲!

We believe in you! 我们相信你!

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

形容词、副词的比较级和最高级

考点1 形容词、副词的比较级和最高级的构成

考向一：规则变化

一般直接在词尾加 -er, -est。	tall—taller—tallest fast—faster—fastest
以不发音的字母 e 结尾的，在词尾加 -r, -st。	nice—nicer—nicest late—later—latest
以“辅音字母 + y”结尾的，把 y 变 i，再加 -er, -est。	easy—easier—easiest early—earlier—earliest
以辅音字母结尾的重读闭音节词，双写最后一个辅音字母，再加 -er, -est。	big—bigger—biggest hot—hotter—hottest
部分双音节词和大多数多音节词，在其前加 more, most。	popular—more popular—most popular delicious—more delicious—most delicious

考向二：[**易错点**] 不规则变化

good, well—better—best

many, much—more—most

bad, badly—worse—worst

far—farther/further—farthest/furthest

little—less—least

考点2 形容词、副词比较级的用法

比较级用于两者之间的比较，常用的句型有：

考向一：[**重点**] “... 形容词 / 副词的比较级 + than...” 意为“……比……”。

考题在线1 —Is French easy to learn?

—No, I think it's _____ than English.

[德阳]

A. more difficult　　B. most difficult

C. difficult　　D. much difficult

点拨：考查形容词的比较级。句意：——法语容易学习吗？——不，我认为它比英语还难学。根据句中的 than，可知应用形容词的比较级。

考向二：[**重点**] “比较级 + than + any other + 单数名词”意为“比其他任何一个……都……”。比较级的形式表示最高级的意思。

e.g. The Yangtze River is longer than any other river in China.

长江比中国其他任何一条河流都长。

考向三：[**重点**] “Which/Who... + 比较级，A or B?” 意为“哪个 / 谁更……，A 还是 B？”

e.g. Which is cheaper, the T-shirt or the shirt? 哪个更便宜，T 恤衫还是衬衫?

考向四：“A... + the + 比较级 + of the two...” 意为“A 是两个……中更……的”。

e.g. She sings the better of the two girls.

她是这两个女孩中唱得比较好的。

考向五：“比较级 + and + 比较级”意为“越来越……”。

e.g. He is more and more interested in physics. 他对物理越来越感兴趣了。

考向六：[**易错点、难点**] “the + 比较级，the + 比较级”，意为“越……，就越……”。

e.g. The more you have, the more you want.

你拥有的越多，想要的就越多。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 2 —Roy never likes junk food.

—Neither do I. That's probably why I'm becoming _____ now. [安顺]

A. healthy and healthy

B. more and more healthily

C. weaker and weaker

D. healthier and healthier

点拨：考查形容词比较级的连用。healthier and healthier 越来越健康。

考点 3 形容词、副词最高级的用法

形容词、副词的最高级用于三者或三者以上的人或事物之间的比较。

其主要句型有：

考向一：[重点] "A... + the + 最高级 + (in/of/among). .."意为"(在某范围之内)A最……"。

e.g. He is the tallest of the three boys.

他是这三个男孩中最高的。

拓展：①of/among 后接范围，表示范围与主语是同类；in 多接地点，与主语不同类。

e.g. She is the cleverest of/among the four girls. 她是这四个女孩中最聪明的。

②形容词最高级前如果没有形容词性物主代词，必须加定冠词 the；但副词的最高级前可以不用 the。

e.g. He sings best in the class.

他在班里唱得最好。

考向二：[重点] "A... + one of + the + 最高级 + 复数名词"意为"A 是最……的……之一"。

e.g. Jay Chou is one of the most popular singers in Taiwan.

周杰伦是台湾最受欢迎的歌手之一。

考题在线 3 Fishing is one of _____ activities among the middle-aged people. [广东]

A. popular B. more popular

C. most popular D. the most popular

点拨：考查形容词最高级。句意：在中年人中，钓鱼是最受人欢迎的活动之一。"one of + the + 最高级 + 可数名词复数"表示"最……中的一个"，所以此空应用形容词最高级。

考向三："...the + 序数词 + 最高级 (+ 名词单数) + in + 范围"，意为"在某范围内是第几……"。

e.g. The Yellow River is the second longest river in our country.

黄河是我国第二长河。

考题在线 4 Mr Smith thought the Century Park was the second _____ in Shanghai.

A. large B. larger

C. largest D. very large

点拨：考查 the + 序数词 + 最高级 (+ 名词单数) + in + 范围。句意：史密斯先生认为世纪公园是上海第二大公园。

考向四："Which/Who...(the) + 最高级，A, B or C?"意为"A、B 和 C，哪个 / 谁最……？"

e.g. Which is the biggest, the sun, the earth or the moon? 太阳、地球和月亮，哪一个最大?

速记小筏：

两者比较 than 相连，三者比较 the 在前。

考点 4 同级比较的用法

考向：[重点、易错点] "as + 形容词或副词原级 + as"意为"和……一样 ……"，表示同级的比较，其否定形式为"not as/so + 形容词或副词原级 + as"意为"……不如……"。

e.g. Mary is as tall as Lily.

玛丽和莉莉一样高。

He doesn't study as/so hard as his brother.

他不如他的哥哥学习努力。

考题在线 5 More and more people have realized that clear waters and green mountains are as _____ as mountains of gold and silver. [福建]

A. central B. special C. valuable

速记小筏：

同级比较用原级，as... as 永不离；若是 not so as，后强前弱不看齐。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. D 3. D 4. C 5. C

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见293页)

听力技巧

数字计算法(数字计算法即在听到文章信息的基础上，理清相关数字之间的关系，通过一定的数学运算得出正确答案的方法。做此类题要善于从数字入手，找出与题干一致的信息，根据提供的数据及内在的关系进行简单的计算和推断。)

课文听力

听力过程

听 Listening and Speaking Ⅰ，完成以下习题

1. How many seconds did Zhuang Yong take to win the women's 100-meter freestyle?
   A. 100.　　B. 5.464.　　C. 54.64.
2. Jeff Johnson played _____ for Canada in the last Olympics.
   A. football　　B. basketball
   C. volleyball
3. What does the man do while playing the guitar?
   A. He rides his bicycle backwards.
   B. He plays football.
   C. He sings.

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

交代了文章体裁

This is a letter from Jenny to Li Ming. In the letter, Jenny told Li Ming her classroom Olympics this week. Jenny's class had five different events. Everyone competed in each event. Sandra won first place in the jump rope event. Lisa won second place in the long jump after Kim. Jenny's favourite event was Danny's "Jump over the Dinosaur". In this race, Danny won. Brian was sad because he lost. But he did his best. All the events were fun!

交代 what

整体评价

单元话题

为了配合“足球进校园”活动，你们班开展了一次主题班会。请你以足球迷的身份，根据下列表格中的要点提示，用英语向同学们介绍足球这项运动并谈谈自己的梦想。 [苏州]

常识	历史悠久，深受喜爱；世界杯4年举行一次
好处	男生女生皆可参加；利于培养团队精神；考生自拟(至少1点)
偶像	梅西，有足球天赋
梦想	考生自拟(至少1点)

注意：1. 词数100左右；

2. 短文须包括所有要点，不要逐词翻译，可适当发挥，使短文连贯、通顺；

3. 短文中不得出现真实的人名、校名等相关信息。

参考词汇：梅西 Messi

审题指导(把握中心，得方向分)

(1) 体裁：记叙文；
(2) 人称：第一人称；
(3) 时态：一般现在时；
(4) 提示：最好用上序数词。

写作技法(学会方法，巧得高分)

“三要点法”介绍运动项目

①喜欢的运动；

②运动的特点、好处；

③自己的感想。

写作模板(学会套路，得基本分)



经典词句(妙用句式，得出彩分)

单词	spirit; player; hold
短语	take part in; is good for; take place; every four years
句子	It is liked by people all over the world. My dream is to become a famous football player like Messi.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Dear classmates,

I'm very excited to hear that China will build 20,000 football-themed schools by 2020.

Football has a very long history. It is liked by people all over the world. The World Cup takes place every four years. Playing football has lots of advantages. First, both boys and girls can take part in it. Second, it helps develop team spirit. What's more, playing football is good for our health.

I'm a football fan. Messi is my hero. He has a gift for playing football. My dream is to become a famous football player like Messi. I hope China will hold the World Cup some day.

Thank you for your attention.

名师点评：

1. 文章采用"三要点法"介绍足球常识、好处和自己的梦想。2. 短文时态采用一般现在时。3. 文章逻辑合理，连贯通顺，语言地道，运用本单元所学短语和句式，体现本文作者灵活运用所学知识的能力。

添彩点：1. 在不强调主语的情况下，恰当使用被动语态，It is liked by people...

2. First, Second, What's more 的运用，描写了足球的好处，并且层层递进。

3. 重点词汇和短语：all over the world（全世界）；take place（举办）。

及听力测试卷

V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见293页）

一、语法专练

1. The bridge between the two islands is _____ one in Shanghai. [上海]

A. long　　B. longer

C. longest　　D. the longest

2. He was advised to eat fewer hamburgers and drink _____ cola to keep fit. [江苏]

A. much　B. more　C. fewer　D. less

3. Beijing is one of _____ cities in China.

A. very beautiful　　B. much beautiful

C. more beautiful　　D. the most beautiful

4. My father thinks writing is as _____ as reading. [葫芦岛]

A. interesting　　B. interested

C. more interesting　　D. more interested

5. —Remember, boys and girls. _____ you work, _____ results you will get.

—We know, Miss Gao.

A. The better; the harder

B. The harder; the better

C. The hard; the better

D. The harder; the good

二、单元知识浓缩

阅读短文，用所给单词或短语的适当形式填空。

start	peace	change	take part in
stay the same		stand for	compete against
find out	every four years		take place

Do you know about the Olympic Games? We do some research and _____[6] a lot of things about the Olympics.

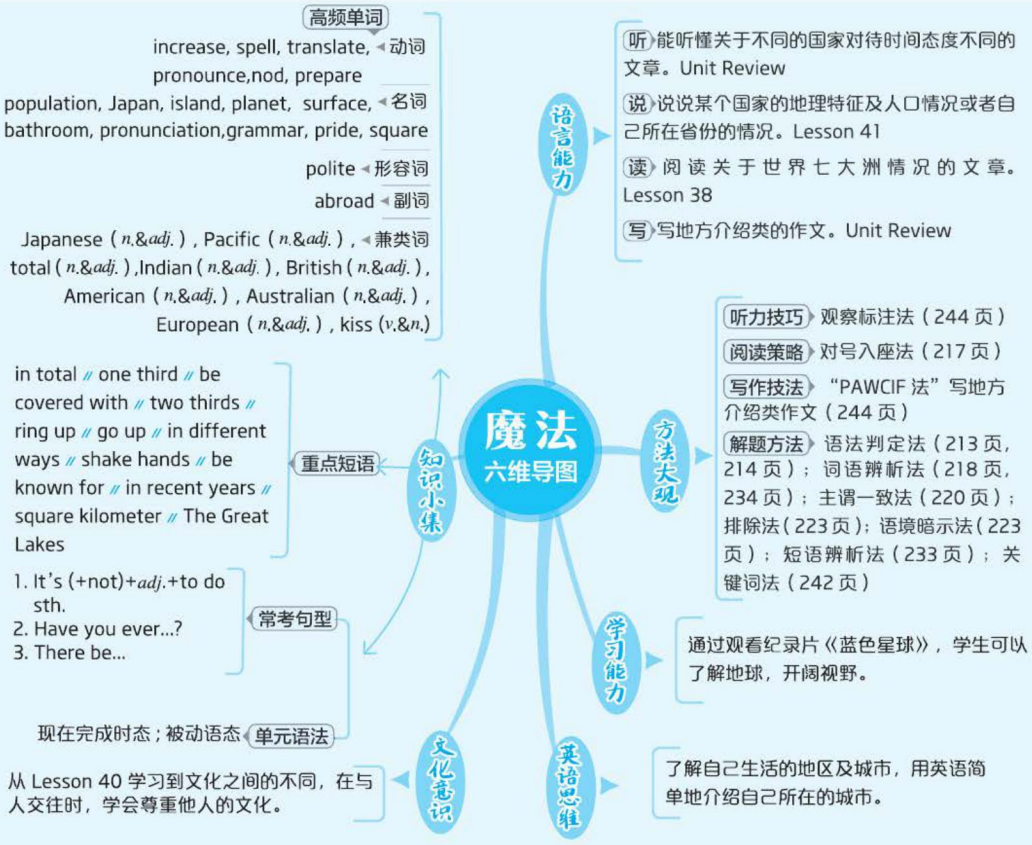
The ancient Olympics _____[7] in 776 BC in Greece. The ancient Greeks wanted to have the best athletes _____[8] each other. They held the event _____[9] in Olympia. But women couldn't _____[10] the games.

The modern Olympics began in 1896 and _____[11] every four years. In the modern Olympics some things are the same, and some things _____[12]. The Olympic symbol is the five rings. They _____[13] the five continents united together. The Olympic motto _____[14] for every Olympics. And the torch—a symbol of _____[15], light and friendship—is always there.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 7 Know Our World





记忆大师

Lesson 37

必背单词

1. **population** *n.* 人口
2. **abroad** *adv.* 到国外；在国外→ go abroad 去国外
   → be abroad 在国外
   → at home and abroad 国内外
3. **Japan** 日本→ Japanese *n.* 日语；日本人 *adj.* 日语的；日本人的
4. **island** *n.* 岛；岛屿
5. **Pacific** *n.* & *adj.* 太平洋（的）

必背短语

6. can't wait to go 迫不及待地想去

必背句子

7. I think **travelling** is a good way **to** learn geography. 我觉得旅游是学习地理的一种好方法。
8. No, but maybe I will go to Japan **one day**. 没有，但是可能有一天我会去日本。

Lesson 38

必背单词

1. **planet** *n.* 行星 →star *n.* 恒星
2. **total** *n.* 总计；总数 *adj.* 总的；总计的

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. **increase** *v.* 增加；增大 →decrease *v.* 缩短；减小，减少（反义词）→increase by 增加了
→increase to 增加到
4. **surface** *n.* 表面；表层
→on the surface 表面上
5. **Indian** *adj.* 印度的 *n.* 印度人 →India *n.* 印度

‖必背短语

6. one third 三分之一
7. be covered with… 被……覆盖
8. all year round 全年，整年
→ 同义短语 all over the year

Lesson 39

‖必背单词

1. **British** *adj.* 不列颠的；英国的；英国人的；英国英语的 *n.*（总称）英国人；英国英语 →Britain *n.* 英国
2. **bathroom** *n.* 浴室；盥洗室
3. **spell** *v.* 拼写 →spelling *n.* 拼写，拼写法
4. **pronunciation** *n.* 发音；读法
→pronounce *v.* 发音；读法
5. **grammar** *n.* 语法
6. **translate** *v.* 翻译 →translation *n.* 翻译，译本
7. **American** *adj.* 美国的 *n.* 美国人
8. **Australian** *adj.* 澳大利亚（人）的 *n.* 澳大利亚人

‖必背短语

9. ring up 给……打电话
10. go up 上升；升起 →go down 下降；落下
11. quite a few 相当多；不少
12. in different ways 用不同的方式或方法

‖必背句子

13. I remember asking my cousin to **translate** things for me when I first came to Canada.
我记得第一次来加拿大时曾让我的表妹为我翻译了（一些）东西。
14. It's **pronounced** like the letter "A".
它的发音像字母"A"。

Lesson 40

‖必背单词

1. **European** *n.* 欧洲人 *adj.* 欧洲（人）的
→Europe *n.* 欧洲
2. **kiss** *v.* & *n.* 吻　　3. **nod** *v.* 点头
4. **polite** *adj.* 有礼貌的 →impolite *adj.* 无礼的，粗鲁的（反义词）→politely *adv.* 有礼貌地

‖必背短语

5. shake hands 握手 →wave hands 挥手
6. point to 指向 →point at 指着 →point out 指出

‖必背句子

7. In some **European** countries, people kiss each other on both cheeks.
在一些欧洲国家，人们会相互亲吻脸颊。
8. But in most other countries, these things mean the **opposite**. 但是在大多数其他国家，这些东西表示相反的意思。

Lesson 41

‖必背单词

1. **prepare** *v.* 准备；预备 →preparation *n.* 准备
2. **pride** *n.* 引以自豪的事物（或人）；骄傲

‖必背短语

3. be known for… 因……而众所周知
4. in recent years 在最近一些年里

‖必背句子

5. My people **are known for** our fun dances and colourful culture. 我们那里的人们因有趣的舞蹈和丰富多彩的文化而闻名。

Lesson 42

‖必背单词

1. **square** *n.* 平方；广场；正方形

‖必背句子

2. **To** the south of Canada is the United States.
加拿大的南边是美国。
3. The U.S. is also a very large country, and its population is **much larger than any other** country in North America.
美利坚合众国也是一个非常大的国家，它的人口比北美洲其他任何一个国家都要多得多。

单元必背语法

1. Recently, we **have learned** about the population of the world.
最近，我们已经学习了有关世界人口（的内容）。
2. He **has been to** every continent except Antarctica. 除了南极洲以外，他去过每一个洲。
3. These dry places **are called** deserts.
这些干燥的地方叫作沙漠。
4. It must **be treated** well for our children and for our children's children, too! 为了我们的孩子，也为了我们孩子的孩子，它必须被善待！

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 37 Let's Learn Geography!

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What places would you like to visit? Why? 你想参观什么地方？为什么？
- Do you like to study geography? Why or why not?
  你喜欢学地理吗？为什么（喜欢）或为什么不（喜欢）？

课文朗读

Jenny: I really like to study geography. In geography class, we learn about rivers, mountains and oceans. We also learn about countries and cities. Recently, we have learned about the population ① /ˌpɒpjʊˈleɪʃn/ of the world. 我非常喜欢学习地理。在地理课上，我们了解到河流、高山和海洋。我们还了解到国家和城市。最近，我们了解了世界人口。

Brian: I think travelling is a good way to learn geography ②. Have you ever been abroad ③ /əˈbrɔːd/, Danny? 我觉得旅游是学习地理的一种好方法。你曾经去过国外吗，丹尼？

Danny: Yes. Jenny and I have been to China twice.
去过。我和詹妮去过中国两次。

Brian: That's great! Have you been to any other countries in Asia?
那太棒了！你去过亚洲的其他国家吗？

Danny: No, but maybe I will go to Japan /dʒəˈpæn/ one day ④. I could talk to the people there. I speak a little Chinese.
没有，但是可能有一天我会去日本。我能和那里的人们交谈。我会讲一点中文。

Jenny: They speak Japanese ⑤ /ˌdʒæpəˈniːz/ in Japan, not Chinese. 他们在日本讲日语，不讲汉语。

Danny: Oh, I see! Have you ever been abroad, Brian? 噢，我知道了！你曾经去过国外吗，布赖恩？

Brian: I'm abroad now! I'm from the U.K., remember?
我现在就在国外！我来自英国，记得吗？

Danny: Oh, yes. Have you visited any other countries? 噢，是的。你参观过其他的国家吗？

Brian: No, but my father has travelled a lot. He has been to every continent except ⑥ Antarctica /ænˈtɑːktɪkə/.
没有，但我爸爸已经旅行过很多（地方）了。他已经去过除南极洲以外的每一个大洲了。

Danny: Really? That's cool! 真的吗？那太酷了！

Jenny: My mother has a friend from an island /ˈaɪlənd/ in the Pacific /pəˈsɪfɪk/. She has gone to visit her. 我妈妈有一位朋友来自太平洋上的一个岛。她已经去拜访她了。

Danny: It's fun to travel. I can't wait ⑦ to go!
旅游真有趣。我迫不及待地想去（旅游）！

Let's Do It! 做一做！

课文听力

1 Which countries have they been to? Listen and tick the country that each person has visited.
他们都去过哪些国家？听录音并勾出每个人参观过的国家。

Jenny 詹妮	China 中国	the U.K. 英国
Danny 丹尼	China 中国	Japan 日本
Brian 布赖恩	the U.S. 美国	Canada 加拿大

2 Read the lesson and write true (T) or false (F). 阅读课文并判断正（T）误（F）。

1. Brian wants to visit Japan someday.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

布赖恩想要有一天去参观日本。 ( )

2. Jenny has never been to any Asian countries.
詹妮从来没去过任何亚洲的国家。 ( )

3. Brian's father has travelled to several different continents. 布赖恩的父亲已经去几个不同的大洲旅行过。 ( )

4. Danny's mother has a friend in Antarctica.
丹尼的妈妈有一位在南极洲的朋友。 ( )

3 Fill in the blanks with the words in this lesson. The first letter is given.
用这一课中的单词填空。首字母已给出。

1. **A:** Which country has the largest p_____?
哪个国家有最多的_____?
B: China, of course. 当然是中国。

2. **A:** Is Taiwan an i_____?
台湾是一个_____吗?
B: Yes. It is in the Pacific. 是的。它在太平洋上。

3. **A:** I like all fruits e_____ bananas.
_____香蕉，我喜欢所有水果。
B: Really? I don't like them, either.
真的吗？我也不喜欢香蕉。

4. Mr. Wang has gone a_____, so I won't see him this week.
王先生已经去_____，所以这个星期我见不到他。

5. The people in Japan speak J_____.
日本的人们说_____。

4 What country or place are you most interested in? Search the Internet and find some facts about it. Then share your information with the class.
你对什么国家或地方最感兴趣？从互联网上查询并找出一些关于它的真实情况。然后和全班同学分享你的信息。

Task tips: Have you ever been there? What language do people speak there? Describe some places of interest.
任务提示：你去过那里吗？那里的人们说什么语言？描述一些名胜古迹。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注

•考点应用

★Recently, we have learned about the population of the world.

① population /ˌpɒpjʊˈleɪʃn/ *n.* 人口

敲黑板 易错点，本课重点，牢记！

population 为集体名词，通常与冠词连用，被看成一个整体。

e.g. China is a country with a large population.
中国是一个人口众多的国家。

表示人口"多"或"少"时，一般用 large 或 small 来修饰，而不用 many、more 或 few 等修饰。

表示某一范围内有多少人口时，用"地点 + has a population of + 数词"或者"the population of + 地点 + is + 数词"结构。

e.g. Our town has a population of about 20,000.
我们镇大约有两万人。
The population of our town is about 20,000.
我们镇大约有两万人。

【重点】提问某地有多少人口时，用 What 而不用 How many 或 How much。

询问某地人口常用结构是："What is/was the population of + 地点？"。

e.g. What's the population of Hebei Province? 河北省有多少人口?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 1 —_____ the population of China?

—About 1.4 billion. Everyone knows China has the _____ population in the world.

A. What are; most　　B. What is; largest

C. How many are; most　　D. How many are; largest

点拨:运用语法判定法。询问人口多少时，用 What 提问， 不用 How many。表示人口多少时，用 large 或 small 来修饰。

宾语从句

★**I think travelling is a good way to learn geography.**

动名词作主语　　不

② 动名词作主语与不定式作后置定语　后置定语

e.g. Learning English well is good for our future.

学好英语对我们的未来有好处。

My dream to go to Harvard University came true at last.

我去哈佛大学（上学）的梦想最终实现了。

★**Have you ever been abroad, Danny?**

③ **abroad** /əˈbrɔːd/ *adv.* 到国外； 在国外

前面不用介词。

e.g. Today some students choose to study abroad for further education.

现在一些学生选择去国外学习深造。

abroad 相关短语：
- at home and abroad 在国内外
- from abroad 从国外来
- go abroad 去国外

★**No, but maybe I will go to Japan one day.**

④ **one day** 有一天

e.g. One day an old man came to see me. 有一天，一个老人来看我。

I hope to see you some day (one day). 我希望有一天能见到你。

考题在线 2 我确信，有一天你会取得成功的。

I'm sure you will _____ _____ _____.

点拨:当表示将来某一天时，既可以用 one day 也可以用 some day。

辨析：one day 与 some day
① one day 既可表示“将来有一天”，也可表示“过去某一天”；
② some day 只表示“将来有一天”。

★**They speak Japanese in Japan, not Chinese.**

⑤ **Japanese** /ˌdʒæpəˈniːz/ *n.* (a native or inhabitant of Japan; the language (usually considered to be Altaic) spoken by the Japanese)

日语；日本人

Japanese 当作“日本人”讲时，单复数同形。

e.g. I can't speak Japanese. 我不会说日语。

These Japanese are visiting the Great Wall. 这些日本人正在参观长城。

一语辨异：

★**He has been to every continent except Antarctica.**

⑥ **except** /ɪkˈsept/ *prep.* 除……之外

敲黑板 易混点，中考高频考点，牢记！

辨析: except, except for 与 besides

except	“除了”，宾语被排除在句子表示的事情之外，表示从总数中减去或例外。
except for	“除……之外”，常用于非同类事物中的排除
besides	“除了”，宾语被包括在句子所表述的事情范围之内，表示包括在内。

We all went there except him last time. This time we'll all go there besides him.
上次除了他没有去那里外，我们都去了。这次除他去以外，我们也都将去那里。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. A pig doesn't do anything except eat and sleep.
猪除了吃和睡别的什么也不干。

如果介词 except 之前含有动词 do(包括 do 的各种形式),则 except 后面接动词原形。

考题在线 3 —All the workers went home yesterday _____ Mr. White. Why?
—Because he was on duty.
A. except B. besides C. except for D. beside
点拨:运用语法判定法。A、C 两项均意为"除了……(之外)";B 项意为"除……之外(还有)";D 项意为"在……旁边";句中的 All the workers 和 Mr. White 是同类。且根据句意可知答案。

★**I can't wait to go!**

⑦ **can't wait** 等不及,迫不及待 可以和 can hardly wait 互换。

e.g. I can't wait for another minute.=
I can hardly wait for another minute. 我简直等不及了。
I can't wait for his return. 我迫不及待地等他回来。
The kids can't wait to open the box. 孩子们迫不及待地打开盒子。

can't wait for sth. 对某事迫不及待
can't wait to do sth. 迫不及待地做某事

考题在线 4 放学后孩子们迫不及待地去踢足球。 [潍坊]
The children can't wait _____ _____ football after school.

考题在线答案 1. B 2. succeed one day/some day 3. A 4. to play

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见293页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. Fukuhara Ai, a ping-pong player from _____ (日本), speaks _____ (日语).
2. We can see different kinds of birds on this ___ (岛屿). [扬州]
3. I see no light and hear no sound _____ (除……之外) the wind that is far away. [扬州]
4. The _____ (人口) of China may increase fast because of the two-child policy (政策).
5. His uncle often goes _____ (去国外), so he knows a lot about other countries.

二、用所给单词的适当形式填空

6. The population of the village _____ (be) 200 now. 【导学号:6505386】
7. I can't wait _____ (visit) my grandparents.
8. I think _____ (travel) is a good way to learn geography.
9. It's interesting _____ (climb) the mountain.
10. Recently, we _____ (learn) about the population of the world.

三、按要求完成句子

11. One day we shall all live in peace, concord and union. (改为同义句)
_____ _____ we shall all live in peace, concord and union.
12. I have been to Hainan.(改为否定句)
I _____ _____ _____ to Hainan.
13. The city has a population of about 10,000. (对画线部分提问)
_____ _____ the population of the city?
14. you, ever, abroad, have, been(连词成句)
_____?
15. Jim is the tallest boy in his class.(改为同义句) [达州]
Jim is taller than _____ _____ boy in his class.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 38 The World Is a Big Place

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- How many continents are there in the world? What are they? 世界上有几个大洲？它们都是什么？
- What do you know about the place where you live? 你对你所居住的地方有什么了解？

How many continents and oceans does the world have? 世界上有几个大洲和几个大洋？ Can you point them out?
你能把它们指出来吗？

The earth is a very special planet① /ˈplænɪt/, and it faces a big problem. In the year 2010, the world's population was over 7 billion② /ˈbɪlɪən/ in total③ /ˈtəʊtl/. It is increasing④ /ɪnˈkriːsɪŋ/ very quickly. By 2025, the world may have about 8 billion people. And by 2050, the world's population may reach 9 billion. 地球是一个非常特殊的行星，它面临着一个大问题。在2010年，世界总人口达到70多亿。世界人口正在非常迅速地增长。到2025年之前，世界上可能有大约80亿人口。到2050年之前，世界人口可能达到90亿。

课文朗读

There is another problem. People can't live everywhere on the earth. We can't live in water, and only about one third⑤ of our planet is land. But parts of this land are very dry. These dry places are called deserts. Some areas have very high mountains. Others have a lot of snow and ice. It is not easy to live in those places. 还有另一个问题。并不是地球上所有的地方都适合人类生存。我们无法在水中生活，而且我们的行星仅有大约三分之一是陆地。但是陆地中有些地区太干燥。这些干燥的地方被称为沙漠。一些地区有非常高的山。其他一些地区有大量的冰雪。在那些地方生存是不容易的。

There are seven continents: Asia, Africa, Australia, Antarctica, Europe, North America and South America. Antarctica is covered with⑥ snow and ice all year round. Luckily, people can live on the other six continents. On these continents, there are green forests, fresh water and rich lands.

有七大洲：亚洲、非洲、大洋洲、南极洲、欧洲、北美洲和南美洲。南极洲终年被冰雪覆盖。幸运的是，人们可以在其他六个大洲上生活。在这些大洲上，有着绿色的森林，干净的水源和富饶的土地。

Oceans cover two thirds of the earth's surface /ˈsɜːfɪs/. The earth has only one big ocean, but we use these names for its different parts: the Pacific Ocean, the Indian /ˈɪndɪən/ Ocean, the Atlantic /ætˈlæntɪk/ Ocean and the Arctic /ˈɑːktɪk/ Ocean. The Pacific Ocean is the largest one.

地球表面的三分之二被海洋覆盖。地球上只有一个大的海洋，但是我们给它不同的部分起了这些名字：太平洋、印度洋、大西洋和北冰洋。太平洋是最大的海洋。

The earth is our home now, and it will be our home in the future. It must be treated well for our children and for our children's children, too! 地球现在是我们的家园，未来它还是我们的家园。为了我们的孩子，也为了我们孩子的孩子，我们必须好好对待它！

Let's Do It! 做一做！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1 Read the lesson and match each paragraph with its main idea.

阅读课文并把每一段与其中心意思连线。

Paragraph 1 第一段	a. Six of the seven continents are good for people to live on. 七大洲中的六个大洲适合人类生存。
Paragraph 2 第二段	b. We should treat the earth well. 我们应该好好对待地球。
Paragraph 3 第三段	c. An increasing population is a big problem for the earth. 迅速增长的人口是地球的一个大问题。
Paragraph 4 第四段	d. Two thirds of the earth is covered with oceans. 地球的三分之二被海洋覆盖着。
Paragraph 5 第五段	e. People cannot live everywhere on the earth. 并不是地球上所有的地方都适合人类生存。

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in the box. 用方框中所给单词的正确形式填空。

increase 增长　dry 干燥的　surface 表面　billion 十亿　total 总计

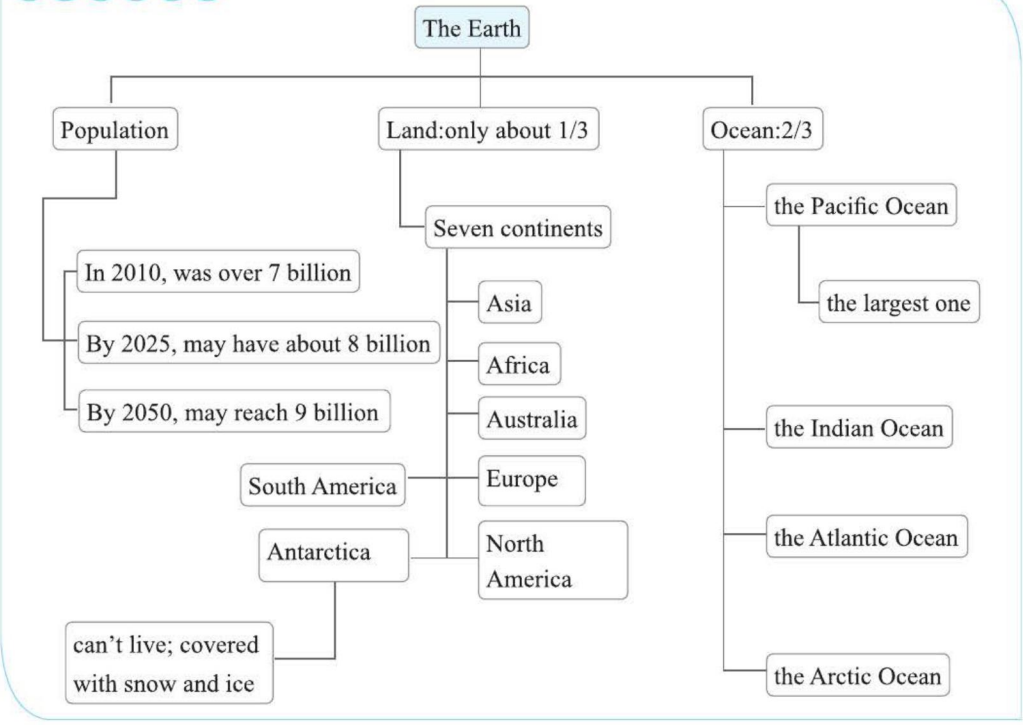
1. The number of swimmers here is _____ quickly because it's very hot these days.
   这里的游泳者的人数快速地 _____ 因为这些天太热了。
2. The school has a _____ of 900 students. 这个学校 _____ 900 名学生。
3. I think it may be the _____ season of the year. 我认为它可能是一年中的 _____ 季节。
4. The _____ of our body is skin. It protects us. 我们身体的 _____ 是皮肤。它保护我们。
5. How many _____ of people are there in the world now? 现在世界上有几 _____ 人口?

3 Match the seven continents with their correct descriptions. 把七大洲与其恰当的描述连线。

Europe 欧洲	It is the biggest continent. It has the highest point on the earth in the Himalayas. 它是最大的洲。在喜马拉雅山它有地球上的最高点。
South America 南美洲	It is the second largest continent. Many elephants, giraffes, zebras and lions live there. 它是第二大洲。许多大象、长颈鹿、斑马和狮子都生活在那里。
Asia 亚洲	It is the third largest continent. Canada, Mexico and the U.S. are the three major countries on this continent. 它是第三大洲。加拿大、墨西哥和美国是这个洲的三个主要国家。
Africa 非洲	It is the fourth largest continent. There are 13 countries on this continent. 它是第四大洲。这个洲有十三个国家。
Australia 大洋洲	It is the fifth largest continent. The South Pole is on this continent. 它是第五大洲。南极就在这个洲上。
Antarctica 南极洲	It is the sixth largest continent. It is a good place for people to travel to. 它是第六大洲。它是人们去旅游的一个好地方。
North America 北美洲	It is the smallest continent. You can find koalas and kangaroos there. 它是最小的洲。你可以在那里发现考拉和袋鼠。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见293页)

阅读策略

对号入座法(即带着问题找句子，先看短文后面的问题，注意记忆关键的词语，如任务、时间、事件等， 确定每道问题是针对什么提问的。这样我们就可以带着问题去阅读短文，做到有的放矢。)

阅读过程

一、速读 Lesson 38，回答问题

1. In this lesson, the main idea is _____.

(主旨大意题)

A. about a big place

B. about the problems

C. that the world is a big place

D. about the population

拓展阅读

二、细读文章，解决细节类题目

2. By _____, the world may have about 8 billion people. (细节理解题)

A. 2015　　B. 2025

C. 2050　　D. 2005

3. Oceans cover about _____ of the earth's surface. (细节理解题)

A. two thirds　　B. one third

C. four fifths　　D. one fifth

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

·考点批注　·考点应用

★The earth is a very special planet, and it faces a big problem.

① **planet** /ˈplænɪt/ *n.*(a large round object in space that moves around a star) 行星

planet 为可数名词，指环绕恒星运转的星球。

e.g. The earth is the only planet that we know has life at present.
地球是目前我们所知的唯一有生命存在的行星。

★In the year 2010, the world's population was over 7 billion in total.

② **billion** /ˈbɪlɪən/ *n.* 十亿；千兆

billion 前有数词修饰时，billion 不能用复数形式。
billions of 意为"数十亿的"，表示不确定的数量。

e.g. We want two billion. 我们想要 20 亿。
There are billions of stars in the sky.
天上有数十亿的星星。
Hundreds of people were killed in the earthquake.
地震中有数百人丧生。
There are about five hundred students in this school.
这所学校大约有 500 名学生。

与 billion 用法类似的词有 hundred, thousand, million。

考题在线 1 We gave away _____ books to the school library last year. [兰州]

A. six thousands　B. six thousand
C. six thousands of　D. six thousand of

点拨：考查数词。thousand 与具体数字连用时，表示确数，后面不加 -s；与 of 连用时，表示概数，词尾要加 -s，词前不加数字。

③ **total** /ˈtəʊtl/ *n.* 总计；总数 *adj.* 总的；总计的 敲黑板 本课重点，牢记！

e.g. A total of twenty letters were received last month.
上个月共收到 20 封信。
You can choose four out of the total number.
你可以从总数中选出四个。
The problem is how much the total payment is.
问题是要支付的总额是多少。
In total over 1,000 people attended the conference.
共计一千多人参加了这个会议。

a total of 修饰可数名词复数时，其谓语动词用复数形式；
the total of... 后的谓语动词一般用单数形式。

total 作形容词时，意为"总的；总计的"，一般在句中作定语，不作表语。

in total 意为"总计；合计"。

考题在线 2 There are 200 teachers in our school _____.

A. at last　B. less than　C. more than　D. in total

点拨：运用词语辨析法。at last 最后；less than 少于；more than 超过；in total 总共。根据句意"在我们学校总共有 200 名教师。"可知答案。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

It is increasing very quickly.

④ **increase** /ɪnˈkriːs/ *v.* 增加；增大　反义词为 decrease。也可作名词

e.g. These cases are on the increase.

这些案件在不断增加。

His power increased.　常用短语 on the increase“正在增加；不断增长”。

他的权力加强了。

The population of this city has increased by 5 percent.

这个城市的人口增长了 5%。

Our coal output has increased to 6 million tons this year.

我们今年的煤产量增加到了六百万吨。

辨析：increase by 与 increase to

① increase by +倍数或百分数，表示“增加了……倍或百分之……”。

② increase to +具体增长后的数字，表示“增加到了……”。

考题在线 3 The total number of online literature website users had _____ to 352 million by the end of June 2017. And the number is still growing. [连云港]

A. increased　　B. influenced

C. included　　D. introduced

点拨：考查动词辨析。句意：网络文学网站的用户总数到 2017 年六月底已经 _____ 3.52 亿。并且数字仍在增长。increase“增长”；influence“影响”；include“包括，包含”；introduce“介绍”。根据后文大意“数字仍在增长”可推知：网络文学网站的用户总数已经增长到 3.52 亿。

We can't live in water, and only about one third of our planet is land.

⑤ **one third** 三分之一　敲黑板 易错点，牢记！

【易错点】分数表达法：分子用基数词，分母用序数词。分子如果大于 1，分母用复数形式。

提示：二分之一不能说 a/one second，而要说 a/one half；四分之一和四分之三常用 a quarter 和 three quarters 表示。

当“分数+of”结构作主语时，谓语动词的单复数取决于 of 后面的名词，名词为可数名词复数，谓语动词用复数；名词为不可数名词，谓语动词用单数。

e.g. Two thirds of the students in our class are girls.

我们班三分之二的学生是女生。

Three quarters of the information is true.

四分之三的信息是真实的。

考题在线 4 _____ of the students in our class_____ going to summer camp in Beijing next week. [天水]

A. Two fifths; is　　B. Second fifths; are

C. Second fifths; is　　D. Two fifths; are

点拨：考查分数的表达及主谓一致。句意：我们班五分之二的学生下周要去北京夏令营。英语中表达分数时，分子用基数词，分母用序数词，当分子大于一时，分母用序数词的复数形式。又因复数名词 students，故谓语用复数。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



考题在线 5 —Mum, _____ of the apples _____ gone bad.
—We'd better eat up the rest as soon as possible. [安顺]
A. one third; have B. one thirds; have
C. one third; has D. first three; has

点拨：用主谓一致法。句意：——妈妈，这些苹果的三分之一已经坏了。——我们最好尽快吃掉剩余的。第一空考查“三分之一”应用 one third；第二空因 the apples 表示复数，应用 have。

★Antarctica is covered with snow and ice all year round.

主动结构为：cover...with...（用……盖住……）

⑥ **be covered with** 被……覆盖

e.g. Our garden is covered with grass and flowers.
我们的花园被花草覆盖着。
Please cover this desk with a cloth. 请用布盖住这张课桌。

考题在线答案 1. B 2. D 3. A 4. D 5. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见293页）

一、根据句意及首字母提示完成单词

1. The s_____ of the lake is quite still.
2. The t_____ cost will be 130 dollars.
3. The earth is a p_____ and it goes around the sun.
4. They come from India, and they are I_____.
5. The number of wild pandas has i_____ by around 17% in the last ten years.

二、单项选择

6. The land is covered _____ snow.
A. in B. on C. with D. for

7. They have increased the price of petrol _____ 3%.
A. to B. for C. by D. from

8. In recent years, the economy of our country _____ rapidly. [烟台]
A. is increased B. has increased
C. increased D. has been increased

9. The experts think that the population of India may be _____ than that of China _____ 2020.
A. much; by B. more; in
C. larger; by D. larger; on

10. —Mum, _____ of my classmates _____ glasses.
—Oh, my God. You need to protect your eyes well. [宿迁改编]
A. three fourths; wears
B. three fourth; wear
C. three fourth; wears
D. three fourths; wear

三、连词成句

11. planet, earth, is, special, the, a
_____.

12. the, a, is, box, with, covered, coat
_____.

13. one's, increases, the, travelling, knowledge, of, world
_____.

14. tomorrow, will, finish , the, you , task, by
_____?

15. cover, surface, thirds, the, oceans, two, earth's, of
_____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 39 Ring Up or Call?

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What are some of the differences in spoken Chinese in different parts of China?
  中国不同地方的方言有什么不同之处?
- What are some of the differences in spoken English? 英语口语有什么不同之处?

课文朗读

It's evening. Brian is chatting online with David, a new friend from New York. 晚上，布赖恩正在和一位来自纽约的新朋友，戴维，网上聊天。

David: Hi Brian! How are you doing?
你好，布赖恩！过得怎么样?

Brian: Good, thanks! We have been asked to write a report on Asia. I would like to ask my Chinese friend some questions about colours in China. Maybe I'll ring him up① tonight.
很好，谢谢！我们被要求写一篇关于亚洲的报告。我想问我的中国朋友一些关于在中国颜色的问题。也许我会在今晚给他打电话。

David: Ring up? What do you mean? Phones don't go up when they ring. They can't fly!
电话响并飞起来? 你什么意思? 电话响时又不会上升。它们不会飞!

Brian: "To ring up someone"is the British /ˈbrɪtɪʃ/ way of saying to call someone on the phone. "To ring up someone"是英式英语，用以表达给某人打电话。

David: That's different. There are quite a few② differences between your English and③ my English. 那是不同的。在你的英语和我的英语之间有相当多的差异。

Brian: That's true. Sometimes we describe the same thing in different ways or use different words. We say "in a team", while you say "on a team". And you use "washroom /ˈwɒʃrʊm/" or "bathroom /ˈbɑːθrʊm/" instead of "toilet". 的确是这样。有时候我们以不同的方式或用不同的单词来描述相同的东西。我们说"in a team"，而你们说"on a team"。你们用"washroom"或"bathroom"而不用"toilet"。

David: You have "autumn"instead of "fall", and you spell /spel/ color "c-o-l-o-u-r".
你们用"autumn"而不用"fall"，你们的"颜色"拼写为"c-o-l-o-u-r"。

Brian: There are also some differences in pronunciation /prəˌnʌnsɪˈeɪʃən/ and even in grammar /ˈgræmə/. I remember asking my cousin to translate④ /trænsˈleɪt/ things for me when I first came to Canada."Are we speaking the same language?"I asked myself. 在发音甚至语法上也有一些不同之处。我记得第一次来加拿大时曾让我的表妹为我翻译了(一些)东西。我曾问我自己："我们在说相同的语言吗?"

David: Ha ha! Did you know that there is American /əˈmerɪkən/ English, British English, Australian /ɔːˈstreɪljən/ English and even African English? They are different, but they are all English. By the way, some Canadians use the word "eh" at the end of their sentences. It's pronounced⑤ /prəˈnaʊnst/ like the letter "A". What does it mean?
哈哈！你知道有美式英语、英式英语、澳大利亚英语，甚至非洲英语吗? 它们都不相同，但它们都是英语。顺便提一下，一些加拿大人会在句末用"eh"这个词。它的发音像字母"A"。它是什么意思呢?

Brian: It is a friendly way of saying "Do you

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

understand?" or "Do you agree?" 它是一种友好的表达方式，意思是“你理解吗？”或者“你同意吗？”

David: Oh, I see. That's interesting, eh? 噢，我知道了。那太有趣了，你同意吗？

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Listen to the dialogue and choose the correct words. 听对话并选出正确的词。

A: Hello Tina! I don't know how to (express/say/show) myself well. Any advice?
你好，蒂娜！我不知道如何很好地（表达 / 说 / 展示）我自己。可以给一些建议吗？

B: Sure. Why not talk with others in public? I think that might help.
当然可以。为什么不在公共场合和他人交谈呢？我觉得那样可能有帮助。

A: I know, but sometimes it's hard for me to (pronounce/spell/say) the words and sentences correctly. Instead, I need to (pronounce/spell/write) them, which makes me feel embarrassed.
我知道，但是我有时候很难正确地（发音 / 拼写 / 说）单词和句子。反而，我需要（发音 / 拼写 / 写出）它们，这使我感到尴尬。



B: Oh! That's the problem. Then try to improve your spoken English first.
噢！那是个问题。那么首先尽力提高你的英语口语。

A: Good idea! I'll (phone/ring up/ask for) my foreign teacher to make a plan. Thanks!
好主意！我会（给……打电话 / 给……打电话 / 询问）我的外籍老师来制订一个计划。谢谢！

2 What differences between British English and American English are mentioned in the lesson? Tick the correct answers. 在课文中提到哪些英式英语和美式英语的不同之处？勾出正确答案。

☐ In British English, people "ring up" someone, while in American English, people "call" someone. 在英式英语中，人们“ring up”某人，而在美式英语中，人们“call”某人。

☐ British people "post" things, while Americans "mail" things.
英国人“post”东西，而美国人“mail”东西。

☐ British people use the "toilet", while Americans go to the "washroom" or "bathroom".
英国人用“toilet”，而美国人去“washroom”或“bathroom”。

☐ British people say "at the weekend" instead of "on the weekend" like Americans.
英国人说“at the weekend”而不像美国人说“on the weekend”。

☐ In England, people use the word "lift" instead of "elevator" like in America.
在英国，人们用单词“lift”，而不像在美国，（人们）用“elevator”。

☐ British people spell "centre" instead of "center". 英国人拼写为“centre”而不是“center”。

☐ British people say "autumn", while Americans say "fall". 英国人说“autumn”，而美国人说“fall”。

3 Work in groups. Talk about the differences between British English and American English and then fill in the table. 小组活动。谈论英式英语和美式英语之间的区别然后填写表格。

	British English 英式英语	American English 美式英语
Vocabulary 词汇	autumn, 秋天，	fall, 秋天，
Spelling 拼写	colour, 颜色，	color, 颜色，
Expression 表达	ring up someone, 给某人打电话，	call someone on the phone, 给某人打电话，
Other differences 其他不同之处		

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Maybe I'll ring him up tonight.

ring up 是"动词+副词"型短语，若宾语为代词，必须放在二者之间；若宾语为名词，放在 ring 和 up 之间或者 up 之后均可。

① **ring up** 给……打电话

e.g. They often ring up their parents.
他们经常给父母打电话。

拓展：其他表示给某人打电话的表达：call/phone/telephone sb.
give sb. a call/ring
make a telephone call to sb.

★There are quite a few differences between your English and my English.

敲黑板 易错点，牢记！

② **quite a few** 相当多；不少

辨析：quite a few 与 quite a little
① quite a few 意为"相当多；不少"修饰可数名词的复数形式。
② quite a little 意为"许多；相当多"修饰不可数名词。

e.g. Quite a few students come to visit Peking University every year.
每年都有相当多的学生来参观北京大学。

There is quite a little water in the glass. 杯子里有相当多的水。

考题在线 1 He has _____ friends here. Because he is always friendly.

A. quite few　　B. quite little
C. quite a few　　D. quite a little

方法真题练

点拨：运用排除法和语境暗示法。空格后的 friends 是可数名词的复数形式，故排除 B 和 D；由第二句句意："因为他总是很友好。"可知"他在这儿有很多朋友"。



两者之间

③ **between…and…** 在……和……之间

e.g. I'm usually free between Tuesday and Thursday.
我通常在星期二与星期四之间有空。

辨析：between 与 among
between 表示两者之间，也可用来表示在三者以上的人或物的每两者之间。
among 表示在三者或三者以上的人或物之间。



between 两两之间

考题在线 2 The bank is _____ the bookstore and the post office. [益阳]

A. at the front of　　B. among　　C. between

★I remember asking my cousin to translate things for me when I first came to Canada.

translate 的常用搭配：
① translate…into … 把……翻译成……
② be translated from… 译自……；由……译成

④ **translate** /træns'leɪt/ *v.*(to express the meaning of speech or writing in a different language) 翻译

e.g. Can you translate the sentence into English?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

你能把这句话翻译成英语吗？

translate → translation（名词）翻译，译本

This French book is translated from Latin.

这本法语书译自拉丁文。

translate → translator（名词）翻译，译员

I read the book in translation, not in original Norwegian.

我读的这本书是译本，不是挪威文原著。

考题在线 3 This machine can _____ (translate) the simple message into 24 different languages. [南京]

★It's pronounced like the letter "A".

敲黑板 本课重点，牢记！

⑤ **pronounce** /prəˈnaʊns/ *v.* 发音；读法

e.g. I don't know how to pronounce this word.

我不知道这个单词怎么发音。

There is more than one pronunciation of "garage".

"garage" 的读音不止一种。

pronounce 既可作及物动词又可作不及物动词

pronounce 的名词形式为：pronunciation 发音，读法，可以作可数名词。

考题在线 4 My teacher told me "either" has two _____ (发音). [安顺]

考题在线答案 1. C 2. C 3. translate 4. pronunciations

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见293页)

一、用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空

bathroom, grammar, spell, American, Australian

1. She comes from America.She is a(n) _____.
2. He is too young to _____ his name.
3. There are two _____ in my house.
4. It is not difficult for me to learn English _____.
5. The kangaroo is a symbol of _____.

二、用所给单词的适当形式填空

6. I have quite a few _____ (friend).
7. Nancy wants to become a _____ (translate) when she grows up. [临沂]
8. There is quite a little _____ (juice) in the bottle.
9. A shark has many _____ (different)from a fish.
10. She gave the word its French _____ (pronounce).

三、按要求完成句子

11. I will give you a call this evening.(改为同义句)

I will _____ _____ _____ this evening.

12. between, sitting, old, he, two, was, ladies (连词成句)

_____.

13. do, that, pronounce, you, how, word (连词成句)

_____?

14. don't, when, go, ring, phones, they, up (连词成句)

_____.

15. different, you, translate, can, sentence, this, in, ways (连词成句)

_____?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 40 Body Language

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What do you know about body language? 你对肢体语言了解多少?
- Do you use body language? When and where?
  你使用肢体语言吗? 在什么时候、什么地方?

The world has many different cultures.
世界上有很多不同的文化。

课文朗读

In China and abroad, people sometimes ① communicate ② without speaking. How do they do this? They use body language. But body language is not the same in all cultures.

在中国和国外，人们有时候不用说话就可以交流。他们是如何做到这一点的? 他们用肢体语言。但是肢体语言并不是在所有文化中都是相同的。

In China and some other countries, friends shake hands ③ to greet /griːt/ each other. They may be new friends or old, but they shake hands to show friendship and trust. In some European ④ /ˌjʊərəˈpɪən/ countries, people kiss ⑤ /kɪs/ each other on both cheeks /tʃiːks/. It's another way to show friendship and love.

在中国和一些其他国家，朋友们用握手来相互打招呼。他们可能是新朋友或老朋友，但是他们用握手来表达友谊和信任。在一些欧洲国家，人们会相互亲吻脸颊。这是另一种表达友谊和爱的方式。

In India, when people nod ⑥ /nɒd/ their heads, they mean"no". And when people shake their heads, they mean "yes". But in most other countries, these things mean the opposite ⑦.

在印度，当人们点头时，他们的意思是"不"。当人们摇头时，他们的意思是"是"。但是在大多数其他国家，这些东西表示相反的意思。

A thumbs-up /ˈθʌmsˌʌp/ means "okay" or "well done" in most cultures. In Australia, however, it is not polite ⑧ /pəˈlaɪt/. In Japan, it means "five", and in Germany, it means "one".

在大多数文化中，竖起拇指表示"好的"或者"做得好"。然而，在澳大利亚，这是不礼貌的。在日本，它表示"五"；在德国，它表示"一"。

In most places, people point to things with their fingers. But in some places, people point with their lips /lɪps/. They think it's rude /ruːd/ to point with a finger.

在大多数地方，人们用手指来指东西。但是在一些地方，人们用嘴唇来指东西。他们认为用手指指东西很粗鲁。

When Italians /ɪˈtælɪənz/ wave goodbye, it may look like"Come here!" to Americans. But the American goodbye wave looks like"no" in many parts of Europe and South America.

意大利人的"挥手再见"(的手势)看起来可能像美国人的"来这儿!"(的手势)。而美国人"挥手再见"(的手势)看起来像欧洲和南美洲很多地区表示"不"(的手势)。

One body language is the same all around the world: a smile. Try it, and you'll see!

全世界有一种肢体语言是相同的: 微笑。试着微笑，你就会知道!

Smiles are a universal language.
微笑是一种全世界通用的语言。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Culture Tip 文化提示

Culture refers to the beliefs, way of life, art and customs that are shared and accepted by people in a particular society. The world has many different cultures. We should learn and respect different cultures. 文化就是特定社会中的人们所分享和接受的信仰、生活方式、艺术和风俗习惯。世界上有很多不同的文化。我们应该学习并尊重不同的文化。

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and write true (T) or false (F). 阅读课文，判断正 (T) 误 (F)。

1. In some European countries, people like to kiss each other to show friendship and love.
在一些欧洲国家，人们喜欢互相亲吻来表达友谊和爱。 (　　)
2. Nodding your head means "yes" and shaking your head means "no" everywhere in the world.
在世界的每个地方，点头意思都是"是"，摇头意思都是"不"。 (　　)
3. A thumbs-up means "well done" in Germany. 在德国，竖起大拇指表示"做得好"。 (　　)
4. When Americans wave goodbye, it looks like "no" in some European countries.
美国人"挥手再见"(的手势)，看起来像一些欧洲国家表示"不"(的手势)。 (　　)

2 Read the lesson again and complete the table. 再阅读一遍课文，完成表格。

Gestures 姿势	Meanings 含义	Countries 国家
shake hands 握手	greeting, friendship and trust 问候、友谊和信任	_____
_____	friendship and love 友谊和爱	in some European countries 在一些欧洲国家
nod one's head 点头	yes 是	in most places 在大多数地方
	_____	in India 在印度
shake one's head 摇头	yes 是	_____
	no 不	in most places 在大多数地方
thumbs-up 竖起大拇指	okay and well done 好的和做得好	in many countries 在许多国家
	not polite 不礼貌	_____
	five 五	in Japan 在日本
	one 一	_____

3 Fill in the blanks with the words in this lesson. The first letter is given.

用课文中的单词填空。首字母已给出。

1. His mother k_____ him goodbye every morning when she leaves for work.
他妈妈每天早晨要去上班时，都会 _____ 他说再见。
2. **A:** What do you do when you meet new friends? 当你见到新朋友时，你会做什么?
B: I say hello and s_____ hands with them. 我会问好并和他们 _____ 手。
3. If you agree, please n_____ your head. 如果你同意，请 _____ 头。
4. Italy is a E_____ country. It has a long history. 意大利是一个 _____ 国家。它有着悠久的历史。
5. It's p_____ to say "thank you" when someone helps you.
当有人帮助你时，说"谢谢你"是 _____ 的。

4 Different cultures have different body language. Work in groups. One student acts out a kind of body language while the others guess the meaning.

不同的文化有不同的肢体语言。小组活动。一个学生表演出一种肢体语言，其他人来猜它的含义。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★In China and abroad, people sometimes communicate without speaking.

① **sometimes** /ˈsʌmtaɪmz/ *adv.* 有时

e.g. Every man is a fool sometimes, but none at all times.
每个人有时都会犯傻，但没有谁会一直都傻。
I am sure that we have met some times before.
我肯定我们之前见过几次了。
We'll take our holiday sometime in August.
我们会在八月找个时间度假。（将来）
I bought this sometime last summer.
这是我在去年夏天某个时候买的。（过去）
We plan to stay in Hainan for some time.
我们打算在海南呆上一段时间。

辨析：sometimes, some times, sometime 与 some time
① sometimes 有时。
② some times 几次。此时 time 作可数名词，意为"次数"。several times 可以表示"好几次"。
③ sometime *adv.* 在某个时候。它可指过去或将来的某个时候。
④ some time 一段时间。它常与 for 连用。

② **communicate** /kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪt/ *v.* 交流

e.g. Good communication is very important in our life.
好的交流在我们的生活中很重要。 communicate 的名词形式
Mary can communicate with strangers very well.
玛丽能和陌生人交流得很好。 communicate with sb. 与某人交流

★In China and some other countries, friends shake hands to greet each other.

③ **shake hands** 握手 shake sb.'s hand 与某人握手 shake hands with... 与……握手


shake hands 握手

e.g. I shake her hand warmly. 我热情地与她握手。
Aren't you going to shake hands with me? 你不打算和我握手吗？

考题在线1 Chinese people like to _____ when they meet.
A. hold hand B. shake hand
C. shake hands D. wave hands

在 shake hands 结构中 hand 必须用复数 hands。

点拨：本题考查习惯用法，握手是 shake hands。

★In some European countries, people kiss each other on both cheeks.

④ **European** /ˌjʊərəˈpɪən/ *n.* 欧洲人 *adj.* 欧洲（人）的

e.g. She is the only European in the class.
她是班上仅有的欧洲人。

European 用作名词时是可数名词。一个欧洲人：a European，其复数形式为 Europeans。

考题在线2 —Is there _____ European wolf in _____ zoo?
—Yes, there is. [茂名]
A. a; the B. an; a C. /; the

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

点拨：考查冠词的用法。第一空表示泛指，且 European 以辅音音素开头，其前用 a；第二空用定冠词 the，in the zoo“在动物园里”。

European 还可作形容词，意思为“欧洲的；欧洲人的”。

e.g. Germany is a European country.

德国是一个欧洲国家。

⑤ **kiss** /kɪs/ *v.* 亲吻

常用搭配：kiss sb. on+身体部位。

e.g. The children like kissing their mothers on the cheeks.

孩子们喜欢亲吻妈妈的脸颊。

★**In India, when people nod their heads, they mean“no”.**

⑥ **nod** /nɒd/ *v.* 点头

nod 用作及物动词时，可接名词作宾语；它作不及物动词时，其后常接介词 to 或 at，也可接动词不定式作目的状语。

e.g. He nodded his head sympathetically.

他同情地点点头。

She nodded when she passed me in the street.

她在街上走过我身旁时向我点了点头。

考题在线 3 根据汉语提示完成句子。

Helen _____（点头） with a smile when she met me . [江苏]

★**But in most other countries, these things mean the opposite.**



walk in the opposite direction
朝相反方向走

⑦ **opposite** /ˈɒpəzɪt/ *adj.* 相反的 *n.* 对立面；对立的人（或物）

opposite 常用于：

① be the opposite of“是……的对立面；是……的反义词”

e.g. Fast is the opposite of slow.

快是慢的反义词。

② opposite direction“相反的方向”

e.g. He drove off in the opposite direction.

他开车向相反的方向驶去。



sit at opposite ends of a table
面对面坐在餐桌两侧

★**In Australia, however, it is not polite.**

⑧ **polite** /pəˈlaɪt/ *adj.* 有礼貌的

e.g. It is polite to say “Thank you”.

说“谢谢”是有礼貌的。

常用结构：be polite to sb. 对某人有礼貌

Everyone wants to be treated politely.

每个人都希望被有礼貌地对待。

polite → politely → impolite

Some people think it is impolite to ask someone’s age.

有些人认为询问别人的年龄是不礼貌的。

考题在线 4 “Excuse me, is there a library in your school?” the boy asked me _____.

A. politely　　B. polite　　C. impolitely　　D. impolite

考题在线答案 1. C　2. A　3. nodded　4. A

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

核心素养之文化意识

培养“尊重他人文化”的素养

◆ 文化（*culture*）是由一系列情景性的行为模式和思维模式组成的。每个文化中的人们，其行为都具有很大的一致性。俗话说“近朱者赤，近墨者黑”，原因无他，文化的影响而已。你的文化系统对你的控制，犹如一个“自动导航系统”。同样一个事物，由不同文化的人看来就成了不同的事物。比如西方人看待的东方，和东方人看待的东方就是不同的；中国北方人看待的广东和广东人看待的广东也是不同的。人类受到技术的局限，受到文化的局限。现代社会越来越复杂，文化日益多元化。我们每个人，都需要冲破文化认同的钳制，力戒用任何单一的标准来解释任何特定文化，尊重（*respect*）并与所有其他文化中的人群平等地相处。

◆ 【素养行动】尊重他人的文化，与有不同文化的人友好相处。

◆ 【素养行动结果】学会尊重他人的文化，取其精华，使自己更优秀。

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

稳拿中考基础 20分

☞（答案见294页）

一、根据提示完成句子

1. He n_____ in agreement with me.

2. The little girl k_____ her mum good night before she goes to bed. [安徽]

3. In my hometown, there was a big tree o_____ our school. [滨州]

4. He was never good at c_____ with the players.

5. The UK is an old _____ (Europe) country, where there are many palaces and castles. [盐城]

二、用方框中所给词的适当形式填空

Europe, shake hands, sometime, communicate with, polite

6. I _____ with Mr. Black when I first met him.

7. Please phone me _____ next week.

8. Many _____ students will come to visit our city.

9. Everyone should behave _____ in public. [盐城]

10. I _____ him regularly by letter.

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 冷是热的反义词。

Cold is _____ _____ _____ hot.

12. 在中国握手很常见。

_____ _____ is very common in China.

13. 在学校我们应该对我们的老师有礼貌。

We should be _____ to our teachers at school.

14. 年轻的妈妈亲吻了儿子的面颊然后去上班了。

The young mother _____ her son _____ the cheek and went to work.

15. 这本小说我已经看了好几次。

I have read the novel for _____ _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 41 A Class of the World

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注 | 原文译文 · 导读

Pre-reading（读前）

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Which country would you like to visit? Why?
  你想去参观哪个国家？为什么？
- What do you know about that country? 你对那个国家了解多少？

批 体裁：记叙文

While-reading（读中）

- Who is from Brazil? 谁来自巴西？
- What is famous in Liu Yang's country? 在刘阳的国家什么是出名的？

批 文章结构：总—分—总

❶ Ms. Morin teaches English in Edmonton. The students in her class come from all over the world. Last week, she asked her students to prepare ① /prɪˈpeə/ presentations about their home countries. Today is the time to "show and tell".

课文朗读

莫林老师在埃德蒙顿教英语。她班里的学生来自世界各地。上周，她让她的学生们准备关于他们祖国的展示。今天就是"展示秀"的时间。

批 句子：（右侧画"～"处）交代事情发生的时间，并引出下文。承上启下，起到了一个纽带的作用。

❷ Today I want to tell you about my home country—Brazil. It's the largest country in South America. It has a huge river called the Amazon /ˈæməzn/ and a rainforest /ˈreɪnfɒrɪst/ with more trees than you can imagine ②. My people are known for ③ our fun dances and colourful culture. —Mariana /ˌmeərɪˈænə/

今天我想告诉你们关于我的祖国——巴西（的事情）。它是南美洲最大的国家。它有一条叫亚马逊的巨大河流，还有一个热带雨林，热带雨林中的树木多得超乎你的想象。我们那里的人们因有趣的舞蹈和丰富多彩的文化而闻名。

——玛丽安娜

批 考点：（右侧画"～"处）找段落主题句

❸ Ten years ago, my family came to Canada. We came from Turkey /ˈtɜːkɪ/. Do you know that Turkey is in both Europe and Asia? There is a famous bridge called the Bosphorous /ˈbɒsfərəs/ Bridge. It connects Europe and Asia. Turkey is modern and old, rich and poor. Everything comes together to make it a great place to discover. —Akia /əˈkɪə/

十年前，我们一家来到加拿大。我们来自土耳其。你们知道土耳其既在欧洲又在亚洲吗？土耳其有一座很有名的桥，叫作博斯普鲁斯大桥。它把欧洲和亚洲连接起来。土耳其既现代又古老，既富有又贫穷。所有的一切综合起来使它成为一个有待发现的伟大的地方。

——阿卡亚

批 句子：（右侧画"＝"处）用疑问的形式表达肯定的意思，同时与读者有一种心理距离的拉近，且句式的转换使得文章不呆板。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

❹ I was born in Egypt. Many tourists know about the pyramids, but there are other interesting things to see and do in Egypt. You can relax on a boat tour of the Nile /naɪl/. You can ride a camel in the Sahara /səˈhɑːrə/ Desert or walk in the ancient markets in Cairo /ˈkaɪərəʊ/. Many things in Egypt will surprise you, not just the pyramids. —Ahmed /ˈæməd/

我出生在埃及。许多游客都知道金字塔，但是在埃及还有其他有趣的东西可以观赏，有趣的事情可以做。你可以乘船在尼罗河上旅行放松自己。你可以在撒哈拉沙漠骑骆驼，或者在开罗古老的市场上走一走。并不只是金字塔，埃及的许多东西都会让你感到惊讶。 ——艾哈迈德

❺ I'm from China. My country has a long history and rich culture. It has the largest population in the world. It has developed quickly in recent years. The Great Wall and the Terra Cotta Warriors are famous all around the world. —Liu Yang

我来自中国。我的国家有悠久的历史和丰富的文化。它是世界上人口最多的国家。最近这些年，它发展得很快。长城和秦始皇兵马俑闻名于全世界。 ——刘阳

❻ More students come to the front to talk about their countries with pride /praɪd/. All of them are proud of their home countries.

更多的学生自豪地走到前面来讲述他们的国家。他们都为他们的祖国感到骄傲。

批 事件：

who:Ms. Morin and her students

when:today

where:in the classroom

what:talk about their home countries

批 词语赏析：

（左侧画"▲"处）

用不同的词语表达同样的意思，避免了重复，同时也表达了学生们对自己国家的热爱及自豪感。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（见244页）

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and tick the correct answers. 阅读课文并在正确答案上打钩。

1. Where does Ahmed come from? 艾哈迈德来自哪里?

☐ Brazil. 巴西。 ☐ Turkey. 土耳其。 ☐ Egypt. 埃及。

2. Where's the Amazon? 亚马逊河在哪里?

☐ In Brazil. 在巴西。 ☐ In Turkey. 在土耳其。 ☐ In Egypt. 在埃及。

3. What connects Europe and Asia? 是什么把欧洲和亚洲连接起来的?

☐ The Amazon. 亚马逊河。 ☐ The Bosphorous Bridge. 博斯普鲁斯大桥。 ☐ The Nile. 尼罗河。

4. What can you do in the Sahara Desert? 你在撒哈拉沙漠可以做什么?

☐ Walk in the markets. 逛市场。 ☐ Ride a camel. 骑骆驼。 ☐ Take a boat tour. 坐船旅行。

2 Read the lesson again and fill in the blanks. 再次阅读课文并填空。

Amazon River 亚马逊河	Bosphorous Bridge 博斯普鲁斯大桥
Pyramids 金字塔	The Great Wall 长城

Brazil is the _____ country in South America. It has a huge river _____ the Amazon.

巴西是南美洲 _____ 国家。它有一条 _____ 亚马逊的巨大河流。

Turkey is in both _____ and _____. The well-known Bosphorous Bridge _____ Europe and Asia. 土耳其既在 _____ 又在 _____。著名的博斯普鲁斯大桥 _____ 欧洲和亚洲。

Besides the pyramids in Egypt, there are other things to see and do. Many things in Egypt will

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

_____ you.

在埃及，除了金字塔之外，还有其他可以看的东西和做的事情。埃及的许多东西都会让你 _____。

China has a long history and rich culture. It has the largest _____. The Great Wall is _____ around the world. 中国有悠久的历史和丰富的文化。它的 _____ 最多。长城 _____ 全世界。

3 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the given words. 用所给单词的正确形式填空。

1. Lots of _____ (tour) come to visit that famous place.
   许多 _____（旅行）来参观那个著名的地方。
2. That lazy bear always _____ (relax) 15 hours a day. That's why he's a little bit heavy now.
   那只懒熊每天总是 _____（放松）15 个小时。那就是他现在有点重的原因。
3. The students are busy _____ (prepare) for the coming exams.
   学生们正在忙着 _____（准备）即将到来的考试。
4. A bridge _____ (call) the Golden Gate Bridge _____ (surprise) us a lot. We hope to travel back there again someday.
   一座 _____（叫）金门桥的桥使我们深深 _____（使惊奇）。我们希望有一天还会到那儿旅游。
5. That lady took great _____ (proud) in her sons.
   那位女士为她的儿子们深深感到 _____（自豪的）。

4 Write a passage about your home city or town. 写一篇关于你的家乡所在城市或镇的文章。

Task tips: Where is it? How big is it? What is the population? What is it famous for?
任务提示：它在哪里？它有多大？人口有多少？因什么而闻名？

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注

prepare作及物动词：
① prepare sth. 准备某物，后接名词或代词作宾语。
② prepare sth. for sb. 为某人准备某物
③ prepare oneself for sth. 使自己对某事有准备
④ prepare oneself to do sth. 准备做某事

•考点应用

★**Last week, she asked her students to prepare presentations about their home countries.**

敲黑板 本课重点。牢记！

① **prepare** /prɪ'peə/ *v.*（to make sth. or sb. ready to be used or to do sth.）**准备；预备**

e.g. Mother was preparing dinner in the kitchen.
妈妈正在厨房准备晚饭。
She prepared a nice breakfast for us. 她给我们准备了可口的早餐。
He prepared himself for failure. 他使自己对失败有所准备。
He is preparing himself to go on a trip. 他正准备去旅行。

prepare 作不及物动词时的用法：
prepare for sth.“为某事做准备”。

e.g. The students are busy preparing for the final exam.
学生们正忙着为期末考试做准备。
We are getting things together in preparation for the journey.
我们正在收拾东西准备去旅行。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

They have made preparations for what will happen.

他们已为将要发生的事情做好了准备。prepare 的名词形式为 preparation。常用短语：in preparation for/make preparations for 为……做准备

考题在线 1 —Why didn't you go to see the film at 7:00 p.m. last Sunday?

—Because I _____ _____ _____ (prepare) the exam to be held the next day then. [连云港]

★It has a huge river called the Amazon and a rainforest with more trees than you can imagine.

② **imagine** /ɪ'mædʒɪn/ *v.* 想象；设想

e.g. I can imagine the scene clearly. 我能清晰地想象这个情景。

I once imagined that he was a thin and tall man.

我曾设想他是个高高瘦瘦的男人。

The boy imagined himself to be a pilot.

那个男孩想象自己是一个飞行员。

She imagined walking into the office and handing in her resignation. 她想象着自己走进办公室，递上辞呈。

I can't imagine myself teaching in front of so many people.

我不能想象自己在那么多人面前教书。

Mr. Smith couldn't imagine what had happened.

史密斯先生无法想象发生了什么事情。

imagine 的用法：

① imagine sth. 想象某物

② imagine + that 从句 设想……

③ imagine sb./sth. to be… 想象某人/某物是……

④ imagine doing… 想象做……

⑤ imagine sb. doing sth. 想象某人做某事

⑥ imagine + what 从句 想象……

考题在线 2 Can you imagine _____ into space one day?

A. fly B. flying C. flew D. to fly

★My people are known for our fun dances and colourful culture.

③ **be known for** 因……而闻名 敲黑板 高频考点，易错点。牢记！ 相当于 be famous for。

e.g. Scotland has many lakes and mountains, and is known for its beautiful countryside.

苏格兰有许多湖泊和山脉，并因其美丽的乡村而闻名。

考题在线 3 Xiaogan is well known _____ the culture of "Xiao".

A. in B. for C. at D. on

考题在线 4 —Song Xiaobao is _____ Chinese people as a comedy actor.

—We can see his show on TV this evening. [阜康、米泉]

A. known as B. proud of

C. well-known to D. famous for

点拨：短语辨析法。上句句意："宋小宝作为一名喜剧演员被中国人民所熟知。"be known as 意思是"作为……而出名"；be proud of 意思是"为……感到骄傲"；be famous for 意思是"因……而著名"；be well known to 意思是"被……熟知"。

辨析：be known as 与 be known for

① be known as（= be famous as）意为"作为……而著名"，其后接表示职位名称和主语身份的词。

② be known for（= be famous for）意为"因……而著名"，后接表示原因的词。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★More students come to the front to talk about their countries with pride.

pride 作名词时常用于：

④ **pride** /praɪd/ *n.* 引以自豪的事物（或人）；骄傲

① be the pride of sb. = be sb.'s pride 是某人的骄傲

e.g. He is the pride of Chinese people.=He is Chinese people's pride.
他是中国人的骄傲。

② take pride in 为……感到自豪 / 骄傲

I take pride in my work. 我为我的工作感到骄傲。

③ with pride 骄傲地

Be careful not to get eaten up with pride.
注意，不要骄傲自满。

pride —形容词→ proud

be proud of 对……感到自豪

考题在线 5 As we all know, Wudang Mountain is the _____ of Shiyan. [十堰]

A. proud B. pride C. progress D. purpose

点拨：词语辨析法。句意：众所周知，武当山是十堰的骄傲。proud 自豪的；pride 骄傲，自豪；progress 进步；purpose 目的。

考题在线答案 1. was preparing for 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. B

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见294页）

一、根据所给提示完成句子

1. Hangzhou is k_____ for the West Lake.
2. She takes great _____ (proud) in her children's success.
3. It's hard to imagine _____ (live)on the moon.
4. There is a famous bridge _____ (call) the Bosphorous Bridge in Turkey.
5. Linda stayed up late and p_____ herself for the math exam last night. [杭州]

二、根据汉语完成句子

6. 他们进行了一趟令人兴奋的雨林之旅。
They went on an exciting trip to _____ _____.
7. 来自中国的女科学家屠呦呦因获得2016年诺贝尔奖而闻名世界。[乐山]
Tu Youyou, a woman scientist from China, is _____ around the world _____ winning the Nobel Prize in 2016.
8. 我没有时间为这次会议做准备。
I've no time to _____ _____ this meeting.
9. 中国丝绸驰名天下。
The Chinese silk is known _____ _____ _____ _____.
10. 我们都以我们伟大的祖国为荣。
We all _____ _____ _____ our great country.

三、连词成句

11. need, prepare, we, the, for, speech, to
_____.
12. known, to, is, young, it, many, people
_____.
13. you, imagine, without, life, can, water, our
_____?
14. pride, talk, countries, students, about, with, their
_____.
15. pride, I, history, take, knowledge, in, of, my
_____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 42 North America

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What do you know about North America? 关于北美洲你知道什么?
- What do you know about other places around the world?
  关于世界上其他地方你知道什么?

课文朗读

Li Ming wrote a report about North America.
李明写了一份关于北美洲的报告。

North America is a large continent, but it has only three main countries. Canada is the farthest north. To ① the south of Canada is the United States. The U.S. is north of Mexico. Together, these three countries cover about 24 million /ˈmɪljən/ square /skweə/ kilometres. 北美洲是一个大洲，但是它只有三个主要国家。加拿大在最北边。加拿大的南边是美国。美国在墨西哥的北边。这三个国家总占地面积大约为两千四百万平方千米。

About 550 million people live in North America.That is a large population, but smaller than that of China. The Great Lakes are the largest bodies of fresh water in the world. The Rocky /ˈrɒkɪ/ Mountains are the biggest mountains in North America.

大约有 550 000 000 人住在北美洲。人口很多，但比中国的人口少。北美五大湖是世界上最大的淡水湖。落基山脉是北美洲最大的山脉。

Canada is the biggest of the three countries in area, but it has the smallest population—about 35 million. People speak many languages in Canada. Most speak English or French, but the third most common language ② is Chinese!

加拿大是三个国家当中面积最大的，但却是人口最少的——大约有 35 000 000。在加拿大，人们说多种语言。大多数人说英语或法语，但第三种最常见的语言是汉语!

The U.S. is also a very large country, and its population is much larger than any other country in North America. It has a population of more than 315 million. The U.S. is often called America. People in the U.S. are called Americans. Most Americans speak English, and many speak Spanish /ˈspænɪʃ/. Of course, there are a lot of Chinese speakers in the U. S., too—more than 2 million!

美利坚合众国也是一个非常大的国家，它的人口比北美洲其他任何一个国家都要多很多。美利坚合众国的人口超过 315 000 000。美利坚合众国常被称为美国。美利坚合众国的人们被称为美国人。大多数美国人说英语，还有许多人说西班牙语。当然，在美利坚合众国也有很多说汉语的人——有两百多万人!

Mexico is smaller than both Canada and the U.S. Most of the people there speak Spanish. It has a population of more than 110 million. Mexican /ˈmeksɪkən/ people love their country, but many leave ③ to live and work in the U.S. The capital city of Mexico is Mexico City. It is a very big city.

墨西哥比加拿大和美利坚合众国都要小。那里大多数的人说西班牙语。墨西哥的人口超过 110 000 000。墨西哥人热爱他们的国家，但是有许多人离开到美国去生活、工作。墨西哥的首都是墨西哥城。它是一个很大的城市。

This is a map of North America.
这是一张北美洲的地图。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Let's Do It! 做一做!



1 Listen and answer the questions. 听录音并回答问题。

1. Which country has a larger population, Canada or Mexico?
   哪个国家的人口更多，加拿大还是墨西哥?
2. What's the third most common language in Canada?
   在加拿大第三种最常见的语言是什么?
3. Which country has the largest population in North America? 北美洲哪个国家的人口最多?

2 Match the statements with the countries according to the lesson.
根据课文，把下列陈述与国家连起来。

Statements 陈述	Countries 国家
People there mainly speak Spanish. 那里的人们主要说西班牙语。	
It's the third largest country in area in North America. 它是北美洲面积第三大的国家。	Canada 加拿大
Over 2 million people speak Chinese there. 那里有两百多万人说汉语。	America 美国
It's the farthest north in North America. 它在北美洲最北边。	
It's the largest country in population in North America. 它是北美洲人口最多的国家。	Mexico 墨西哥

3 Complete the passage with the correct forms of the words in the box.
用方框中所给单词的正确形式完成短文。

large 大；多　live 居住　square 平方　Spain 西班牙　speak 说；讲　common 普遍的

There are three major countries in North America. They cover about 24 million _____ kilometres. Both in America and Canada, English is the _____ language, while in Mexico, people speak mostly _____. In the U.S., over 2 million people _____ Chinese. The population of America is much _____ than that of Canada.Some Mexican people leave their country to _____ and work in America.

在北美洲有三大主要国家。它们占地面积约 24 000 000 _____ 千米。在美国和加拿大，英语都是 _____ 语言，而在墨西哥，人们主要说 _____ 。在美国，超过 2 000 000 人 _____ 汉语。美国人口比加拿大人口 _____ 得多。一些墨西哥人离开他们的国家到美国去 _____ 和工作。

PROJECT 专题

REPORT ABOUT CONTINENTS 关于大洲的报告

Which continent of the world interests you? Write a report about it. Don't forget the following things:
世界上哪个大洲使你感兴趣? 写一份关于它的报告。不要忘了以下事情:

- Name the continent's main cities. What countries are these cities in?
  说出这个大洲的主要城市。这些城市都在哪些国家?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

• Name its main bodies of water. 说出它的主要水源。

• Describe the continent's population. 描述这个大洲的人口。

• Describe other important facts about the continent. Does it have any famous mountains? Does it have any big lakes or deserts?
描述关于这个大洲的其他重要事实。它有著名的山脉吗？它有大的湖泊或沙漠吗？

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用

表语　主语

★**To the south of Canada is the United States.**　此句是倒装句。

系动词

①**to 表示方位**

e.g. Japan is in the east of Asia. 日本在亚洲东部。

Mexico is to the south of the United States. 墨西哥位于美国的南边。

Guangdong is on the south of Hunan. 广东在湖南南边。

New Zealand lies off the eastern coast of Australia.
新西兰位于澳大利亚东海岸附近。

考题在线 1 Heilongjiang Province is _____ the northeast of China. [绥化]

A. to　　B. in　　C. on

•考点批注

【难点】in, to, on 和 off 在方位名词前的区别

① in 表示 A 地在 B 地的范围之内。

② to 表示 A 地在 B 地的范围之外，且相隔有一定距离。

③ on 表示 A 地与 B 地接壤毗邻。

④ off 表示"离……有一些距离"。

★**Most speak English or French, but the third most common language is Chinese!**

②**the+ 序数词 + 最高级 第几最……**

e.g. Hainan Island is the second largest island of China.
海南岛是中国第二大岛。

考题在线 2 Among the four seas off the coast of China, East China Sea is the second _____. [广东]

A. deep　　B. deeper　　C. deepest　　D. the deepest

点拨：考查最高级。"the + 序数词 + 形容词最高级 + 名词单数"表示"第……最……"，结合句中的 second 可知其后用最高级，且不加定冠词 the。

★**Mexican people love their country, but many leave to live and work in the U.S.**

"leave + 地点"表示"离开某地"。

③**leave** /liːv/ *v.* (go away from) 离开；丢下

e.g. When did you leave Shanghai? 你什么时候离开上海的？

Next Friday, Alice is leaving for London.
下周五，艾丽斯要去伦敦了。

Why are you leaving Shanghai for Beijing?
你为什么要离开上海去北京呢？

"leave for + 地点"表示"动身去某地"。

"leave + 地点 + for + 地点"表示"离开某地去某地"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

在表示“把某物忘在某地”时，要用 leave 不用 forget。

Li Ming left his English book in my house.
李明把他的英语书忘在了我家。
Don't worry. There is much time left. 不用担心，还剩下很多时间。

考题在线 3 —How long is it since he _____ this school?
—He _____ for three years. [齐齐哈尔]
A. has left; has left B. left; has been away C. leaves; has left

考题在线 4 —I'm sorry I _____ my exercise book at home this morning.
—It doesn't matter. Don't forget _____ it here this afternoon.
A. left; to take B. forgot; bringing
C. left; to bring D. forgot; to bring


世界对于我没有不可能

点拨：句意：——很抱歉我今天早上把练习册落在家里了。——没关系。不要忘了今天下午把它带到这儿来。根据句意可知第一空用 left，排除 B 和 D；take 带走；bring 带来。

考题在线答案 1. B 2. C 3. B 4. C

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见294页)

一、用适当的介词填空

1. Canada is the biggest of the three countries _____ area.
2. This is a map _____ Asia.
3. About 550 million people live _____ North America.
4. Five Spring Mountain lies _____ the south of Lanzhou.
5. Mr. Liu asked us to write a report _____ Europe.

二、用方框中所给词(组)的适当形式填空

long	leave for	rich
in the east of	square kilometre	

6. China is _____ Asia.
7. Which river is the second _____ in China?
8. Ma Yun, is one of the _____ persons in the world.
9. When will you _____ Canada?
10. The city covers an area of 1 500 _____.

三、单项选择

11. The exhibition shows _____ 200 paintings of young artists from France. [沈阳]
A. at B. with C. about D. in
12. Lanzhou is the only capital city that the Yellow River, the second _____ river in China, passes through. [兰州]
A. long B. longest C. longer D. length
13. In general, the price in the city is higher than _____ in the village.
A. those B. that
C. these D. them
14. Qingdao is a beautiful city that lies _____ the east of China.
A. in B. on C. at D. to
15. China is a big country with a population _____ about 1.4 billion.
A. for B. on C. of D. at

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit Review

I. 课文原文、译文

Building Your Vocabulary

构建你的词汇库

I. Read the clues and complete the crossword using the words from this unit.

阅读提示并用本单元的单词完成这个纵横字谜。

DOWN 竖向

1. Please _____ for your exams, or you'll fail. 请为你的考试 _____，否则你会失败。
5. If you put your _____ in me, I will not let you down.
   如果你 _____ 我，我不会让你失望。
7. Do people in Britain _____ when they meet? 当英国人见面时，他们 _____ 吗?

ACROSS 横向

2. It is _____ to arrive at a party on time.
   按时到达聚会是 _____。
3. We go to school every day _____ weekends. 我们每天都去上学 _____ 周末。
4. These plants float on the _____ of the lake.
   这些植物漂浮在湖泊的 _____。
6. There are many _____ that visit China every year. 每年有许多 _____ 到中国参观。

II. Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in the box.

用方框内所给单词的正确形式填空。

translate 翻译	pronounce 发音	spell 拼写	polite 礼貌的	increase 增加；增长

1. The letter "k" in knife is not _____.
   单词 knife 中的字母 "k" 不 _____。
2. The population of that country is _____ at about 6% per year. 那个国家的人口每年 _____ 约百分之六。
3. It is difficult for me to _____ this passage into Chinese. 我很难把这段文章 _____ 成汉语。
4. Older people should be spoken to _____.
   (我们) 应该对老人 _____ 说话。
5. You've _____ my name wrong.
   你把我的名字 _____ 错了。

Grammar in Use

语法运用

I. Fill in the blanks using "have/has been" or "have/has gone".

用 "have/has been" 或 "have/has gone" 填空。

1. I _____ _____ a middle school student for over two years.
   我 _____ 一名中学生两年多了。
2. He _____ _____ to school, so you can visit him there.
   他 _____ 学校了，所以你可以在那儿拜访他。
3. We _____ _____ in college for about three months.
   我们 _____ 大学大约三个月了。
4. She _____ _____ to see Xiao Hong. Please call her later.
   她 _____ 看望肖红了。请稍后再给她打电话。
5. **A:** Where's Dad? 爸爸去哪儿了?
   B: He _____ _____ to Britain. He _____ _____ abroad several times.
   他 _____ 英国。他 _____ 出国好几次了。

II. Fill in the blanks using the correct voice.

用正确的语态填空。

1. What language _____ (speak) in Canada?
   在加拿大 _____ (说) 什么语言?
2. The stars can _____ (not see) in the daytime. 星星在白天 _____ (不能看到)。

关注微信公众号 "教辅资料站" 获取更多学习资料

3. Planes, cars and trains _____ (use) by business people for travelling.
商务人员 _____（用）飞机、小汽车和火车旅行。
4. Many tall buildings _____ (build) in our city next year. 明年我们的城市 _____（修建）许多高楼。
5. This medicine should _____ (shake) before you take it. 你吃这个药之前应该 _____（摇动）它。
6. These words could _____ (translate) by that girl. 那个女孩能 _____（翻译）这几句话。
7. Geography can _____ (learn) by travelling. 通过旅行可以 _____（了解）地理。
8. Our earth must _____ (treat) well.（我们）必须好好 _____（对待）我们的地球。
9. It _____ (say) that he has been to Antarctica. _____（据说）他去过南极洲。
10. Jim didn't come to the party because he _____ (not invite).
吉姆没有去参加聚会，因为他 _____（没有邀请）。

Listening and Speaking

听说练习



I. Listen to the passage and match.
听短文并连线。

Germans 德国人	will probably be 15 minutes early. 很有可能将会早到 15 分钟。
Americans 美国人	will be 15 minutes late. 将会晚到 15 分钟。
Englishmen 英国人	should be allowed up to an hour. 应该被允许迟到长达一小时。
Italians 意大利人	will arrive on time. 将会准时到达。

II. Work in groups. Discuss what you know about different countries around the world and the places you are most interested in. 小组活动。讨论一下你对全世界不同国家的了解和你最感兴趣的地方。

Putting It All Together

综合练习

I. Read the passage and answer the questions.
阅读短文并回答问题。

Asia 亚洲

Asia is the largest continent in area and population. It covers more than 44 million square kilometres. There are more than forty countries in Asia. Some of them are China, India and Japan. China is the biggest country in area and population.

亚洲在地域和人口上都是最大的洲。它的面积是 4400 多万平方千米。亚洲有 40 多个国家。它们中的一些是中国、印度和日本。中国在地域和人口上都是最大的国家。

More than four billion people live in Asia. That's more than half of the world's population! Mount Qomolangma(or Mount Everest) is in the Himalayas. It is the highest mountain in the world. The Yangtze River (the Changjiang River) in China is the third-longest river in the world.

有 40 多亿人住在亚洲。这比世界总人口的一半还要多！珠穆朗玛峰就在喜马拉雅山脉中。它是世界上最高的山。中国的长江是世界上第三大长河。

1. Which is the biggest country in Asia? 哪个国家是亚洲最大的国家?
2. How many people live in Asia? 有多少人住在亚洲?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. What is the highest mountain? 最高的山是什么?

Ⅱ. Suppose you have a two-week holiday to travel. Make a plan and write a short passage.

假设你有一个两周的假期去旅游。制订一个计划并写一篇短文。

Task tips: Where are you going? How are you going? Who are you going with? What are you going to do there?

任务提示：你打算去哪里？你将如何去呢？你要和谁一块去？在那里你将做些什么？

Self-Evaluation 自我评价

Find more examples from this unit. Then mark your stars. 从本单元中找出更多的例子。然后评出自己的星级。

Ⅰ. Talking about Contrast and Comparison

谈论对比和比较

But body language is not the same in all cultures.

但是肢体语言并不是在所有文化中都是相同的。

I can express contrast and comparison in English. 我可以用英语来表达对比和比较。

Ⅱ. Present Perfect Tense 现在完成时态

He has been to every continent except Antarctica.

She has gone to visit her.

除南极洲外，他已经去过每个大洲。

她已经去拜访她了。

I know how to use the present perfect tense.

我知道如何使用现在完成时态。

Ⅲ. Passive Voice 被动语态

These dry places are called deserts.

这些干燥的地方被称为沙漠。

I know about the passive voice.

我了解被动语态。

East We Go

我们向东走

Start at home. 从家出发。

East we go. 我们向东走。

Cross the ocean, 越过海洋，

To Japan. 到了日本。

Ocean east to 越海东行

America's west. 到了美国西部。

Cross that country, 跨过那个国家，

To Atlantic's coast. 到了大西洋海岸。

Europe to Russia, 从欧洲到俄罗斯，

Then we are back home again.

然后我们又回到了家。

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

现在完成时态

考点1

现在完成时态句式变化

- 肯定句：主语 +have/has + 动词过去分词 + 其他.
- 否定句：主语 +haven't/hasn't+ 动词过去分词 + 其他.
- 一般疑问句：Have/Has+ 主语 + 动词过去分词 + 其他?

肯定回答：Yes, 主语 + have/has.

否定回答：No, 主语 + haven't/hasn't.

e.g. We have just seen the film.(肯定句)

我们刚看过这部电影。

He hasn't read this book yet. (否定句)

他还没读过这本书。

—Have you been to Beijing? (一般疑问句)

你去过北京吗?

—Yes, I have. (肯定回答)

是的，我去过。

—No, I haven't. (否定回答)

不，我没去过。

知识微课

敲黑板 高频考点，易错点。牢记!

考点2 [重点] 现在完成时态的用法

考向一：现在完成时态表示过去的动作对现在造成的影响或产生的结果，常与 already, never, ever, yet, just, before, so far 等连用。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. I have never met such a strange person before.

我以前从没遇见过这么奇怪的人。

I have just received a letter from my brother.

我刚刚收到我哥哥的来信。

考题在线 1 In the past few years there _____ great changes in my hometown. [天水]

A. had been　　B. have been

C. were　　D. are

点拨：运用关键词法。句意：在过去的几年里，我的家乡发生了巨大变化。根据空格前的时间状语 In the past few years 可知，该句子的时态应为现在完成时态。

敲黑板 高频考点，易错点。牢记！

考向二：[重点、难点] 现在完成时态还可以表示从过去开始一直延续到现在的动作或状态，常与表示一段时间的状语连用。例如“for + 一段时间”，“since + 过去的某个时间点”，“since + 时间段 + ago”，“since + 从句”等。此时句子中要用延续性动词。

常用的非延续性动词可以转化为延续性动词的有：

begin→ be on

go/leave→ be away (from)

borrow→ keep

come/arrive→ be in

join→ be a member (of)

die→be dead

buy→have

速记 小筏：

记忆非延续性动词口诀：begin leave go，borrow come return，bear join die，buy arrive 开始离去，借来还，出生入死，买到家。

e.g. I've known Li Ming for 5 years.

我认识李明已有五年了。

They have lived here since 2001.

自从 2001 年他们就住在这里。

考题在线 2 Our school life _____ a lot since 2017. We have more activities now. [北京]

A. changes　　B. changed

C. will change　　D. has changed

点拨：考查时态。句意为“我们的学校生活自从 2017 年发生了很大变化，现在我们有更多的活动”。由时间状语 since 2017“自从 2017 年以来”可知，句子时态应用现在完成时。

敲黑板 高频考点，易错点。牢记！

考向三：[重点] have/has been to，have/has gone to 与 have/has been in 的用法

① have/has been to + 地点，表示曾经到过某地。

e.g. I have been to Beijing twice.

我去过北京两次。

② have/has gone to + 地点，表示到某地去了（未回来）。

e.g. Jim has gone to Suzhou.

吉姆已经去了苏州。

③ have/has been in + 地点，表示在某地呆了多久。

e.g. Linda has been in Shanghai for five years. 琳达在上海已经呆了五年了。

考题在线 3 —Where is Catherine? I haven't seen her for days.

—She _____ Wuhan. She'll be back next week. [黄冈]

A. has gone to　　B. has been to

C. have gone to　　D. have been to

点拨：考查现在完成时。句意：—— Catherine 在哪里？我很多天没见到她了。—— 她去武汉了。下周将会回来。have gone to 去了；have been to 去过。根据语境“下周回来”可知此处表示“去了”，主语是 She，用单数 has。

速记 小筏：

现在完成时用法口诀：

过去发生的动作，对现在的影响和结果，just、already 常用着。

过去的动作或状态，一直持续到现在，for、since 把时间带。

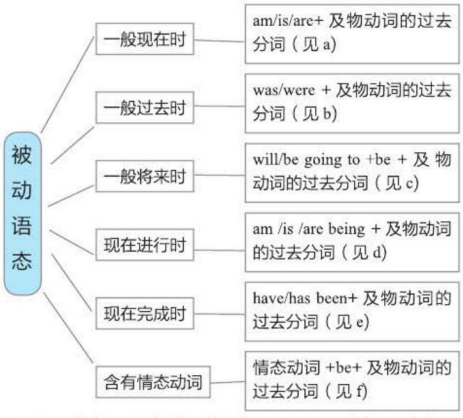
关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

have been to +地名，“曾经到过某地”。
have gone to +地点，“到某地去了未回来”。
have been in +地方，在某地呆了多久”。

被动语态

语态是动词的一种形式，用来表示主语和谓语之间的关系。主动语态表示主语是动作的执行者，被动语态表示主语是动作的承受者。

考点 1 被动语态的构成



a. President Xi Jinping is respected by Chinese people.
习近平主席被中国人民尊敬。

b. The truck was made in 1958.
这辆卡车制造于 1958 年。

c. The 32nd Olympics will be held in 2020.
第 32 届奥运会将在 2020 年举行。

d. My car is being repaired now.
现在我的车正在被修理。

e. The quality of our products has been greatly improved.
我们产品的质量已大大提高。

f. The room must be kept clean.
房间必须保持干净。

考题在线 4 A baby's first month birthday is a special event in China and _____ with a special party. [白银]

A. celebrates　　B. is celebrated
C. was celebrated　　D. will celebrate

点拨：考查被动语态。主语 A baby's first month birthday 和谓语 celebrate 之间是被动关系，故用被动语态：be+ 过去分词；根据前面的 is 可知句子时态为一般现在时，应该用 is celebrated。

考点 2 [重点、难点] 被动语态的用法

考向一：当动作的执行者不明确或不必说出时，用被动语态。

e.g. The class meeting will be held tomorrow. 明天要开班会。

考向二：当动作的承受者是谈话的中心时，用被动语态。

e.g. He was knocked down by a bus.
他被一辆公共汽车撞倒了。

考题在线 5 The Hong Kong-Zhuhai-Macao Bridge _____ in 2018. We are proud of it. [天津]

A. is completed
B. is completing
C. was completed
D. completes

点拨：考查一般过去时的被动语态。根据时间状语“in 2018”可知，本句描述的是过去发生的动作，因此用一般过去时。主语珠港澳大桥是 complete 的动作对象，因此用被动语态。

考向三：有些动词习惯上常用被动语态。

e.g. He was born in Shanghai.
他出生在上海。

考向四：当动作的执行者不是人时也常用被动语态。

e.g. We were stopped by the storm.
我们因暴风雨被滞留了。

考向五：当表达“据说，据报道，被认为”时，要用被动语态。

e.g. It is said that he was a doctor several years ago.
据说他几年前是个医生。

考题在线答案　1. B　2. D　3. A　4. B　5. C

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见294页)

听力技巧

观察标注法(在听力训练开始之前，应注意观察听力材料，从已给出的问题中获取有用的信息，必要时做好标注。也就是我们平时所说的“三分观察三分标，剩下四分要听好”。因此听力的很多工夫在“听”之外)

听力过程

听 Listening and Speaking Ⅰ 课文听力完成以下习题

课文听力

1. Who will get to the meeting early?

A. Englishmen.

B. Americans.

C. Italians.

2. Who will be 15 minutes late for the meeting?

A. Italians.

B. Englishmen.

C. Germans.

3. Who can get to the meeting on time?

A. Germans.

B. Americans.

C. Englishmen.

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

交代what

The passage is mainly about Ms. Morin's class. Last week, she asked her students to prepare presentations about their home countries. Now it's time to "show and tell".

Mariana tells about her home country—Brazil. It has a huge river and a rainforest. People are known for fun dances and colorful culture. Akia is from Turkey . It has a famous bridge connecting Europe and Asia. It is modern and old, rich and poor. Ahmed was born in Egypt. There are many other things to see and do besides pyramids. Liu Yang comes from China. China has a long history and rich culture. It has developed quickly in recent years. Many students talk about their countries with pride.

4个人分别介绍自己的国家。

单元话题

请以 Hainan Island 为题，写一篇文章。

提示：对 Hainan Island 进行地理风土方面的介绍，描述 Hainan Island 的地理位置、面积、人口、气候特征、城市等概况。

审题指导(把握中心，得方向分)

写地方介绍类作文，要用到描述性形容词、短语和句式，注意不同特征选用不同的短语和句式结构，正确选用动宾搭配或介宾搭配，以免出错。

写作技法(学会方法，巧得高分)

“PAWCIF 法”写地方介绍类作文。

一：P: Position. 介绍一个地方的地理位置。

二：A: Area and population. 介绍该地面积、人口等情况。

三：W: Weather. 介绍该地气候特征。

四：CI：City. 介绍该地一两个代表性城市。

五：F：Famous features. 该地著名的风景或景观。

写作模板(学会套路，得基本分)

A place (一个地方)

一、Position(地理位置)

located in...; is a city with a history of...;

...lies in/on...

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、Area and population（面积和人口）

covers/has an area of; with a population of...

三、Weather（气候特征）

It's like spring all the year round.

It's warm/cold/dry/wet/sunny/rainy... in spring/summer.../all the year round.

四、City（城市）

...has a history of.../with a history of...

五、Famous features（著名特征）

...is famous for.../...is well known for.../...all over the country/world...

经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	area, population, history, visitors
短语	cover an area of…, has a long history, way of life, from all over the country…
句子	1. It is the second largest island of China. 2. Many people come to Hainan Island every year…

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Hainan Island

When you go to Hainan Island, you must know that it is the second largest island of China. And it is in the south of China. You will find it mild all the year round and the places of interest there are really a feast for eyes.

It covers an area of about 35, 000 square kilometres. The population of it is over 9 million, which contains different nationalities. People there get many ways to earn a living such as growing rice, fishing and so on. Many people come to Hainan Island every year because of its beautiful coastline.

名师点评：

本文运用了"PAWCIF 法"对海南岛进行了详细的介绍，描述了海南岛的地理位置、面积人口、气候特征、城市等概况，最后提到了该地名胜，介绍准确、全面。

1. Position:...in the south of China.
2. Area and population:...covers an area of about 35 000 square kilometres. The population of it is over 9 million...
3. Weather:... mild all the year round...
4. City: Many people come to Hainan Island...
5. Famous features:... because of its beautiful coastline.

添彩点：

1. 短文开头使用 When you go to..., you must know that... 句式，开门见山，言简意赅；
2. 恰当运用了不同的短语和句式，准确描述了海南岛怡人的气候、悦目的风景。



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见294页)

一、语法专练

1. —What do you think of your hometown, Kate?

—It _____ a lot. It's more beautiful than before. [云南]

A. has changed B. changes

C. will change D. change

2. His grandmother _____ for 6 years. And he still misses her very much. [西宁]

A. died B. has died

C. has been dead D. has been died

3. Mr. Green _____ to sing an English song at the party and he sang well. [安徽]

A. was invited B. invited

C. is invited D. invites

4. I think AI (人工智能) _____ in many fields will _____ to help us solve many problems in the future. [鄂州]

A. used; be used B. is used; be used

C. used; use D. is used; use

5. —The passenger refused to move after taking another one's seat!

—What a shame! He _____ according to the new credit system(诚信体系).

A. punish B. punished

C. will punish D. will be punished

二、单元知识浓缩

从方框中选择单词或短语并用其适当形式填空。

planet island increase Indian population in total two thirds be covered with the Great Lakes square kilometre

The earth is a very special _____[6], and it faces a big problem. In the year 2010, the world's _____[7] was over 7 billion _____[8]. It is _____[9] very quickly.

There are seven continents on the earth. Antarctica _____[10] snow and ice all year round. Luckily, people can live on the other six continents. North America is a large continent, but it has only three main countries. These three countries cover about 24 million _____[11]. _____[12] are the largest bodies of fresh water in the world. The Rocky Mountains are the biggest mountains in North America.

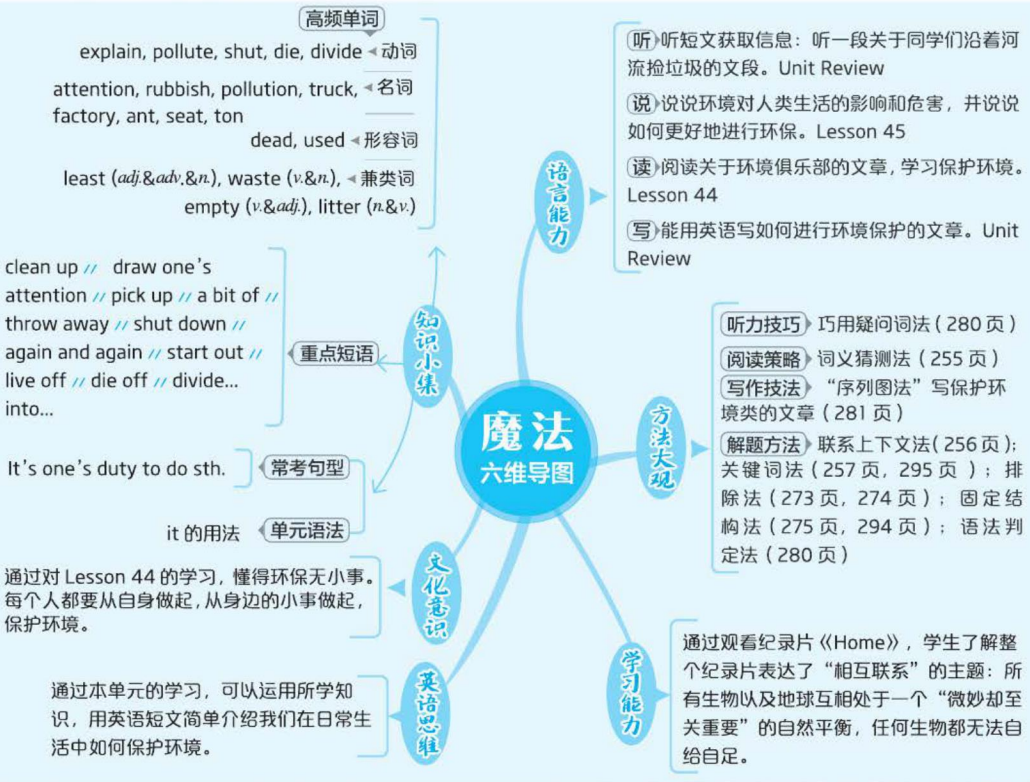
Oceans cover about _____[13] of the earth's surface. The earth has only one big ocean, but we use these names for its different parts: the Pacific Ocean, the _____[14] Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean and the Arctic Ocean. The Pacific Ocean is the largest one. There are many _____[15] in it.

A good book is a light to the soul.
好书是人们的心灵明灯。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 8 Save Our World





记忆大师

Lesson 43

必背单词

1. **attention** *n.* 注意；留心 →pay attention to 注意；留心 →draw one's attention 引起……的注意
2. **rubbish** *n.* 垃圾；废物
3. **pollution** *n.* 污染 →pollute *v.* 污染
4. **explain** *v.* 解释 →explanation *n.* 解释

必背短语

5. pick up 捡起；拿起
6. clean up 把……打扫干净；打扫
7. a bit of 一点儿
8. agree to do sth. 同意做某事
   →agree with sb. 同意某人（的看法）
   →agree on sth. 主要指双方通过协商而取得一致意见或达成协议

必背句子

9. We would **finish cleaning** in an hour!
   我们将在一小时内完成打扫！
10. Jenny **explains the plan to** the class.
    詹妮向同学们解释了这个计划。

Lesson 44

必背单词

1. **least** *n.* 最少量；最小物 *adj.* & *adv.* (little 的最高级）最少的（地）；最小的（地）→fewest *adj.* 最少的（近义词）
   →at least 至少

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. pollute *v.* 污染；弄脏 →pollution *n.* 污染
3. waste *v.* & *n.* 浪费
4. shut *v.* (shut/ shut) 关上；合上 →close *v.* 关闭 (近义词)→open *v.* 打开 (反义词)
→shut off 关闭 →shut up 闭嘴

必背短语

5. throw away 扔掉；失去
6. turn off 关掉 (电灯、收音机、水龙头等)
7. shut down 关闭；停业

必背句子

8. How much garbage do you **throw away** after lunch? 午饭后你扔掉多少垃圾?
9. Environment clubs **encourage** students **to** bring their lunches in reusable bags and dishes. 环境俱乐部鼓励学生们用可再次使用的袋子和盘子带他们的午餐。

Lesson 45

必背单词

1. empty *v.* & *adj.* 把……弄空；空的
→full *adj.* 满的 (反义词)
2. litter *n.* & *v.* 垃圾；使乱七八糟，乱扔

必背短语

3. too much 太多

必背句子

4. They **need to throw** away only one small bag of garbage! 他们只需要扔一小袋垃圾!

Lesson 46

必背单词

1. truck *n.* 货车；手推车
2. factory *n.* 工厂 →factories (复数)

必背短语

3. take care of 照顾，照料 →take good care of = look after…well 好好照顾
4. make sure 确保；确信
→ make sure of sth. 确保……
5. put...in ... 把……放在……里
6. make a difference 有影响 / 有关系 →make some/no difference (to sb./sth.) (对某人 / 某物) 有些影响 / 没有影响，对 (某人 / 某物) 重要 / 不重要

必背句子

7. I **try to save** water in many ways.
我试着在许多方面节约用水。

Lesson 47

必背单词

1. ant *n.* 蚂蚁
2. die *v.* (现在分词为 dying) 死 →dying *adj.* 垂死的 →dead *adj.* 死亡的

必背短语

3. be filled with 充满；装满 →fill…with… 用……装满…… →be full of 充满；装满
4. start out 出发，起初是；开始从事
5. live off 以……为食，以……为生

必背句子

6. Living things **start out** weak and small and slowly grow strong and big.
生物刚开始是弱小的，然后慢慢地成长强大。
7. If the birds eat the sick or dead fish, they may **die off**. 如果鸟吃了生病的或死了的鱼，它们可能会相继死掉。

Lesson 48

必背单词

1. used *adj.* 用过的；二手的；旧的
→a used car 一辆二手车
2. divide *v.* 分开；分割 →divide…into… 把……分成……→divide…from… 把……和……分开
3. seat *n.* 座位 →take a seat 就座
→take one's seat 坐下，就座
→sit *v.* 坐下
4. ton *n.* 吨 →tons of 很多

必背短语

5. put on 穿上；戴上 →put up 张贴；建造
→put out 伸出 →put away 放好；储存

必背句子

6. Today, Danny **made** a car **out of** garbage!
今天，丹尼用垃圾做了一辆小汽车!
7. I think it's our duty to protect the environment. 我认为保护环境是我们的责任。

单元必背语法

1. It's noon. 现在是正午。
2. It means "garbage" in American English.
在美式英语中它意思是 " 垃圾 "。
3. It would take too long. 那要花太长时间。
4. It's a good way **to reduce** packaging.
这是减少包装的一种好方式。

关注微信公众号 " 教辅资料站 " 获取更多学习资料

Lesson 43 Let's Clean Up!



I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- When you see a lot of garbage in your schoolyard, how do you feel?
  当你在你的校园里看到很多垃圾的时候，你感觉怎么样？
- Do you know about World Environment Day? What is it?
  你知道世界环境日吗？它是什么？



It's noon. Jenny, Brian and Danny are outside in the schoolyard /ˈskuːljɑːd/.
中午，詹妮、布赖恩和丹尼在校园外面。

Jenny: Today's June 5. It's World Environment Day! 今天是六月五号，是世界环境日！

Brian: It's a special day to draw people's attention ① /əˈtenʃn/ to the environment. What shall we do today? Look at all of this rubbish /ˈrʌbɪʃ/! 它是一个引起人们注意环境的特殊日子。我们今天要做些什么呢？看看所有的这些垃圾！

Danny: What does "rubbish" mean? I don't know that word.
"rubbish" 是什么意思？我不认识那个单词。

Brian: It means "garbage" in American English.
在美式英语中，它的意思是 "garbage"。

Danny: Oh, I see. There's a lot of rubbish in the schoolyard. We should pick up ② the garbage /ˈgɑːbɪdʒ/! 噢，我知道了。在校园里有许多的垃圾。我们应该捡起垃圾！

Jenny: Let's do it now. 我们现在就捡吧。

Danny: It would take too long. There are only three of us!
这会花费太长时间。只有我们三个人！

Jenny: We're studying pollution ③ /pəˈluːʃn/ in class this week. Garbage is a type of pollution. This could be a class project! We can ask our classmates to help us. 这周我们在课上正学习污染。垃圾是污染物的一种。这可以成为一项课堂专题研究！我们可以让同学们来帮助我们。

Brian: Good idea. Each student could clean up ④ a bit of ⑤ the schoolyard. We would finish cleaning in an hour! 好主意。每一个学生可以打扫校园的一小片。我们将在一小时内完成打扫！
(Jenny explains ⑥ /ɪkˈspleɪnz/ the plan to the class. All the students agree to ⑦ help. They wear gloves and carry brown bags. They begin to pick up the garbage.)(詹妮向同学们解释了这个计划。所有的学生都同意帮忙。他们戴上手套并拿来棕色袋子。他们开始捡垃圾。)

Jenny: Danny, you lost your homework, right? I think I found it! Look at this piece of paper!
丹尼，你的家庭作业丢了，对吗？我想我找到它了！看看这张纸！

Danny: Oh no! 噢，不！

Learning Tip 学习提示

World Environment Day began in 1972. It's organized by the U.N. every year in different countries. Its aim is to remind people to protect the environment. 世界环境日开始于1972年。它是由联合国每年在不同的国家组织的。它的宗旨就是提醒人们保护环境。

Let's Do It! 做一做！

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

1 Read the lesson and write true (T) or false (F). 阅读课文并判断正 (T) 误 (F)。

1. Jenny, Brian and Danny are going to do something on World Environment Day.
   詹妮、布赖恩和丹尼打算在世界环境日这天做些事情。 ( )
2. They are studying geography this week. 他们这周正在学习地理。 ( )
3. They are going to pick up the garbage on the street. 他们打算去捡街道上的垃圾。 ( )
4. Jenny found Danny's homework. 詹妮找到了丹尼的家庭作业。 ( )

2 Listen to the dialogue and tick the correct answers. 听对话并在正确答案前打对钩。

1. Where are they talking? 他们正在哪里谈话?
   ☐ In the market. 在市场。 ☐ In the schoolyard. 在校园。
2. What are they talking about? 他们在谈论什么?
   ☐ Picking up garbage. 捡垃圾。 ☐ Playing soccer. 踢足球。
3. What is the class project about? 课堂专题研究是关于什么的?
   ☐ Environment. 环境。 ☐ Pollution. 污染。



3 Complete the dialogue with the correct forms of the words in the box.
用方框中所给单词的正确形式完成对话。

pollution 污染	rubbish 垃圾	schoolyard 校园	agree 同意	clean 打扫	attention 注意

Jeff: Look at the sky! It's always grey. We can't even see the sky clearly.
看一看天空！它总是灰色的。我们甚至都无法清楚地看到天空。

Marina: If this goes on, the birds will fly away and never come back.
如果再这样发展下去，鸟儿将会飞走再也不回来了。

Jeff: Our river used to be very clean. But now look at the water! There is too much _____ left by the factories. 我们的河流过去很清澈。但现在看一看这水！有太多工厂留下的 _____。

Marina: If this goes on, the fish will die. People should do something to stop the _____.
如果再这样发展下去，鱼儿将会死亡。人们应该做些事情来阻止_____。

Jeff: I _____. Let's do something to draw people's _____ to this problem. How about putting up a poster? 我 _____。让我们做一些事情来让人们 _____ 这个问题。贴一张海报怎么样?

Marina: Good idea. Jeff, I think our _____ is also quite dirty. Let's call our classmates to help clean it before the new term starts. 好主意。杰夫，我认为我们的 _____ 也很脏。在新学期开始前，我们叫同班同学们来帮助（我们）一起打扫它吧。

Jeff: OK. We would finish _____ in an hour! 好的。我们一小时之内就可以完成 _____ !

4 Each World Environment Day has a theme. Here are some examples. Can you think of your own theme for it? 每个世界环境日都有一个主题。下面是一些例子。你可以为它想出自己的主题吗?

1994	One Earth, One Family 一个地球，一个家庭
1997	For Life on Earth 为了地球上的生命
2002	Give Earth a Chance 让地球充满生机
2005	Green Cities — Plan for the Planet 营造绿色城市，呵护地球家园
2011	Forests: Nature at Your Service 森林：大自然为您效劳
2012	Green Economy: Does It Include You? 绿色经济：你参与了吗?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★It's a special day to draw people's attention to the environment.

关于 attention 的短语：
pay attention to 注意
draw one's attention 引起某人的注意
attract one's attention 吸引某人的注意
give attention to 注意

① **attention** /ə'tenʃn/ *n.* 注意；留心

e.g. You should pay your attention to your work.
你应该把你的注意力放到你的工作上。
You should pay attention to your handwriting. 你应该注意你的书写。
The design of the building attracted my attention.
这座建筑物的设计吸引了我的注意。

是不可数名词，因此不能与不定冠词连用，也没有复数形式。

考题在线 1 The math teacher got angry with me when I did not ____ him in class yesterday. [贵港]
A. look for　B. take care　C. pay attention to　D. fall asleep

★We should pick up the garbage!

② **pick up** 捡起，拾起　动副型短语，接代词作宾语时，代词必须放在 pick 和 up 的中间。

e.g. A waste bag is on the floor. Please pick it up.
一个废袋子在地板上。请把它捡起来。
I'll pick you up at 5:30 this afternoon. 今天下午 5 点半我开车来接你。
She picked up some Chinese when she visited China last month.
她上个月去中国游览时顺便学会了一些汉语。
She decided to start picking up the house from top to bottom.
她决定开始彻底收拾那个房子。





pick up
捡起
（开车）接人
收拾，整理

★We're studying pollution in class this week.

③ **pollution** /pə'lu:ʃn/ *n.* 污染　pollution 是不可数名词

一般用“污染源或者被污染物 + pollution”构成表示各种污染的名称。

e.g. We should not pollute our rivers with waste.
我们不应该用废弃物污染我们的河流。

light pollution 光污染
air pollution 空气污染

考题在线 2 To make a green world, we should try to reduce air _____ (pollute) by walking more and driving less. [南通]

pollution—pollute
pollute 常用于 pollute sth. with/by sth. 结构中。

★Each student could clean up a bit of the schoolyard.

④ **clean up** 打扫；把……打扫干净

敲黑板 动副型短语。代词放中间，名词放中间或后边！

e.g. Look at your desk! Clean it up!
看看你的桌子！把它清理干净！

考题在线 3 Many volunteers will help to _____ the city parks next Friday. [厦门]
A. give up　B. pick up　C. clean up

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

⑤ **a bit of 一点儿** 敲黑板 高频考点，牢记！

a bit of 作定语修饰不可数名词，相当于 a little。

e.g. He knows a bit of/a little English. 他懂一点儿英语。

This pair of shoes is a bit/a little expensive. 这双鞋有点儿贵。

The speaker spoke up a bit/a little so as to make himself heard more clearly.

演讲者把嗓门提高了一点儿，以便使他自己被别人听得更清楚。

a bit "有点儿；一点儿"，是用来说明程度的副词短语，在句中作状语，可修饰动词、形容词、副词和比较级，相当于 a little。

考题在线 4 I'm _____ thirsty. Please give me _____ water.

A. a bit of; a little　　B. a bit; a little

C. a little; a bit　　D. a little of; a bit of

点拨：句意：我有点儿渴了。请给我点儿水喝。a bit 和 a little 均可用于修饰形容词或副词。a bit of 相当于 a little，后可接不可数名词。

★**Jenny explains the plan to the class.**

⑥ **explain** /ɪk'splem/ *v.* 解释 敲黑板 本课重点，牢记！

explain 的用法总结：

- explain sth. to sb. 向某人解释某事
- explain +从句 解释……
- explain oneself 把自己的意思表达清楚

【重点】explain 的用法

e.g. We explained our plan to the committee.

我们向委员会解释了我们的计划。

I explained that I missed the bus. 我解释说我错过了那班公共汽车。

Could you explain yourself, please? 请把你的意思表达清楚，好吗？

考题在线 5 Sally loves chocolate. That _____ (explain) why it's hard for her to lose weight. [无锡]

agree 的其他搭配：

① agree with sb. 表示"同意某人（的看法）"。

② agree on sth. 主要指双方通过协商而取得一致意见或达成协议。

★**All the students agree to help.**

⑦ **agree to do sth.** 同意做某事

e.g. They agreed to give it to me the next day. 他们同意第二天把它给我。

I quite agree with you. 我完全同意你（的看法）。

Can we agree on a date? 我们能约定一个日期吗？

考题在线答案 1. C　2. pollution　3. C　4. B　5. explains

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见294页）

一、根据句意及首字母提示完成单词

1. Air p_____ is bad for our health.
2. I'm hungry. I want to eat a b_____ of bread.
3. He was busy reading. He didn't pay a_____ to the teacher. 【导学号：6505386】
4. The teacher kept e_____ the use of the idiom to me until I understood it. [福州]
5. Please pick up the r_____ and throw it into the dustbin.

二、从方框中选择适当的词并用其适当形式填空

pick up　agree to　pollute　clean up draw one's attention

6. Can you help me to _____ the classroom?
7. _____ that bag on the floor.
8. If a river is _____, farmers can't use the water for their crops. [衢州]
9. I _____ tell him the truth.
10. Many people in the world watched the 2018 FIFA World Cup. It _____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 44 Environment Clubs

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What do you do when you see somebody throwing garbage on the ground?
  当你看到有人往地上扔垃圾时你会做什么?
- Does your school have an environment club?
  你们学校有环境俱乐部吗?

I'm a member of an environment club.
我是环境俱乐部的一名成员。

课文朗读

In North America, many students join environment clubs. In an environment club, students work together to reduce① /rɪˈdjuːs/ pollution and protect the environment. The following is a list of their activities and advice. 在北美，很多学生加入了环境俱乐部。在环境俱乐部里，学生们一起工作来减少污染，保护环境。下面是一张他们的活动和建议清单。

• No-garbage lunches: How much garbage do you throw away② after lunch? Environment clubs encourage③ students to bring their lunches in reusable /ˌriːˈjuːzəbl/ bags and dishes. The class with the least④ /liːst/ garbage gets a prize. 没有垃圾的午餐：午饭后你扔掉多少垃圾？环境俱乐部鼓励学生们用可再次使用的袋子和盘子带他们的午餐。(制造) 最少垃圾的班级可获得一个奖品。

• No-car days: On a no-car day, nobody comes to school in a car — neither the students nor the teachers! Cars pollute /pəˈluːt/ our air, so remember:

无汽车日：在无汽车日这一天，没有人坐车来学校——学生和老师都不！汽车污染我们的空气，所以记住：

Walk, skip /skɪp/, bike or run.

走、蹦蹦跳跳地走、骑自行车或跑。

Use your legs! It's lots of fun!

用你的腿！有许多乐趣！

• Bring your own shopping bag! Bring your own bag when you go shopping. It's a good way to reduce packaging /ˈpækɪdʒɪŋ/.

自带购物袋！当你去购物时，带上自己的袋子。这是减少包装的一种好方法。

• Save water! Did you know that a leaky /ˈliːkɪ/ toilet can waste⑤ /weɪst/ 20 to 40 litres /ˈliːtəz/ of water an hour? In a year, that would fill a large swimming pool! In environment clubs, students fix leaky toilets and sinks /sɪŋks/.

节约用水！你知道一个漏水的抽水马桶一小时会浪费 20 到 40 升的水吗？一年的时间，那就能装满一个大的游泳池！在环境俱乐部里，学生们修理漏水的抽水马桶和水池。

• Save electricity /ɪˌlekˈtrɪsətɪ/! Turn off the lights when you leave a room. Turn off⑥ the television and shut /shʌt/ down the computer when you are not using them. 节约用电！当你离开房间时要关灯。当你不看电视，不用电脑时要关闭它们。

Let's work together to make our environment clean.Could your school do some of these things? 让我们一起努力使我们的环境变干净吧。你们学校能做一些这样的事情吗?

Let's Do It! 做一做!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1 Read the lesson and answer the questions.

阅读课文并回答问题。

1. Why do many students join environment clubs in North America?

   在北美，为什么有许多学生加入环境俱乐部?

2. Why do the students take their own bags when they go shopping?

   为什么学生去购物时要自带袋子?

3. How do the students in an environment club save water? How do they save electricity?

   环境俱乐部的学生如何节约用水? 他们如何节约用电?

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in the box.

用方框中所给单词的正确形式填空。

waste 浪费	least 最少	nobody 没有人
shut 关闭	pollute 污染	

1. The soap factory _____ the drinking water in this area.

   这家肥皂工厂 _____ 这个地区的饮用水。

2. Students should not _____ paper.

   学生们不应该 _____ 纸张。

3. _____ knows when life on the earth started.

   _____ 知道地球上的生命开始于何时。

4. He who talks the most knows the _____.

   说话最多的人知道得 _____。

5. I couldn't _____ the window because it was stuck.

   我无法 _____ 窗户，因为它被卡住了。

3 Read the passage and fill in the blanks.

阅读短文并填空 。

In some countries of the world, people have started to reduce the amount of garbage they make. How? First, they buy _____ things. They try to buy only what they really need. When you buy fewer things, you _____ away fewer things. Second, they reuse things. They use things, and then they use them again! Third, they recycle things. They make old things into new things. People call these the "three Rs": reduce, _____ and _____. The three Rs help us remember that _____ is a problem.

在世界上的一些国家，人们已经开始减少他们制造的垃圾的数量。他们如何做的? 首先，他们买 _____ 东西。他们尽量只买一些他们真正需要的东西。当你买的东西少了，你 _____ 的东西也就少了。第二，他们重复使用东西。他们使用东西，然后他们再次使用它们! 第三，他们回收利用东西。他们把旧东西制成新东西。人们把这些称为"3R"：减少，_____ 和 _____。"3R"帮我们记住 _____ 是一个问题。

4 Suppose your school's environment club wants to make a poster about littering and recycling. Can you make one? Here's an example. 假设你们学校的环境俱乐部想制作一张关于扔垃圾和再循环的海报。你能制作一张吗? 下面是一个例子。

Stop Pollution! 停止污染!

We have a nice, clean schoolyard.

我们有一个美丽、洁净的校园。

Let's keep it this way.

让我们一直这样保持下去吧。

Don't litter! 不要乱扔垃圾!

Always put your garbage in a garbage can.

总把你的垃圾扔到垃圾桶里。

Never throw it on the ground.

永远不要把它扔到地上。

Recycle! 再循环!

Stop and think before you throw something out: 在你扔一些东西之前停下来想一想:

Can I use this again? 我可以再次使用它吗?

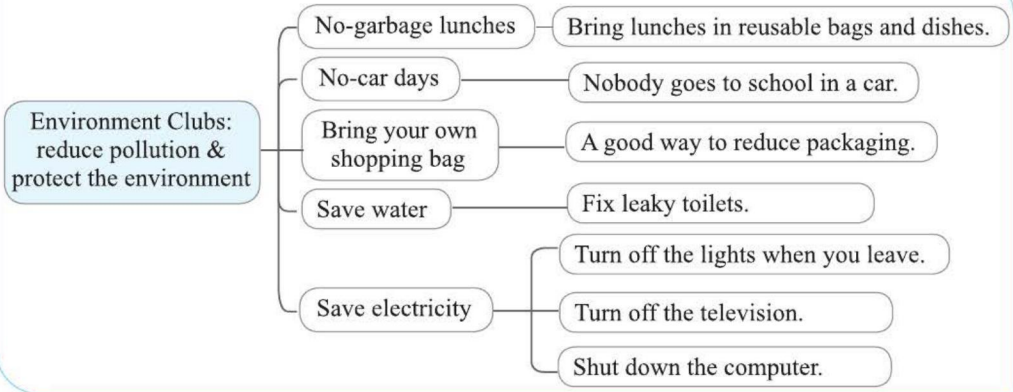
Can this be recycled? 它可以被回收利用吗?

Together, we can help keep our world clean!

我们可以一起来帮助保持我们的世界干净!

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见294页)

拓展阅读

阅读策略

词义猜测法(就是要正确理解短文中个别关键词，可利用同义词、近义词、构词法及给定义等方法推测词义，甚至在通篇理解的基础上推测并发现所给生词的词义。这需要有意识地去训练并最终具备这种不用词典而通过上下文来认识生词的能力。)

阅读过程

一、速读 Lesson 44，选择正确答案

1. What's the main idea of the text?

(主旨大意题)

A. No-garbage lunches.

B. No-car days.

C. Save water.

D. Environment clubs.

二、细读文章，选择正确答案

2. When you go shopping, you'd better _____.

(细节理解题)

A. bring your own bag

B. go with your friends

C. save your money

D. not buy anything

3. ⊙ A leaky toilet can waste 20 to 40 litres of water an hour. (词义猜测题)

A. 渗漏的　　B. 暴露的

C. 结实的　　D. 堵着的

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★In an environment club, students work together to reduce pollution and protect the environment.

① **reduce** /rɪ'dju:s/ *v.* (to make sth. less or smaller in size, quantity, price, etc.) 减少　reduce 的反义词为 increase(增加)。

e.g. The number of the students has reduced to 200 this year.

今年的学生数量已减少到了两百人。

We have reduced the price by 10 percent.

我们已经把价格降低 10% 了。

常用短语：
reduce to 减少到……；
reduce by 减少了……

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



throw away 扔掉



throw about 乱扔东西



throw at 朝……扔

★How much garbage do you throw away after lunch?

敲黑板 动副短语，宾语是代词，放中间；宾语是名词，放中间或后边！

② **throw away** 扔掉；失去

e.g. You should throw away the old chairs and buy some new ones.
你应该把旧椅子扔掉，买些新的。
This is your chance, and don't throw it away.
这是你的机会，别失去它。

throw 构成的短语：

含 throw 的短语：
- throw off 摆脱
- throw at 投向
- throw out 扔掉
- throw up 呕吐
- throw oneself into 投身于

考题在线 1 —Don't _____ the waste paper. We can collect and recycle it.
—You're right. Everyone should be a greener person. [福建]
A. blow away　　B. put away　　C. throw away

点拨：运用联系上下文法。句意：——不要把废纸扔掉。我们可以收集起来再利用。——对。大家都应该争当绿色环保者。blow away 驱散；put away 将……收起；throw away 扔掉。由"collect and recycle it"和"a greener person"可知是指"不要扔掉废纸"。

★Environment clubs encourage students to bring their lunches in reusable bags and dishes.

敲黑板 高频考点，易错点，牢记！

③ **encourage** /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ/ *v.* 鼓励；激励

e.g. My mother encouraged me to have a try. 我母亲鼓励我试一试。
Her father encourages her in her drawing.
她的父亲在她的绘画方面鼓励她。
He didn't give me much courage. Instead, he discouraged me.
他没有给我太多勇气。相反，他使我泄气。

encourage sb. to do sth. 鼓励某人做某事
encourage sb. in sth. 在某事上鼓励或支持某人

encourage 的反义词为 discourage，意为"使泄气"。

考题在线 2 My teachers always encourage us _____ (study) hard on different subjects. [贵阳]

核心素养之鼓励他人

培养"鼓励他人"的素养

◆ 鼓励是一种力量(power)，鼓励的力量是巨大的。鼓励是火种，它可以点燃人们心中的希望和信心之火；鼓励是种子，只要埋下，不论多么厚的土层，终究能够破土发芽；鼓励是阳光雨露，滋润着破土的幼苗茁壮成长；鼓励是推进器，鼓励是加速器，激励着人们更疾速地到达成功的终点。

◆ 【素养行动】让我们在现实生活中多鼓励他人吧。让他人拥有一份信心(confidence)，拥有一份勇气(courage)，走好人生的每一步。

◆ 【素养行动结果】了解鼓励的力量，学会鼓励他人。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★The class with the least garbage gets a prize.

④【高频】**least** /li:st/ *adj.* & *adv.* (little的最高级)最少的(地)；最小的(地)

n. 最少量；最小物

敲黑板 高频考点，易错点，牢记！

e.g. He did the least work of all.

在所有人当中，他做了最少的工作。

I have fewer dresses and less money than you.

我的连衣裙及金钱都比你的少。

It happened just when we least expected it.

它发生在我们最料想不到的时候。

At least ten people were killed in the crash.

至少有十人在撞车事故中丧生。

least 修饰不可数名词时，一般用来指量，不指具体的数。

little—less—least

least, less 也可作副词，用来修饰形容词或动词。

at least 至少，其后常跟表示数量的词。

考题在线 3 Of all the subjects, English is _____ for me. I don't like it at all. [淮安]

A. less interesting

B. more interesting

C. the least interesting

D. the most interesting

方法真题练

点拨：本题采用关键词法。由句中的 Of all the subjects“在所有科目中”知，应该用形容词的最高级；根据第二句句意“我一点儿也不喜欢它。”可知对“我”来说，英语是最没意思的。

★Did you know that a leaky toilet can waste 20 to 40 litres of water an hour?

敲黑板 高频考点，重点，牢记！

⑤ **waste** /weɪst/ *v.* & *n.* 浪费

e.g. Don't waste time on it anymore.

不要再在它上面浪费时间了。

You are wasting your time (in) trying to explain it to him.

你努力跟他解释这件事是在浪费时间。

waste 作动词，常用于以下结构：

waste time/money on... 在……方面浪费时间/金钱

waste time/money (in) doing sth. 浪费时间/金钱做某事

【高频】waste 可作名词，意为“浪费，滥用”，是不可数名词，但可与 a 连用；作为“垃圾；废物”讲时，常用复数形式，recyclable wastes 可再循环的废物。

e.g. It's a waste of time to talk to him.

跟他谈话就是浪费时间。

waste 作名词时的常用句型为：It's a waste of time/money to do sth. 做某事是浪费时间/金钱。

考题在线 4 Don't _____ any more time, or we will miss the meeting. [天津]

A. save B. trust C. waste D. love

点拨：考查动词词义辨析。save“节省，挽救”；trust“信任”；waste“浪费”；love“爱”。根据语境可知句意“不要再浪费时间了，否则我们会错过这次会议。”

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**Turn off the television and shut down the computer when you are not using them.**

⑥ **turn off 关闭**



辨析: turn off, turn on, turn up 与 turn down

turn off	意为“关掉，关闭”，一般指关闭电源、水等，后面常接电器、仪器等。
turn on	意为“打开”，一般指打开电源、水等，后面常接电器、仪器等。
turn up	调大电器等的频率、音量等。
turn down	调小电器等的频率、音量等。

e.g. Please turn off the radio. My grandma is sleeping.

请关掉收音机。我的奶奶正在睡觉。

考题在线答案 1. C 2. to study 3. C 4. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见294页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. John has the _____ (little) bread of all the students.

2. The naughty boy _____ (waste) much money.

3. It's a good way _____ (reduce) the packaging.

4. My mother always encourages me _____ (face) the difficulties bravely.

5. Don't _____ (throw) away the things easily. Maybe they are useful.

二、单项选择

6. The shop assistant showed her several mobile phones and she chose _____ expensive one.

A. less B. least

C. the less D. the least

7. Jessica's parents always encourage her _____ out her opinions. [鞍山]

A. speak B. speaking

C. to speak D. will speak

8. —Ann, I am worried I'm getting fatter. What shall I do?

—I think you should eat _____ food and do more exercise. [阜康]

A. more B. less C. much D. little

9. —It's getting dark. Could you please _____ the light for me?

—All right. Just a minute. [重庆]

A. keep on B. turn on C. try on D. put on

10. As more and more restaurants join the "clear your plate" campaign, people are encouraged _____ food any more.

A. not waste B. not wasting

C. not to waste D. not wasted

三、连词成句

11. reduces, heart,risk, it, of, the,disease

_____.

12. mustn't, away, garbage, you, throw, the, everywhere

_____.

13. waste, it's, money, a, of

_____.

14. a, of, environment, I'm, club, member, an

_____.

15. down, when, it, computer, shut, don't, use, the, you

_____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 45 Let's Sort Garbage!

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- What do you do with your garbage? 你怎样处理你的垃圾?
- What kinds of things can be recycled and reused? 哪类东西是可循环利用的?

课文朗读

Danny empties ① /ˈemptiz/ two bags of garbage onto the floor.

丹尼把两袋垃圾倒在了地板上。

Jenny: That's a lot of garbage! Can I help you sort ② /sɔːt/ it?

那么多的垃圾啊！我可以帮你把它分类吗?

Danny: Yes, please. Let's put the glass here, the metal here, the plastic here and the paper here.

是的，太感谢了。我们把玻璃放这儿，金属放这儿，塑料放这儿，还有纸放这儿。

(After they sort the garbage, Danny and Jenny are surprised. Almost all of it can be reused or recycled /ˌriːˈsaɪkld/! They need ③ to throw away only one small bag of garbage!)

(在他们分好类以后，丹尼和詹妮都非常惊讶！几乎所有的垃圾都可以再次使用或回收利用！他们只需要扔掉一小袋垃圾！)

Jenny: People throw too much ④ away. They shouldn't waste so much!

人们扔掉了太多。他们不应该浪费这么多!

Danny: That's right. Look! There is more paper than plastic. And there is less metal /ˈmetl/ than plastic /ˈplæstɪk/. There is the least amount /əˈmaʊnt/ of glass.

你说得对。看！纸比塑料多。金属比塑料少。其中玻璃是最少的。

Jenny: And the most amount is paper. It is a waste to use paper only on one side.

最多的是纸。仅单面用纸是一种浪费。

Danny: Hey! I found a toy car. One of the wheels is broken ⑤. I'll take this car home and clean it. Then I'll use some glue to fix the broken wheel. When I finish fixing this car, I will give it to my little cousin, Debbie.

喂！我发现一辆玩具汽车。一个车轮是坏的。我将把这辆车带回家并把它清洗干净。然后我用胶水把坏的车轮固定好。当我把这辆车修好之后，我将把它送给我的小堂妹，黛比。

Jenny: Nobody should throw away a toy like this. It can be fixed. It's not right to waste things. Look at all of the glass. It can all be recycled and made into new glass.

任何人都不应该扔掉这样的玩具。它可以修好的。浪费东西是不对的。看所有的玻璃。它都可以被回收，制成新的玻璃。

Danny: A lot of glass is broken. It's dangerous to leave broken glass on the ground. Once, I cut my foot on a piece of broken glass.

许多玻璃是碎的。把碎玻璃留在地上很危险。曾经一片碎玻璃割伤了我的脚。

Jenny: Litter ⑥ /ˈlɪtə/ can hurt ⑦ people!

垃圾可以伤害人!

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and write true (T) or false (F). 阅读课文并判断正 (T) 误 (F)。

1. There is a lot of garbage: glass, metal, plastic and paper.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

有许多垃圾：玻璃、金属、塑料和纸张。（ ）

2. There is the most amount of glass and the least amount of paper.

（在这些垃圾里）玻璃最多，纸最少。（ ）

3. Danny found Debbie's toy car in the garbage.

丹尼在垃圾里找到了黛比的玩具车。（ ）

4. Danny once cut his foot on a piece of broken glass.

丹尼曾经被一块碎玻璃割伤了脚。（ ）

2 Circle the words that "it" refers to in each sentence.

圈出每个句子中"it"所指的词。

Example: 例子：

It is a waste [to use paper only on one side].

[只单面用纸]是一种浪费。

1. It is fun to travel! 旅行很有趣！
2. It is not right to waste things.

浪费东西是不对的。

3. It is quite easy to find information with this program.

用这个程序找信息很容易。

4. They think it is rude to point with a finger.

他们认为用手指指人是粗鲁的。

5. It is dangerous to leave broken glass on the ground.

把碎玻璃留在地上很危险。

Learn to learn

学会学习

As we know, "it" can be used to refer to time, weather, distance or something mentioned before. Study the sentences above. Can you find other ways of using "it"?

我们都知道，"it"可用来指时间、天气、距离或之前提到的事物。研究上面的句子。你能发现"it"的其他用法吗？

PROJECT

专题

SORT THE GARBAGE

垃圾分类

Go for a walk around your neighbourhood. Take a bag with you and pick up any garbage you see. Wear gloves because garbage is dirty.

在你的社区周围转一圈。你随身带一个袋子并把所见到的任何垃圾捡起来。戴上手套，因为垃圾很脏。

Bring the garbage to school. Don't throw it away!

把垃圾带到学校。不要扔掉它！

What kind of garbage did you find? Sort the garbage. Make a pile for paper, plastic, metal, glass and other things. 你找到了哪种垃圾？把垃圾分类。把纸、塑料、金属、玻璃和其他东西各放成一堆。

• How much of each type of garbage do you have?

每种垃圾你有多少呢？

• What type do you have the least/most amount of?

哪种垃圾你有最少 / 最多？

Do you want to throw away the garbage now? Don't! What else could you do with it? Think! Could you use some of the garbage again? How?

你现在想扔掉这些垃圾吗？不要！你还能如何处理它呢？想一想！你可以再次使用其中的一些垃圾吗？如何使用？

How could people make less garbage? Talk about this and write down your ideas. Now you can take out the garbage!

人们如何才能制造更少的垃圾？讨论这一点并写下你的想法。现在你可以将垃圾拿出去了！

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

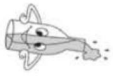
•考点应用 •考点批注

Danny empties two bags of garbage onto the floor.

① **empty** /'emptɪ/ *v.* 把……弄空 *adj.* 空的

反义词 empty ⟷ full

倒空 *v.* ← empty → *adj.* 空的





e.g. Can you empty the plates for me?

你能替我把盘子里的东西倒掉吗?

I looked into the classroom but I found it empty.

我朝教室里看，但我发现里面空无一人。

Please empty the box. And it will be empty.

请清空箱子。那它就会是空的。

考题在线 1 There is an _____ (空的) bottle on the road. Everyone should be careful. [南京]

Can I help you sort it?

② **sort** /sɔ:t/ *v.* (classify or separate; kind) 把…… 分类，整理 *n.* 类；种类

sort 作动词常用短语：
- sort out 理顺；整理
- sort...into 把……分类

e.g. It took quite a while to sort out all our luggage.

整理我们全部的行李花了不少时间。

He helped me to sort the fruits into apples, pears and bananas.

他帮我把水果分成了苹果、梨和香蕉。

Bamboo is a sort of hollow plant.

竹子是一种中空植物。

sort 作名词时，为可数名词，相当于 kind/type。

He was turned to for advice by all sorts of people.

各种各样的人都向他寻求建议。

相关短语：
- a sort of 一种……
- all sorts of 各种各样的

考题在线 2 垃圾很容易分开并归入塑料、玻璃和纸三类。

Rubbish can easily be separated and _____ _____ plastics, glass and paper.

They need to throw away only one small bag of garbage!

③ **need** /ni:d/ *v.* 需要

need 需要
- 实义动词
  - need to do sth. — 表示主语与 need 后的动词存在主动关系
  - need doing 或 need to be done — 表示主语与 need 后的动词存在被动关系
- 情态动词 — 引导一般疑问句时，肯定回答用 must，否定回答用 needn't

need 作实义动词时，有时态、人称和数的变化，need 后可接名词、代词作宾语，也可接动词不定式和动名词作宾语。

知识微课

e.g. They need my help.

他们需要我的帮助。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

need作情态动词时，常用于否定句或疑问句中。其否定形式为needn't，意为"不必"。没有时态、人称和数的变化。后接动词原形。构成疑问句时，只需将need提至句首。

Jim needs to do some exercise.

吉姆需要做一些锻炼。

These shoes need mending. 这些鞋需要修补。

【难点】need doing = need to be done，意为"需要被……"

e.g. My watch needs repairing.= My watch needs to be repaired.

我的手表需要被修理。

He needn't go there tomorrow. 明天他不必去那里。

Need he go yesterday? 昨天他有必要去吗？

考题在线 3 —Must I finish reading the book today, Mr. Brown?

—No, you _____. You can finish it in two days. [黄冈]

A. needn't B. mustn't C. can't D. couldn't

点拨：考查情态动词使用规则。句意：——布朗先生，我必须今天看完这本书吗？——不，你_____。你可以在两天之内看完。在英语中must表示"必须"之意的一般疑问句，其否定回答用needn't，意为"没有必要"。

★People throw too much away.

④ **too much** 太多

敲黑板 易错点，高频考点，牢记！

e.g. I drank too much beer last night.

昨晚我喝了太多啤酒。

The exam was much too difficult for me.

考试对我来说太难了。

They built too many buildings last year.

去年他们建了太多楼房。

Sun Liang is much too fat, because he eats too much fat and too many kinds of fried food.

孙亮太胖了，因为他吃太多的肥肉和太多种类的油炸食品。

辨析：too much, much too, too many

① too much 太多，用作形容词词组，修饰不可数名词；用作副词词组，修饰动词；用作名词词组，可作宾语等。

② much too 太；非常，用作副词词组，修饰形容词或副词，但不修饰动词。

③ too many 太多，常用作形容词词组，修饰可数名词复数。

考题在线 4 My cousin is _____heavy because he often eats _____fast food. [安顺]

A. too much; too many B. too many; too much

C. much too; too much D. too much; much too

点拨：句意：我的堂弟太重了因为他经常吃太多快餐了。much too 修饰形容词或副词，但不修饰动词，too much 修饰不可数名词。第一个空修饰heavy；第二个空修饰不可数名词 fast food。

★One of the wheels is broken.

⑤ **broken** /ˈbrəʊkən/ *adj.* 坏的；破碎的；出了毛病的

e.g. The window was broken last week.

上周窗户坏了。 作形容词

It must be Billy who has broken the glass.

一定是比利打碎的杯子。 作动词 break—broke—broken

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★Litter can hurt people!

⑥ **litter** /'lɪtə/ *n.* (rubbish) 垃圾； *v.* 扔垃圾；使乱七八糟

litter 作不可数名词，意为“垃圾，废弃物”，与 rubbish 同义。

e.g. There is too much litter in the room.

房间里有太多的垃圾。

Piles of books and newspapers littered the floor.

地板上乱七八糟地堆了许多书和报纸。

⑦ **hurt** /hɜ:t/ *v.* 伤害 hurt—hurt—hurt

e.g. I didn't mean to hurt your feelings. hurt sb. 伤害某人

我不想伤害你的感情。

My shoes are so tight that my feet hurt. hurt 用作动词，还可表示“感到疼痛”。

我的鞋子太紧了，我的脚疼。

考题在线答案 1. empty 2. sorted; into 3. A 4. C

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见295页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示，填写单词

1. Can you help me _____ (分 类) the rubbish?
2. Can you help me pick up the _____ (垃圾)?
3. What is the _____ (数量)of the paper?
4. Please _____ (清 空) the glass and pour the water into it.
5. The window has been _____ (坏了).

二、用方框中所给词的适当形式填空

empty	much	sort	break	litter

6. If you see _____ in the classroom, pick it up.
7. The windows are _____ because of the strong wind.
8. There are so many different _____ of mushrooms.
9. He has _____ homework than I do.
10. This small bottle is full. But that big one is _____.

三、连词成句

11. car, to , the, be, needs, repaired

_____.

12. garbage, did, where, the, you, put

_____?

13. too, much, paper, people, waste

_____.

14. carrying, oranges, full, he, of, is, bag, a

_____.

15. desk, are, broken, on, there, pieces, glass, the, of

_____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 46 Protect Our Environment

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注 | 原文译文·导读

Pre-reading（读前）

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Is your hometown clean enough? 你的家乡足够干净吗?
- Do you have any ideas for reducing waste?
  你有一些减少浪费的想法吗?

批 体裁：
议论文

While-reading（读中）

批 文章结构：
总—分—总

- What do people waste the most according to the passage?
  根据这篇文章人们浪费最多的是什么?
- What makes the most pollution in Edmonton?
  在埃德蒙顿什么制造了最多的污染?

课文朗读

❶ My name is Katie /ˈkeɪtɪ/. 我的名字叫凯蒂。

❷ I think everybody should take care of① the environment. I live in Edmonton. It is a city in Canada. The air and water are clean in Edmonton, but sometimes people waste a lot. 我认为人人都应该爱护环境。我住在埃德蒙顿。它是加拿大的一个城市。埃德蒙顿的空气很清新，水很清澈，但是有时人们浪费很多。

批 句子：（右侧画"～"处）
提出话题，简洁明了

❸ What do we waste the most? Paper, I think. People waste water, too. I don't want to waste water. I try to save② water in many ways. I take short showers. I often check③ to make sure there aren't any leaks /liːks/, and I never forget to turn off the tap /tæp/. 我们浪费最多的是什么呢? 是纸，我认为。人们也浪费水。我不想浪费水。我尽力在许多方面节约用水。我洗短时淋浴。我常检查（水管）以确保没有任何渗漏，并且我从不忘记关水龙头。

批 词语赏析：
（右侧画"▲"处）
自然过渡，引出下文。

批 句子：
第❸、❹段都以疑问句作为开头，旨在吸引读者，提高阅读兴趣。

❹ Do we recycle at home? Yes! We sort our pop cans, beer /bɪə/ bottles and waste paper. A truck /trʌk/ picks up our recycling /riːˈsaɪklɪŋ/ every week. It is made into new things. We reuse our plastic bags, too. We use them again and again, or we put other garbage in them.
我们在家回收利用（一些东西）吗? 是的! 我们把易拉罐、啤酒瓶和废纸分类。每周都有一辆卡车来收集我们回收的东西。它被制成新东西。我们也反复使用塑料袋。我们反复使用它们，或者我们把别的垃圾装到它们里面。

批 考点：（右侧画"～"处）
找段落主题句。

❺ Cars and factories /ˈfæktərɪz/ make the most pollution. I think there are too many cars in Edmonton. More people should ride bikes or take buses. I ride my bike to school every day. Unlike④ /ˌʌnˈlaɪk/ other types of transportation, a bike doesn't make any pollution. Buses make

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

some pollution, but lots of people can travel on a bus. Buses make less pollution than cars. 汽车和工厂制造的污染最多。我认为埃德蒙顿有太多的汽车。更多的人应该骑自行车或者乘公共汽车。我每天骑自行车去学校。不像其他类型的交通工具，自行车不会制造任何污染。公共汽车会制造一些污染，但许多人可以乘坐一辆公共汽车旅行。公共汽车比小汽车制造的污染少。

批 词语赏析：

（左侧画"▲"处）small 与 big 形成对比，重在突出生活中的小改变就会给环境带来大影响，呼吁人们为保护环境做贡献。

⑥ In fact, if each of us makes a small change in our life, we can make a big difference ⑤ to our environment. It's not too hard to protect the environment. We just need to try.

实际上，如果我们每个人在我们的生活中改变一点儿，我们就可以对我们的环境产生很大的影响。保护环境并不难。我们仅仅需要去尝试。

Do you worry about pollution? 你担心污染吗?

We like to ride bikes. It's good for the environment .
我们喜欢骑自行车。这有利于环境。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（见281页）

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read and tick the points mentioned in the lesson. 阅读并勾出文中所提到的点。

- □ sort garbage at home 在家把垃圾分类
- □ reuse plastic bags 重复使用塑料袋
- □ bring your own bag when you go shopping 当你购物时带上自己的袋子
- □ ride bikes or take buses 骑自行车或乘公共汽车
- □ pick up rubbish off the street 捡起街上的垃圾
- □ turn off the lights when you leave a room 当你离开房间时关灯
- □ turn off the television and shut down the computer when you are not using them 当你不用电视和电脑时关掉它们
- □ take short showers 洗短时淋浴

2 Compare the two pictures. Tick the words to describe the differences.
比较这两幅图片。勾出描述它们不同之处的单词。

pollution 污染	clean 干净的	garbage 垃圾	air 空气	car 小汽车
sky 天空	transportation 运输业	travel 旅行	tree 树木	environment 环境

3 What can we do to help the environment? Read and match.
为了帮助环境我们可以做什么？读并将其匹配。

We should 我们应该

- open a window instead of turning on the air conditioning. 打开窗户而不是开空调。
- use both sides of the paper. 使用纸的两面。
- throw garbage on the ground. 把垃圾扔在地上。
- sort the waste before throwing it away. 扔废品前把它分类。

We shouldn't 我们不应该

- cut down trees in forests. 砍伐森林里的树。
- turn off the tap when we are brushing our teeth. 在我们刷牙时关掉水龙头。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★I think everybody should take care of the environment.

① **take care of** 照顾，照料　相当于 look after

e.g. I believe that neighbors can take good care of your son while you are out. 我相信在你外出期间邻居们会好好照顾你儿子的。

Take care! A dog is running after you!

当心！一只狗正在后面追你！

take good care of = look after...well 好好照顾；take care = look out = be careful 是“当心；小心”的意思。

考题在线 My mother is ill. I have to _____ her in the hospital after class. [新疆]

A. look after　B. look up　C. take care　D. take after

★I try to save water in many ways.

② **save** /seɪv/ *v.* (to avoid wasting sth. or using more than necessary; to keep money instead of spending it, especially in order to buy a particular thing; to keep sb./sth. safe from death, harm, loss, etc.) 节省，储蓄，挽救

e.g. That will save you 50 pence a week. 那将使你一星期节省 50 便士。

A police officer saved the tourist from being cheated.

一位警察使游客免于受骗。

The dog saved the boy's life. 这只狗救了那个男孩的命。

与 save 有关的短语：
① save...from(doing) 挽救……免于……
② save one's life 救某人的命

★I often check to make sure there aren't any leaks, and I never forget to turn off the tap.

③ **check** /tʃek/ *v.* 检查，核查

e.g. Look out for spelling mistakes when you check your homework.

你检查家庭作业时要当心拼写错误。

Do you want to pay in cash or by check?

你想用现金还是用支票付款呢？　用支票

★Unlike other types of transportation, a bike doesn't make any pollution.

unlike 不像 --like 像
like 喜欢 — dislike 不喜欢

④ **unlike** /ˌʌnˈlaɪk/ *prep.* 不像

e.g. Unlike Lucy, Lily dislikes long dresses. 不像露西，莉莉不喜欢长裙。

★In fact, if each of us makes a small change in our life, we can make a big difference to our environment.

⑤ **make a difference** 有影响；有关系

e.g. Whether he will come makes no difference.

他是否会来并没有影响。

make some/no difference (to sb./sth.)（对某人/某物）有些影响/没有影响

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lucy has got a bad cold. It may make much difference to her physics competition.

difference 前还可用 much, big 等修饰。

露西感冒很严重，这有可能会对她的物理竞赛造成很大影响。

考题在线答案 A

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见295页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成单词

1. The new _____ (货 车) are collecting garbage in my neighborhood.
2. Li Qiang _____ (冲淋浴) every day.
3. There are many new _____ (工厂) in my village.
4. We should check to make sure there aren't any _____ (渗漏).
5. The boy has two big eyes, _____ (不像) his father.

二、用方框中所给短语的适当形式填空

take care of	again and again	put ...in
make a difference	take a shower	

6. You should _____ yourself when your parents are away.
7. Many things can be used _____ to save money.
8. Your habits can _____ to you.
9. _____ your books _____ the schoolbag.
10. In summer, people often _____ every day.

三、连词成句

11. we , homework, our, have, checked

_____.

12. must, we, harder, try

_____.

13. short, take, I, showers

_____.

14. took, we, to, a, time, taxi, save

_____.

15. the, again, and, classroom, they, cleaned, again

_____.

Lesson 47 Connected to Nature

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Do all the living things on the planet depend on one another? 地球上所有的生物都是相互依赖的吗?
- What can we do for nature? 我们能为大自然做些什么呢?

课文朗读

The natural world is filled with living things. Living things start out ① weak and small and slowly grow strong and big. You are a living thing. Each of your classmates is a living thing. Flowers, grass and trees are living things, too. Bees /bi:z/, ants /ænts/, doves /dʌvz/, dogs and cats—these are all living things.

自然界里充满了生物。生物刚开始是弱小的，然后慢慢地成长强大。你是生物。你的每个同班同学是生物。花朵、草和树木也都是生物。蜜蜂、蚂蚁、鸽子、狗和猫——这些都是生物。

All living things need food and water to grow. Think about yourself. When you are hungry, you

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

need to eat. You eat fruit, vegetables, meat and fish. They can help you grow big and strong. You drink water when you are thirsty. Now think about a tree. When a tree is hungry, it gets food from the soil. Trees drink water, too. 所有的生物都需要食物和水来成长。想想你自己。当你饿时，你需要吃东西。你吃水果、蔬菜、肉和鱼。它们能帮助你成长得强大。当你渴时你喝水。现在想想一棵树。当一棵树饿时，它从土壤中摄取食物。树木也喝水。

We are different in some ways, but all living things are connected. We all live on the same planet, and we depend on each other. If we pollute the rivers and oceans, fish may get sick or even die② /daɪ/. Some birds live off③ fish. If the birds eat the sick or dead /ded/ fish, they may die off. Nature is a balance between all the living things on the planet. If one species /'spi:ʃi:z/ dies off, then another species may die off, followed by another, and another... 我们在一些方面是不一样的，但是所有的生物都是相关的。我们都生活在同一个星球上，我们相互依赖。如果我们污染了河流和海洋，鱼可能会生病甚至死亡。一些鸟以鱼为食。如果鸟吃了生病的或死了的鱼，它们可能会相继死掉。自然界在地球上所有的生物之间是平衡的。如果一个物种相继死去，那么另一个物种可能也会相继死去，然后是另一种，再另一种……

We should respect /rɪ'spekt/ the earth and all the living things on it. 我们应该尊重地球和(生活在)它上面的所有生物。

Let's Do It! 做一做！

1 Read the lesson and put these sentences in the correct order.

阅读课文并将这些句子正确排序。

☐ All living things are connected.
所有的生物都是有联系的。

☐ We should protect the environment.
我们应该保护环境。

☐ Living things live in the world.
生物生活在世界上。

☐ All living things need water and food to grow. 所有的生物需要水和食物来成长。

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in the box.

用方框中所给词的正确形式填空。

respect 尊敬　connect 联系　die 死亡 dead 死的　follow 跟随

1. His mother has been _____ for ten years.
他妈妈已 _____ 十年了。
2. People should _____ and understand each other.
人们应该 _____ 并理解对方。
3. Don't always _____ others. You should have your own ideas.
不要总是 _____ 别人。你应该有自己的观点。
4. We are _____ by the Internet.
我们通过因特网 _____。
5. The trees _____ out, and this place became a desert.
树木 _____，这个地方变成了沙漠。

3 Read the passage and fill in the blanks with the sentences below.

阅读文章并用下面的句子填空。

Many years ago, there were more animal species than there are now. There were many forests. The rivers were clean. The sky was blue. Birds sang from morning until night. _____
许多年前，动物的种类比现在多。那时有许多森林，河水很干净，天空是蓝色的，小鸟从早上啼叫到晚上。

_____

But later, people cut down the trees in the forests, killed the animals and built factories and buildings. _____ People's houses were buried by soil in floods. Some animals lost their homes, and they attacked people. Some factories

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

polluted the air, water and people's food. The earth is getting warmer. Some scientists say the sea level will rise by at least 1 metre in the next 100 years. _____

但是后来，人们把森林里的树砍掉了，杀死了动物，建立了工厂和大楼。_____ 在洪水中人们的房子被埋到了土里。一些动物失去了它们的家园，它们攻击人类。一些工厂污染空气、水和人们的食物。地球正在变暖。一些科学家说在未来的 100 年内海平面将上升至少 1 米。_____

People are now living in a worse and worse environment. _____ We need to reduce pollution and protect our environment.

人们现在正生活在越来越差的环境中。_____ 我们需要减少污染，保护我们的环境。

A. Some houses beside the sea will disappear.
海边的一些房子将消失。

B. People lived together with many kinds of animals.
人们和许多种动物生活在一起。

C. We should do something to save our world.
我们应该为拯救我们的地球而做些事情。

D. They changed the earth.
他们改变了地球。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Living things start out weak and small and...

start out 的用法
start out on sth.
start out to do sth.

① start out 出发，起初是；开始从事

e.g. They started out this morning. 他们今天上午出发了。

He started out to write a novel. 他起先打算写一部长篇小说。

start out on a new career 开始新的事业

The discussion started off mildly enough. 讨论颇为温和地开展起来。

She wasn't happy with our work and made us start over. 她对我们干的活儿不满意，要我们返工。

与 start 有关的短语：
start off 动身；进行起来
start over 重新开始

★If we pollute the rivers and oceans, fish may get sick or even die.

② 【高频】die/daɪ/ *v.* **(现在分词为 dying) 死**

die	是动词，表示动作，用作谓语。die 是非延续性动词，不能和表示一段时间的状语连用。	How many people died in the war? 在战争中有多少人死亡?
death	是名词，用作主语或宾语。	He is afraid of death. 他怕死。
dying	可用作形容词。意为“临终的；垂死的”。	Look at the dying bird. 看这只垂死的鸟。
dead	是形容词，表示状态，常用作表语或定语。意为“死亡的，无生命的”。	The dog is dead. 那只狗死了。

一语辨异：
My cat died two years ago. It has been dead for two years. Its death made me sad.
我的猫两年前死了。它死了两年了。它的死让我很悲伤。

考题在线 1 William Shakespeare _____ for over 400 years, but his works still have great influence today. [青岛]

A. died　　B. was dying

C. has died　　D. has been dead

点拨：句意：威廉·莎士比亚已经去世 400 多年了，但是他的著作在今天仍然有巨大的影响。die 是非延续性动词，结合语境可知要用 has been dead。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Some birds live off fish.

③ **live off** 以……为食，以……为生

e.g. She will not be able to live off her writing.

靠写作她将难以谋生。

Sheep live on grass. 羊以草为食。

与 live 有关的短语：
live on 以……为食

考题在线 2 大熊猫主要以竹子为食。

Pandas mainly _____ _____ bamboo. [天津]

点拨：这里是说大熊猫的习性，故用一般现在时。

考题在线答案 1. D 2. live on/off

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见295页)

一、用适当的介词或副词填空

1. Danny is connected _____ Debbie. He is Debbie's cousin.

2. Pandas live _____ bamboo.

3. The animals are sick. I'm afraid that they will die _____.

4. The girls start _____ on their jobs.

5. People shouldn't cut _____ trees in the forest.

二、单项选择

6. The bottle _____ water.

A. fill with B. full of

C. is filled with D. is full

7. The 20th World Cup was held in Brazil _____ June 12 _____ July 13, 2014. [云南]

A. in; to B. on; to

C. at; from D. from; to

8. A man _____ in the accident yesterday.

A. dead B. is dead

C. has been dead D. died

9. Don't get _____, Li Fang.

A. exciting B. excited

C. excites D. excite

10. Tigers _____ meat.

A. live with B. live in

C. live off D. live to

三、根据汉语完成句子

11. 他是什么时候开始打算写那本小说的呢？

When did he _____ _____ _____ _____ the novel?

12. 食品安全与我们的健康息息相关。

Food safety _____ closely _____ _____ our health.

13. 大多数亚洲人以大米为食。

Most of the Asians _____ _____ rice.

14. 过去发生饥荒时，许多人都饿死了。

In the past, many people _____ _____ starvation during the famine.

15. 因为一直没有下雨，花儿正相继死去。

The flowers _____ _____ _____ because there has been no rain.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 48 Garbage Is Interesting!

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

THINK ABOUT IT 想一想

- Do you think garbage is interesting? 你认为垃圾是有趣的吗?
- What have you done in a schoolyard clean-up? 在校园大扫除中你做了什么?

Jenny's blog 詹妮的博客

课文朗读

This week we learned about pollution. I never knew that garbage was so interesting! 这周我们学习了有关污染的知识。我从来不知道垃圾如此有趣!

On Tuesday, it was World Environment Day. Danny, Brian and I cleaned up the schoolyard. All of our classmates helped. We took bags and picked up the garbage. It was great to see everyone working together!

在周二，是世界环境日。丹尼、布赖恩和我清扫了校园。我们班所有同学都来帮忙了。我们带着袋子，捡起了垃圾。看到大家在一起干活真棒!

Later that day, Brian, Danny and I went for a walk around our neighbourhood. When we saw garbage, we picked it up. Danny found a used ① /ju:zd/ toy car with one broken wheel. He took it home, cleaned it and fixed it. 那天晚些时候，布赖恩、丹尼和我在我们的街区周围散步。当我们看到垃圾时，我们就捡起它。丹尼发现了一个有一个坏车轮的旧玩具车。他把它带回家，清洗干净并修理了它。

On Wednesday, we sorted our school's garbage. We put on gloves and divided ② /dɪ'vaɪdɪd/ the garbage into different piles /paɪlz/: glass, metal, plastic, paper and everything else. Most of the garbage was paper. People wasted a lot of paper! There was less plastic than paper and more ③ plastic than metal. There was the least amount of glass.

在周三，我们对我们学校的垃圾进行了分类。我们戴上手套，把垃圾分成不同的堆：玻璃、金属、塑料、纸和其他一切东西。垃圾中最多的是纸。人们浪费了很多纸！塑料比纸少，但比金属多。玻璃是最少的。

Today, Danny made a car out of garbage ! He used a big box for the body and pieces of wood for the seats ④ /si:ts/. He used a bit of glue to put the wheels on. The wheels were plastic lids /lɪdz/. It was great!

今天，丹尼用垃圾做了一辆小汽车！他用一个大盒子作为车身，几块木头作为座位。他用一点儿胶水粘上轮子。轮子是塑料盖子。它棒极了!

We throw garbage away. But where does it go? Later this month, we will go on a class trip to the city recycling centre. Thousands of tons /tʌnz/ of garbage are sent there.We will see the workers sort all of our garbage for recycling.

我们把垃圾扔了。但是它去哪里了呢? 这个月晚些时候，我们将去市循环中心进行一次班级旅行。成千上万吨的垃圾被送往那里。我们将看到工人们为再利用而将我们所有的垃圾分类。

I think it's our duty /'dju:tɪ/ to ⑤ protect the environment. I am only one person, but if I do my part, the earth will be a cleaner and safer place. If each of us does something for the environment, all of us will have a better life.

我认为保护环境是我们的责任。我仅仅是一个人，但是如果我做了我的部分，地球将会成为一个更干净、更安全的地方。如果我们每个人都为环境做些事，我们所有

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

人将会有一个更好的生活。

Jenny 詹妮

Let's Do It! 做一做!

1 Read the lesson and fill in the table. 阅读课文并填写表格。

This week 这周	
On Tuesday 在周二	
Later on Tuesday 周二晚些时候	
On Wednesday 在周三	
Today 今天	
Later this month 这个月晚些时候	

2 Complete the dialogues using the phrases in brackets. 用括号中所给的短语完成对话。

1. **A:** The schoolyard is dirty.(clean up) 校园很脏。(打扫干净)

   B: _____

2. **A:** There is too much garbage. (pick up) 有太多的垃圾。(捡起)

   B: _____

3. **A:** What a sunny day! (go for a walk) 多么晴朗的一天啊! (去散步)

   B: _____

4. **A:** It's cold outside! (put on) 外面很冷! (穿上)

   B: _____

3 Read the passage and answer the question. 阅读文章并回答问题。

"Hazardous" means dangerous. Some hazardous waste is poison—it makes people sick. Some products explode or burn very easily. Hazardous things usually have these labels:"poison","caution", "warning"or"danger". What can we do about hazardous waste? Buy less of it! And when you take out the garbage, don't take out your hazardous waste. Hazardous waste in your garbage is bad for the environment. Why? Because we usually bury or burn our garbage. This can make people and the environment sick. Many countries have laws about hazardous waste. The laws don't allow people to bury or burn hazardous waste with other garbage. Many cities in North America keep their hazardous waste in special places. Some have ways to burn it at very high temperatures:from 900 to 1 100 degrees centigrade. Hazardous waste is buried two kilometres under the ground in some places. That's deep!

"Hazardous"的意思是危险的。一些有害废物是毒药——它会使人生病。一些产品很容易爆炸或燃烧。有害物品常有这样的标记:"毒药","小心","警告"或"危险"。对于有害废物我们能做什么?少买它!还有当你扔垃圾时,不要扔掉你的有害废物。你垃圾中的有害废物对环境有害。为什么呢?因为我们通常埋掉或烧掉我们的垃圾。这会对人们和环境不利。许多国家针对有害废物颁布了法律。法律不允许人们把有害废物和别的垃圾一起埋掉或烧掉。北美的许多城市把有害废物放在专门的地方。有些城市用 900 度到 1100 度高温的方式燃烧它。在一些地方有害废物被埋在地下两千米处。那很深!

Which of these is hazardous? Tick the correct ones. 这些中哪个是有害的?把正确的勾出来。

☐ Battery 电池 ☐ Paint 油漆 ☐ Glass 玻璃 ☐ Box 箱子

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

·考点应用 ·考点批注

★Danny found a used toy car with one broken wheel.

① 【高频】**used** /ju:zd/ *adj.* 用过的；旧的；二手的

e.g. He bought a used bike.

他买了辆旧自行车。

I'm not used to eating so much for dinner.

我不习惯晚饭吃那么多。

used/ju:zd/ 旧的，用过的；等于 second-hand。

used/ju:st/ 习惯于；适应。常构成 be/get used to（doing）sth. 结构，表示"习惯于（做）某事"。

考题在线 1 那位外国人正渐渐适应宜宾的气候与食物。

The foreigner is gradually getting _____ _____ the climate and food in Yibin. [宜宾]

★We put on gloves and divided the garbage into different piles: glass, metal, plastic, paper and everything else.

辨析：divide 与 separate

② **divide** /dɪ'vaɪd/ *v.* 分开，分割

e.g. Divide the cake with your sister.

跟你妹妹分了这块蛋糕。

The island is divided into two parts.

这个岛屿被分成两部分。

The Taiwan Strait separates Taiwan from Fujian.

台湾海峡把台湾和福建隔开了。

① divide 指把一个整体按要求分成几个部分，暗含分配之意；也可指分开成对立的事物。常用的短语为：divide...into... 把……分成……，指把一个整体分开。

② separate 指把人或物分开，着重指从原来的一个整体中移去一部分或把几部分隔开。常用的短语为：separate...from... 将……分开。

考题在线 2 A year has four seasons and it _____ twelve months. [十堰]

A. divided into　　B. is dividing into

C. was divided into　　D. is divided into

点拨：排除法。句意：一年有四个季节，并且一年被分成十二个月。由句意可知用一般现在时，排除 A 和 C；用被动语态表示"一年被分成十二个月"，排除 B。

★There was less plastic than paper and more plastic than metal.

③ **more** /mɔ:(r)/ *adj.*(much, many 的比较级) 更多的，*adv.* 更（与部分形容词或副词连用，构成比较级），更多

"数词或表示数量的词＋more＋名词"表示在原有的基础上"另外的，附加的"。

e.g. I have more oranges than he.

我的橙子比他的多。

I'll be more careful next time.

下次我会更加小心的。

There are twenty more trees to be planted.

还有 20 棵树需要栽。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

More and more people are interested in blogs.

越来越多的人对博客感兴趣。

More or less one hundred people died in the heavy rain.

大约有一百人在大雨中遇难。

There are more than 1.4 billion people in China.

中国人口超过了14亿。

The more you read, the more you will know.

你读得越多，你就知道得越多。

与more有关的短语：
more and more 越来越多
more or less 大约
more than 多于；超过
the more...the more... 越……越……

考题在线 3 —Playing video games is a waste of time.

—I can't agree more. There are _____ meaningful things to do.

[苏州]

A. the most　　B. the least

C. more　　D. less

点拨：排除法。句意：——玩电子游戏是浪费时间。——我十分赞同，有更多有意义的事情可做。the most 最多的，后可接可数名词复数或不可数名词；the least 最少的，后接不可数名词；more 更多的，后可接可数名词复数或不可数名词；less 更少的，后接不可数名词。things 是可数名词复数，排除B和D；再根据句意“有更多有意义的事情可做。”排除A。

★He used a big box for the body and pieces of wood for the seats.

④ **seat** /si:t/ *n.* 座位

e.g. Please take a seat. 请就座。

They reserved a seat for me.

他们给我预订了座位。

It's polite to give the seat to the old.

给老人让座是礼貌的。

Please take a seat near the window.

请靠窗就座。

seat的常用短语有：
① reserve a seat 预订座位
② give one's seat to sb. 给某人让座
③ take a seat 就座

文化素养之优良品质

培养“让座”素养

◆中国的传统美德提倡尊老爱幼 (respect the old and love the young)。同学们要养成在公交车上给老幼病残孕让座的习惯。让座需要注意几个原则：

(1) 公交车上一般会有老人专用座。年轻人最好不要去占用这些位置；

(2) 如果自己不舒服或者太累，也没必要非得让座；

(3) 一些年纪不太大的健康老人，如果他们不愿意让你让座，这个时候不用让座；

(4) 如果有老人站在你旁边，时不时盯着你看 (stare at you)，想让你让座，此时你还是选择让座吧。

【素养行动】下一次坐公交车时注意观察自己周围有没有老人、残疾人或孕妇，记得给他们让座！

【素养行动结果】养成让座的好习惯，做个文明人。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**I think it's our duty to protect the environment.**

⑤ **It's one's duty to do sth.** 做某事是某人的职责 / 义务

e.g. It's our duty to clean the classroom every day.

每天打扫教室是我们的责任。 其中it是形式主语，真正的主语是动词不定式短语。

考题在线 4 It's necessary for you _____ the classroom clean, class.

[益阳]

A. keep　　B. keeping　　C. to keep

点拨：固定结构法。句意：同学们，对你们来说保持教室整洁是很有必要的。

It's + *adj.* + for sb. to do sth. 意为"对于某人来说做某事是……的。"

可知 to keep 符合题意。

考题在线答案 1. used to　2. D　3. C　4. C

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见295页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成单词

1. There are four _____ (座位) for the old people on the bus.
2. Please cover the bottle with a _____ (盖子).
3. This animal is 30 _____ (吨).
4. My friend bought a _____ (二手的) car.
5. Let's _____ (分开) the people into two groups.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. We found a toy car with one _____ (break) wheel.
7. There will be _____ (many) plants in our city than before.
8. The children like _____ (make) boats out of paper.
9. My grandma is used to _____ (get) up early.
10. It's our duty _____ (protect)the animals from being extinct.

三、根据汉语提示完成句子

11. 房间里有一张床和一个带着镜子的壁橱。

There _____ a bed and a closet _____ a mirror in the room.

12. 她用这块布料做了一条短裙。

She _____ a short skirt _____ _____ the cloth.

13. 我们被分成四组做实验。

We are _____ _____ four groups to do the experiments.

14. 照顾生病的妹妹是她的职责。

It's her _____ _____ look after her sick sister.

15. 我想以低价购买一辆二手车。

I want to buy _____ _____ _____ at a low price.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit Review

I. 课文原文、译文

Building Your Vocabulary

构建你的词汇库

Ⅰ. Fill in the blanks with the words from this unit. The first letter is given.

用这个单元中的单词填空。首字母已给出。

1. A: What does r_____ mean?

   _____ 是什么意思?

   B: It means"garbage". 它是“垃圾”的意思。

2. Please talk slowly. I cannot f_____ you.

   请讲慢点。我不能 _____ 你。

3. Smoke and gas p_____ the air.

   烟和煤气 _____ 空气。

4. We should value time, not w_____ it.

   我们应该珍惜时间，不要 _____ 它。

5. Many students in environment clubs try to make less p_____.

   许多在环境俱乐部的学生尽力制造更少的 _____。

Ⅱ. Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the phrases in the box.

用方框中所给短语的正确形式填空。

throw away 扔掉 turn...off 关闭 pick up 捡起 neither...nor... 既不……也不…… more than 多于

1. We should _____ the garbage in the schoolyard and put it into the garbage bin.

   我们应该 _____ 校园里的垃圾，并把它扔进垃圾箱里。

2. The garbage bag is full. How much did you _____ after lunch?

   垃圾袋满了。午饭后你 _____ 了多少?

3. _____ 70 percent of the earth is covered by water. 地球 _____ 百分之七十被水覆盖着。

4. Don't leave the lights on. Please _____ them _____.

   不要让灯开着。请把它们 _____。

5. _____ Hebei Province _____ Jilin Province is in the south of China.

   河北省和吉林省 _____ 在中国的南部。

Grammar in Use 语法应用

Rewrite the sentences using "it".

用“it”重新写句子。

Example：例如：

We went to Beijing. We left at 8 o'clock and arrived at 12 o'clock.

我们去北京。我们在 8 点离开，在 12 点到达。

→ It took us four hours to travel to Beijing.

→到北京旅行花了我们四个小时的时间。

1. We should finish the project in an hour. It is hard. 我们应该在一小时内完成这项工程。这太难了。
2. We will go to the schoolyard to play. It will be fun. 我们将去校园玩。这将很有趣。
3. People often waste paper. It is not right.

   人们经常浪费纸。这是不正确的。

4. We should protect the environment. It is our duty. 我们应该保护环境。这是我们的责任。

Listening and Speaking

听说练习

Ⅰ. Listen to the passage and tick the correct answers. 听短文，并勾出正确的答案。

1. Where were Li Ming, Wang Mei and Li Lin?

   李明、王梅和李林在哪里?

   ☐ They were by the river. 他们在河边。

   ☐ They were at the school. 他们在学校。

2. Who collected the most garbage?

   谁收集的垃圾最多?

课文听力

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

□ Li Ming. 李明。□ Wang Mei. 王梅。

3. What did they find in the garbage?
在垃圾中他们找到了什么?
□ A toy bike. 一辆玩具自行车。
□ A toy truck. 一辆玩具卡车。

II. Complete the following dialogue.
完成下面的对话。

Jenny is sorting the garbage. She needs some help. 詹妮正在给垃圾分类。她需要一些帮助。

Jenny: Hi Danny! Come here. 你好,丹尼! 来这儿。

Danny: I'm coming. What's the matter?
我来了。什么事?

Jenny: _____ _____

Danny: Of course. _____ 当然。 _____

Jenny: I want you to help me sort the garbage.
我想让你帮我把垃圾分类。

Danny: No problem. 没问题。

Jenny: I'll put these plastic bottles in this bag. And you put the waste paper in that bag.
我将把这些塑料瓶放进这个袋子里。你把废纸放进那个袋子里。

Danny: OK. 好的。

Jenny: That's done. _____ 做完了。 _____

Danny: With pleasure. 我很乐意。

Putting It All Together 综合练习

I. Read the passage and answer the questions.
阅读短文,回答问题。

Driving in Rubbish 开垃圾做的车

Danny has been working all afternoon. First he fixed the broken car he found. Then he washed the glue off his hands, face and legs. 丹尼工作了一整个下午。首先他把他找到的坏了的汽车修好。然后他把他手上、脸上和腿上的胶水洗干净。

Now he looks at the other garbage for recycling. "There are a lot of interesting things here," he says to himself. "I think I'll make something out of this garbage!" 现在他看着其他可循环利用的垃圾。"这儿有许多有趣的东西," 他自言自语。"我认为我会用这些垃圾制作一些东西!"

Danny sees a very big cardboard box. "Somebody bought a new television," he says, "and they threw out this box. It's so big that I can fit inside it! Maybe I can make something with this." 丹尼看到了一个非常大的纸板盒。"有人买了一台新电视," 他说,"他们把这个盒子扔了。它如此大以至于我都能被装进去! 也许我可以用这个来做一些东西。"

He looks for other things to use. He finds five big, round pieces of plastic. They are the lids from ice cream pails. "I know," says Danny. "I will make a car. This cardboard box will be the car's body. These ice cream lids will be the wheels." 他寻找别的能使用的东西。他找到五块又大又圆的塑料。它们是冰淇淋桶的盖子。"我知道了," 丹尼说。"我将制造一辆汽车。这个纸板盒可以做车身。这些冰淇淋桶的盖子将会是轮子。"

Danny glues four wheels onto the cardboard box. "Hmm...I have one more lid. I know! It will be the steering wheel. I can hold onto it and drive the car." 丹尼把四个轮子粘到纸板盒上。"嗯……我还有一个盖子。我知道了! 它将会是方向盘。我可以握住它,然后开车。"

Danny finds many other things for the car. He uses old metal cans for the headlights of the car. He finds pieces of wood to sit on.
丹尼找到许多别的做汽车的东西。他用旧金属罐来做车的前灯。他找到几块木头,可以坐在上面。

Finally Danny phones Jenny and Brian. "Come over to my house," he says. "I'll take you for a ride in my new car!"
最后丹尼给詹妮和布赖恩打电话。"来我家吧," 他说。"我将用我的新车带你们去兜一圈!"

1. What does Danny use the cardboard for?
丹尼用纸板做什么?
2. What does Danny use the lids of the ice cream pails for?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

丹尼用冰淇淋桶的盖子做什么?

3. What does Danny use for the headlights of the car? 丹尼用什么来做车的前灯?

II. My City's Future! 我的城市的未来!

Does your city have pollution problems? If it does, think about ways to reduce pollution. Make a plan about how to save your city. If it doesn't, think about how to make your city more beautiful. Write a letter to the government describing your plan. 你的城市有污染问题吗? 如果有,想想减少污染的方法。制订一个怎样拯救你的城市的计划。如果没有,想一想怎么样使你的城市变得更美。给政府写一封信描述你的计划。

Self-Evaluation 自我评价

Find more examples from this unit. Then mark your stars.

从这个单元中找出更多的例子。然后标出你的星级。

I. Talking about Cause, Effect and Purpose

谈论起因、结果和目的

I think it's our duty to protect the environment.

我认为保护环境是我们的责任。

I can express cause, effect and purpose in English. 我会用英语表达起因、结果和目的。

II. Using "it" 使用"it"

He took it home, cleaned it and fixed it.

他把它带回家,洗了洗它然后修理了它。

I know how to use "it". 我知道怎样使用"it"。

Fix and Mend 修理和修补

Group A

A组

My bike wheel just broke.

我的自行车车轮刚刚坏了。

My old pants have a tear.

我的旧裤子有一个破洞。

My shoes have a hole.

我的鞋上有一个洞。

I need something new for my hair!

我需要一些新东西来装饰我的头发!

My cassette deck has a buzz.

我的盒式录音机发出嗡嗡声。

My backpack doesn't fit!

我的背包不合适!

I must go and get new things.

我必须去买一些新东西。

Or I might have a fit!

否则我可能会发怒!

Group B

B组

Well now, I have news for you.

嗯,现在,我有消息要告诉你。

I know exactly what to do.

我确切地知道做什么。

Listen carefully,

仔细地听,

And you will soon agree.

你很快会同意。

You don't just go and buy.

你不用去买。

You first need to go and try,

你首先需要去试一试,

To fix and mend and reuse again.

去修理或修补一下然后再次使用。

Or the garbage will touch the sky!

否则垃圾会触及天空!

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

“it”的用法

考点1 it作实词

考向一：可以指除人以外的一切事物，相当于汉语中的“它”，有时也指前面提到的整件事情。

辨析：that, one与it

that特指，指代前面提到过的事物，既可指代可数名词，也可指代不可数名词。	The population of China is larger than that of India. 中国的人口比印度的（人口）多。
one泛指，代替可数名词。	I don't like this pen. Please show me another one. 我不喜欢这支钢笔。请给我拿另一支。
it特指，指上文提到过的那件事物。	I have an interesting book. Would you like to read it? 我有一本有趣的书。你想读吗？

考题在线1 My brother has lost his watch. Now he is looking for _____. [黄石]

A. one　　B. this

C. that　　D. it

点拨：考查代词辨析。one泛指上下文提及的同类事物中的一个，同类而不同一个；this指代近的物体；that常用于比较结构中，代替前面提到的名词，以避免重复；it特指上下文提到的对象是同一物。本题指代上文的watch。

考向二：在某些情况下，也可指人，常指性别不详的人，特指婴幼儿。

e.g. —Who is it？这是谁？

—It's me. 是我。

The baby smiled when it saw its mother.

这个婴儿看到它妈妈时笑了。

考向三：在回答What's this/that?时，用it代替this或that。

e.g. —What's this/ that?

——这/那是什么？

—It's a computer.

——这/那是台电脑。

考向四：常指时间、天气、距离等，常不翻译出来。

e.g. It's tea time. Mrs. Turner goes into the kitchen.

到了喝茶的时间了，特纳夫人走进了厨房。

It is winter now. It is ten degrees below zero.

现在是冬天。气温是零下10度。

It is only half an hour's walk to the tall tower.

走路只要半小时的路程就可以到达高塔了。

It will be rainy tomorrow.

明天将会下雨。

考题在线2 —What's your QQ number?

— _____ is 355994127. [南宁]

A. I　　B. He

C. It　　D. She

考点2 作形式主语或形式宾语

考向一：作形式主语

(1) 英语中不定式、动名词、主语从句等复杂成分作主语时，往往显得很长，使整个句子看上去头重脚轻，这时就借助“it”来作形式上的主语，而把真正的主语移到句子后边去，使全句看上去平衡一些。“it”没有实际的意义。

e.g. It is interesting for her to study, but it is difficult for her to study and work at the same time.

对于她来说学习是有趣的，可是边学习边工作对她来说是困难的。

(2)it用作形式主语的重要句型

① It + be + *adj.* + for/of sb. to do sth. 做某事对于某人来说是……

e.g. It is hard for him to make up his mind.

对他来说下决心很难。

It was foolish of her to say that.

她说那样的话，太愚蠢了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

此句型中的介词 of 和 for 的区别是：用 of 时，形容词指某人的性格、特点等。如：nice, kind, silly, wise, clever, careless, rude, polite, brave 等。用 for 时，形容词指事物的性质、特征等。如：difficult, easy, impossible, important, dangerous 等。

② It + be + *n*. + to do sth. 做某事是……

e.g. It is our duty to protect the environment.
保护环境是我们的责任。

③ It takes/took sb. +时间+ to do sth. 某人做某事花了多少时间

e.g. It took me two hours to do my homework.
做家庭作业花了我两个小时。

考题在线 3 _____ is unhealthy for us to go to school without eating breakfast in the morning. [湘潭]

A. That　　B. This　　C. It

点拨：考查形式主语。句意：早上不吃早餐去上学对我们来说是不健康的。这是句式 It's +形容词 +for sb. to do sth.，表示对某人来说做某事是怎样的。

考向二：【高频】作形式宾语

当不定式、动名词、从句等复杂成分作宾语且后面跟有宾语补足语时，通常会在宾语补足语前使用 it 作形式宾语，而将真正的宾语移至句末。其基本结构为“动词 + it + 宾语补足语 + 不定式（动名词或从句）”，常用于这种结构的词有：think, find, make, consider, feel, believe 等。

e.g. I find it difficult to do the job well.
我发现做好这项工作很难。

考题在线 4 Chinese people find _____ our duty to help develop African countries along the Belt and Road (一带一路). [黄石]

A. it　　B. this

C. that　　D. these

点拨：语法判定法。分析该句结构可知，空处为形式宾语，真正的宾语为动词不定式。

速记 小筱：it 的用法

小小 it 神通大，既指事物又指人，
神通广大当替身；时间、距离和天气，
it 表示最称心。
it 本身无意义，用来代替主或宾；
如果强调主宾状，强调句型派用场。

考题在线答案 1. D　2. C　3. C　4. A

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

（答案见295页）

听力技巧

巧用疑问词法（听力题目多是以问题形式进行设置的，因此关注问题中的疑问词如 what, where, who 等会帮助解决该重点听哪些信息的问题，这样听起来就更有的放矢了。）

课文听力

听力过程

听 Listening and Speaking 丨 完成下列习题

1. Where were Li Ming, Wang Mei and Li Lin?

A. They were by the river.

B. They were at the school.

C. They were in the park.

2. Who collected the most garbage?

A. Li Ming.

B. Wang Mei.

C. Li Lin.

3. What did Wang Mei find in the garbage?

A. A toy bike.

B. A toy truck.

C. A toy car.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

交代what

The passage is about how to protect the environment.

交代目的

To save water, we can take short showers. We should often check to make sure there aren't any leaks and never forget to turn off the tap. We can recycle at home. We sort our pop cans, beer bottles and waste paper. We reuse our plastic bags, too. We use them again and again, or put other garbage in them. Cars and factories make the most pollution. To make less pollution, people should ride bikes or take buses.

发表感想

In fact, if each of us makes a small change in our life, we can make a big difference to our environment. Let's try to protect it! 结尾号召人们保护环境，点明主旨。

单元话题

现在环境污染越来越严重，我们应该采取什么样的措施来改善这一状况呢？请以 How to Protect Our Environment? 为题，写一篇不少于 80 词的文章。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

这类文章一般选用一般现在时。
重点内容是如何保护。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

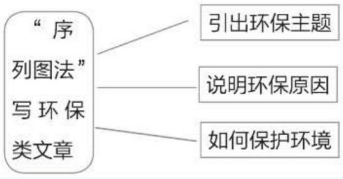
“序列图法”写保护环境类的文章

本单元内容以保护环境为话题，可使用“序列图法”来写作。

1. 首先指出环境保护这一主题；
2. 说明保护环境的原因；
3. 如何保护环境。

topic → cause → how

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	environment, rubbish, pollution, waste
短语	worse and worse, have a great influence on, begin with, pick up, throw...into
句子	1. It's our duty to...; 2. If everyone does...our environment will...; 3. Let's take action now!

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

How to Protect Our Environment?

The environment is becoming worse and worse. It has a great influence on people's health, especially the air pollution. But how can we reduce the pollution to protect the environment?

I think we should begin with the following things. We should pick up the rubbish and throw it into a dustbin, and we should collect waste things like batteries and plastic bags. What's more, when we go to school or work, we'd better not take a car. It's wise to go on foot or by bike.

It's our duty to keep our environment clean. Let's take action now! If everyone does such useful things, our environment will become much cleaner.

名师点评：1. 采用“序列图法”写保护环境类的文章。先引出话题，然后写保护环境的原因，最后说明如何保护环境。2. 比较级，条件句的应用，使文章句式丰富。

添彩点：1. 重点短语的运用：become worse and worse 变得越来越糟糕；have a great influence on 对……有重大影响；begin with 从……开始；pick up 捡起；throw...into 把……扔进；what's more 而且。2. 重点句式的运用：It's our duty to do sth. 做某事是我们的责任。Let's take action now! 让我们现在采取行动吧！



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见295页)

一、语法专练

1. —I lost my textbook and I couldn't find _____ anywhere.

—Here are some. Just take _____, please. [龙东]

A. it; one　　B. it; it

C. one; it

2. I find _____ hard to learn English well. [新疆]

A. this　　B. it

C. that　　D. they

3. I found _____ had changed a lot when I went to my hometown again. [泰安]

A. there　　B. it

C. he　　D. this

4. It takes me half an hour _____ the piano every day. [齐齐哈尔]

A. play　　B. playing

C. to play

5. —I can't find the magazine I bought this morning.

—Well, Jack is reading _____ over there. Why not go and see if it is yours? [无锡]

A. it　　B. that

C. one　　D. some

二、单元知识浓缩

Do you know the environment is getting worse and worse? It is being _____[6](污染) seriously by _____[7](工厂) and cars.Certainly, we produce _____[8](垃圾) every day and it does harm to our environment. Though we are young, we can still do something to help. It's our duty _____[9](保护)the environment. Here are some ideas for us to live a green life.

First, we should set up a no-car day every week. I think there are _____[10](太多的) cars in our school. Cars not only cause serious air _____[11](污染) but also waste energy. On the no-car day, neither students nor teachers are _____[12](允许)to drive to school. They can just walk or take a bus. It's _____[13](有利于)the environment.

Second, we had better not use plastic bags any more. No one can stand the "white pollution". So it is wise to use cloth bags which can be used _____[14](再，又).

Finally, as students, we should_____[15](关闭) the lights when we leave the classroom, use both sides of the paper, and reuse our textbooks and so on.



我一定要好好学习，
不然别人会说：看看那个人，
除了帅，一无所有。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

参考答案及点拨

Unit 1 Spring Is Coming!

Lesson 1 How's the Weather?

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. rises　2. during　3. shower
4. scared　5. What

二、6. B　7. D　8. A　9. B　10. D

三、11. What strange weather it is
12. What time did the sun rise yesterday
13. There will be some showers this afternoon
14. The children are starting school on Monday
15. Jenny is scared to go out at night

Lesson 2 It's Getting Warmer!

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. Spring has arrived in Shijiazhuang.

二、2. D　3. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. am　2. speaking　3. taking　4. longer
5. arrive

二、6. B　7. A　8. C　9. C　10. B

三、11. Who was the first to arrive at school
12. Neither he nor I am a doctor
13. Danny always practices playing basketball after school
14. We saw the sun rising behind the trees
15. The weather in winter will get colder

Lesson 3 The Sun Is Rising

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. one by one　2. gently　3. through
4. melting　5. wind

二、6. C

7. B　**点拨**：考查介词的用法。句意为：我们将修建另一条横穿中国北部地区的新的绿色长城。across 意为“从物体表面通过”，故选 B。

8. D　**点拨**：本题考查词义辨析。through 表示从内部穿过，over 表示从上方越过，past 表示经过，across 表示从表面穿过。根据句意，穿过马路，故选 D。

9. C　**点拨**：本题考查词义辨析。down 表示在下面，from 表示来自，through 表示从内部穿过，across 表示从表面穿过。根据句意，鸟的声音穿过窗户，故选 C。

10. A　**点拨**：考查固定词组。one by one，此处意思是“一个接一个地走出校园”。

三、11. The weather here is windy
12. Did the wind blow yesterday
13. You can deal with these problems one by one
14. A river goes through the city
15. The little girl grew up year by year

Lesson 4 The Spring City

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. around　2. like　3. of　4. of　5. With

二、6. because of　7.think of　8. longed for
9. all year round　10. hundreds of

三、11. C

12. B　**点拨**：Nearly 和 Almost 都意为“几乎”；Hardly 几乎不；Mostly 主要地。句意：几乎没人认识他。首先排除 C、D 项。Almost nobody 意为“几乎没有人”，Nearly 不与 nobody 连用，故选 B。　13. D

14. C　**点拨**：考查数词的用法。句意：泰山如此有名，以至于每天都有成百上千的人游览它。正确表达形式：数词 +hundred/thousand/million; 前面没有数词则是 hundreds of/ thousands of/millions of。故选 C。

15. C　**点拨**：考查 feel like doing sth.“想要做某事”的表达。故选 C。

Lesson 5 Babysitting on a Spring Day

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. send　2. instead　3. helping　4. shall/will

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

5. babysitting

二、6. look at　7. Come down　8. Thank you for

9. instead of　10. Hold on

三、11. B　12. C　13. B　14. B　15. D

Lesson 6 Stories about Spring

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. low　2. below　3. zero　4. until

5. Sometimes

二、6. won't; until　7. as good as　8. some times

9. below zero　10. looking forward to

三、11. A　点拨：not…until…意为"直到……才……"。故选A。

12. C　点拨：not so … as … 是固定句型，中间用形容词原级。故选C。

13. A　点拨：考查介词。句意：——我可以参加乐施毅行者吗？——除非你超过十八岁。故选A。

14. C　点拨：…need doing 意为"……需要被做"，表被动，相当于…need to be done。　15. B

Unit Review

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. A　2. A　3. C

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. snowman; 雪人　2. outdoor; 户外

3. daylight; 日光　4. blackboard; 黑板

5. grandmother; (外)祖母

二、6. turn　7. neither　8. wind　9. blossom

10. swings　11. sunny　12. nearly

13. Sometimes

14. drops　15. wear

Unit 2 Plant a Plant!

Lesson 7 Planting Trees

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. hole　2. large　3. cover　4. storm

5. dirty

二、6. covered with　7. By the way

8. filled with　9. northern　10. turn into

三、11. D　点拨：make sb. do sth. 使某人做某事。故选D。

12. B　点拨：cover…with…"用……覆盖……"。故选B。

13. D　14. A

15. A　点拨：考查固定短语。be full of=be filled with，都是"充满"的意思。故选A。

Lesson 8 Why Are Plants Important?

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. B

二、2. A　3. D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. basic　2. pleasant　3. shade　4. fulfill

5. forest (s)

二、6. In a word　7. carried; away

8. is made from　9. take energy from

10. turn ; into

三、11. Is flour made from wheat

12. What can fulfill our basic needs

13. It's pleasant to have a trip

14. Trees help people in many ways

15. We could take energy from milk and eggs

Lesson 9 Gardening with Mary

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. swimming　2. nice　3. advice　4. logs

5. on my own

二、6. D　点拨：运用排除法。本句中有 some，后接可数名词复数形式或者不可数名词。idea，message，suggestion 均为可数名词，且为单数形式，故排除。故选D。

7. A

8. C　点拨：由问句句意"爸爸，我们必须等到灯变绿吗？"和答句句意"是的，恐怕我们_____。那是交通规则。"可知，必须要等到灯变绿。have to"不得不"，强调客观上的要求。

9. D　点拨：考查连系动词的辨析。句意：——这奶酪尝起来不好吃。为什么我们不去买一些新鲜的

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

呢？——听起来好极了。句中的 good 是形容词，其前应用连系动词，可排除 A 项与 B 项；其次，表示“尝起来”，应用 taste。故选 D。

10. D 点拨：考查 have fun doing sth.“做某事很有趣”的表达。

三、11. The flowers smell good

12. He has fun learning English

13. Let's log onto the website

14. We have a special show about sports

15. Would you please give me some advice

Lesson 10 Make Your Garden Grow!

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. consider 2. test 3. dried 4. purpose 5. sure

二、6. C 点拨：考查固定结构。It's sure to do sth. 一定会做某事。故选 C。 7. C

8. D 点拨：考查非谓语动词。句意：冰箱坏了。为什么不考虑买一台新的？A 原形；B 过去式；C 不定式；D 动名词。根据 consider doing sth. 可知选 D。

9. C

10. C 点拨：采用联系上下文法。句意：——保罗，我今天能用一下你的 MP4 吗？——当然可以，你用吧。我不用。故选 C。

三、11. enough; gets dry 12. test; make sure

13. else; consider for 14. staying/keeping away

15. try riding

Lesson 11 Amazing Plants

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. A 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. B

二、6. How many plants have you heard

7. This pencil is as long as that one

8. The fish is still alive

9. Children like to play with cats

10. People call this plant a living fossil

Lesson 12 Danny's Plant

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. raises 2. to look 3. to learn 4. carefully 5. sent

二、6. C 7. B 8. D 9. D 10. D

三、11. Something new is growing at the top of the stem

12. I'm going to look after my plant carefully

13. I have something important to say

14. He is too careless to pass the final exam

15. Tom reads books to know more about insects

Unit Review

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. A 2. A 3. C

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. shopping 2. disappears 3. suddenly 4. heavily 5. valuable

二、6. grow into 7. What are 8. not cover 9. a lot 10. Do you want

三、11. There is something new in today's newspaper

12. Write your name at the top of the page

13. Joe has turned into a famous singer

14. I baked some bread an hour ago

15. Please look after my dog during my holiday

四、16. living 17. turn 18. soil 19. important 20. basic 21. big 22. cover 23. fill 24. carefully 25. pleasant

Unit 3 Animals Are Our Friends

Lesson 13 Danny's Big Scare

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. loyal 2. doorbell 3. tiny 4. sofa 5. screamed

二、6. been 7. to drink

8. happened to 点拨：考查 happen to 的用法。句意：西蒙在哭。你知道他发生什么事了吗？

9. asking 10. gently

三、11. B 点拨：考查情景交际。句意：——今天下午你愿意和我们一起打篮球吗？——邀请我你真是太好了，但我妈妈病了。A 项：我不关心；B 项：

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

你真是太好了；C项：当然不；D项：乐意效劳。由空格后面的but my mother is ill可知，此人首先要对对方表示感谢，接着说不能去的原因。故选B。

12. C 点拨：句意："我可以和李先生通话吗？""对不起，他去哈尔滨了，他已经在那座城市呆了两天了。"由语境可知李先生现在不在此处，故第一空填has gone to；第二空后有"for+时间段"，用has been in。故选C。

13. B 点拨：句意：昨天在小镇上发生了一起事故。take place和happen都表示发生，都不能用于被动语态。happen常指具体事件的发生，特别指偶然的或未能预见的事情。如要指事先安排或有准备的事情或活动发生时，通常要用take place。又由yesterday可知应用动词的过去式，所以选B。

14. B 点拨：句意：我害怕犯错误。be afraid of+doing sth.。表示"害怕做某事"。make mistakes表示"犯错误"。故选B。

15. D 点拨：句意：——露西已经完成她的家庭作业了吗？——不，还没有。yet副词，已经，常与现在完成时的一般疑问句连用，所以选D。

Lesson 14 Amazing Animals

Ⅱ．课文阅读新题练

一、1. A

二、2. A 3. A

Ⅳ．课时针对训练

一、1. mice 2. laid 3. shake 4. avoid 5. remind

二、6. A 点拨：lie躺，说谎，位于；live居住；lay产卵，放置；list列出。根据"襄阳古城往南5公里处"可知表示方位，故选A。

7. B 点拨：运用短语辨析法和代入法。help sb. out意为"帮助某人摆脱（困境）"；remind sb. of意为"使某人想起"；let sb. down意为"使某人失望"；regard sb. as意为"把某人看作"。把选项代入题干可知B项符合语境。

8. C 点拨：运用语法判定法和语境暗示法。以-ing结尾的形容词一般用来修饰事物；以-ed结尾的形容词一般用来修饰人。根据答语第二句句意"太好了！"可推断这个消息是令人激动的，用exciting修饰news。故选C。

9. B 点拨：考查形容词的比较级。由than可知要用比较级；由She can express herself in public now.可知应该是更勇敢，而不是更懒，故选B。

10. D 点拨：用固定搭配法。avoid doing sth.意为"避免做某事"。

三、11. The story reminds me of my grandmother

12. Please lay the book on the desk

13. She's much more outgoing than me

14. What can make us avoid spelling mistakes

15. Yesterday the duck laid two eggs

Lesson 15 The Zoo Is Open

Ⅲ．课时针对训练

一、1. wake up 2. take photos 3. scared 4. danger 5. feed

二、6. when 7. in danger 8. instead of 9. wakes up 10. Why not let

三、11. Don't point to others with fingers

12. There are lots of monkeys in the zoo

13. Some animals can be dangerous

14. Let's go out to play for a while

15. Could you help me take photos

Lesson 16 The Bear Escaped!

Ⅲ．课时针对训练

一、1. playing 2. to be 3. jokes 4. going 5. will come

二、6. play a joke 7. happened 8. protect; from 9. Fools' 10. heard of

三、11. What are; doing 12. not to play 13. instead of 14. aren't any 15. Did; hear

四、16. We heard it on the radio

17. There are some boys playing on the playground

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

18. There is a fierce bear coming
19. What will happen to her
20. The sunglasses can protect us from the sun

Lesson 17 Save the Tigers

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. century　2. courage　3. kill　4. reason
5. brave

二、6. D　点拨：句意：我喜欢英语，汤姆也喜欢英语。as well 也，常位于句末。故选 D。

7. A　点拨：本题可运用短语辨析法和语境暗示法。cut down 意为“把……砍倒”；cut through 意为“开辟”；cut up 意为“切碎”；cut out 意为“删去”。根据 for a new road 可推断是把树木砍倒，以便腾出空地建新路。故选 A。

8. C　点拨：用主谓一致法。a number of 大量的，后接可数名词复数，根据 there be 句型的就近原则，应用 there are; the number of 作主语，be 动词用 is。

9. C　点拨：运用短语辨析法。at the beginning of 意为“在……之初”；in the end 终于，最后；by the end of 到……为止；at the end of 意为“在……的结尾 / 末端”。句意为“在故事结尾，小男孩儿回到家，和他的父母呆在了一起。”故选 C。

10. D　点拨：考查动词短语辨析。take off“起飞，脱下”；knock off“停止，中断”；cut down“削减，砍倒”；cut up“切碎”。结合题意可知本题选 D。

三、11. at the beginning of　12. as well
13. has dropped to　14. The number of; is
15. food chain; kept in balance

Lesson 18 Friendship Between Animals

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. about　2. by　3. with　4. Without　5. to

二、6. B　点拨：句意：我过去常常晚饭后看报纸和看电视，但是现在我习惯散步。used to do sth. 过去常常做某事；be used to doing sth. 习惯于做某事。故选 B。

7. A　点拨：考查介词的用法辨析。without 没有；against 反对；through 通过；with 随着。由后句“学生们必须更加诚实。”可推知，无人监考意味着学生考试没有老师。故选 A。

8. A　点拨：运用语境暗示法。“做饭而不是出去吃饭”表示省钱的一种方式。by 表示通过某种手段或方式，符合语境。

9. B

10. A　点拨：80-year-old 为复合形容词作定语；表示某人 18 岁，用 18 years old，故选 A。

三、11. He warned me of the coming danger
12. Our teacher asked us to write an 80-word diary
13. They have good relationships with us
14. Bamboo can be used to make paper
15. Mr. White warns me not to play computer games

Unit Review

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. fish　2. Asia
3. dangerous　4. quite

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. D　点拨：句中的 milk 为不可数名词，故先排除 A、C 项；some 和 any 都可修饰不可数名词，some 常用于肯定句中，any 常用于否定句和疑问句中。故选 D。

2. A　点拨：由于句中的 trees 为可数名词，可先排除 B 项；C 项不能修饰名词；any 常用于否定句和疑问句中；some 常用于肯定句中。故选 A。

3. A　4. C

5. D　点拨：采用语法判定法。any 意为“一些”，用于否定句和疑问句中；some 用于肯定句中和希望得到对方肯定回答的疑问句中。故选 D。

二、6. in danger　7. save　8. At the beginning of
9. the number of　10. dropped to　11. protect
12. food chain　13. in balance　14. have cut down
15. as well

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 The Internet Connects Us

Lesson 19 How Do You Use the Internet?

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. technology　2. tablet　3. keyboard
4. industry　5. chatting

二、6. to eat　7. invitation　8. looking
9. chatting　10. sends

三、11. A　点拨：考查非谓语动词及不定代词的用法。句意：萨姆过去常常以玩游戏为乐趣，而现在他想做点儿其他事情。由 used to do sth. “过去常常做某事”，可知用 play；而形容词 else 修饰不定代词 something 必须放在不定代词之后。故选 A。

12. D　点拨：have a good time doing sth. 做某事很高兴。结合句意，故选 D。

13. B

14. C　点拨：many 许多；much more 更多的；over 多于；much 许多。故选 C。

15. B　点拨：表示在某方面有研究应用介词 on。故应选 B。

Lesson 20 A Computer Helps!

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. D

二、2. A　3. D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. Enter　2. key　3. depends　4. key
5. search

二、6. B

7. D　点拨：考查连词辨析。unless 除非；until 直到……为止；since 自从；although 尽管。“一些无用的东西”与“它有可能花很多钱”形成让步关系，用 although，故选 D。

8. B　点拨：采用语法判定法。句意：这对双胞胎看起来一模一样。他们_____在我班里。each 每一个；both（两者）都；either（两者中）任何一个；none（三者或三者以上）没有一个。根据第二句中的谓语动词为复数形式可知主语为复数。故选 B。

9. D　点拨：采用短语辨析法。fight against 和……做斗争；argue with 和……争辩；hear from 收到……来信；depend on 依赖，依靠。

10. D　点拨：由“one of +the + 形容词最高级 + 可数名词复数”可知选 D。

三、11. an; Western　12. helpful
13. depends on
14. Though; plans
15. In; way; is like

Lesson 21 Books or Computers?

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. presses　2. appeared　3. modern
4. electronic　5. sold

二、6. sells　7. ancient　8. by hand
9. kept on　10. pass on

三、11. A　点拨：考查代词的用法。句意：有足够的杯子让参观者每人拿一个。one 泛指同类事物中的一个。

12. C　点拨：句意：——无论你什么时候有了困难，你都可以给我打电话。——我会的。谢谢你。此题考查 no matter when，应选 C。

13. A

14. B　点拨：考查“疑问词 + 不定式”作宾语的用法。句意：——我将有十天假期。但是我不知道去哪里。——去巴黎怎么样？根据答语判定疑问词为 where。

15. C　点拨：句意：我相信如果从现在开始你坚持努力工作，有一天你的梦想会实现的。keep on（坚持）后面跟动词时，要用动词的 ing 形式，故选 C。

Lesson 22 Travel on the Internet

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. received　2. cancer　3. Egypt
4. blessings　5. dream

二、6. B　点拨：运用词语辨析法。to 意为“到”；by 意为“在……旁边”；for 意为“为了”；with 意为“和……在一起”。句意为：在夏天，有许多人在河边钓鱼。故选 B。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

7. B 点拨：运用词语辨析法和语境暗示法。come out 意为“出版”；come true 意为“实现”，主语为物；achieve 意为“完成，达到”；realize 意为“实现”，主语为人。句意为：如果我们中国人一起努力工作，中国梦将会实现。

8. A 点拨：考查宾语从句的用法。宾语从句要用陈述句语序，排除 B、C 和 D 项。故选 A。

9. A 点拨：句意：当我还是个孩子的时候，我梦想着在将来成为一个大公司的经理。根据句中 was，可知选 A。

10. B 点拨：考查动词辨析。receive 指客观上的“收到”；accept 指主观上的“接受”；refuse 拒绝；make 制造。句意：既然你处于困境中，为什么不接受我们的帮助呢？根据句意可知选 B。

Lesson 23 The Internet—Good or Bad?

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. advantage 2. simple 3. coin 4. cause 5. less

二、6. A 点拨：运用短语辨析法。句意：——你认为这沙发怎么样？——不错，但是它可能 _____ 我们起居室太多的空间。take up 占据；put up 张贴，悬挂；open up 打开；make up 编造。结合句意可知，应是“占据起居室太多的空间”。故选 A。

7. D 点拨：第一句句意：所有的事情都有优点和缺点。A. 金窝银窝不如自己的狗窝；B. 早起的鸟儿有虫吃；C. 众人拾柴火焰高；D. 事物都有两面性。结合题意，可知选 D。

8. B 点拨：句意：那位女人刚才把她的外套洗了。coat 是动词 wash 的逻辑宾语，故用 wash 的过去分词。

9. C 点拨：考查特殊疑问词组。句意：——从你家到学校有多远？——大约 10 分钟的车程。how long 多长；how soon 多久以后；how far 多远；how often 多久一次。答语是距离，应用 how far 提问“多远”。故选 C。

10. A 点拨：考查比较级的用法。句意：城市中将会有更少的小汽车，因为人们更喜欢地铁。fewer“更少的”，常用来修饰可数名词复数；less“更少的”，常用来修饰不可数名词；more“更多的”。

三、11. I stay in touch with my old friends now

12. How far do you want to travel

13. It is harmful to our health

14. The lightning caused the baby to cry

15. Some of the advantages are truly wonderful

Unit Review

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. C 2. C 3. A

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. If; want; can send 2. If; will miss

3. will become; unless 4. As long as

5. will practise; are

二、6. are able to 7. information 8. advantages

9. far away 10. too much 11. less

12. Aside from 13. to steal 14. take up

Unit 5 Buying and Selling

Lesson 25 Raising Money

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. paid 2. poster 3. raise 4. cost 5. sixteen

二、6. got 7. posters 8. paid 9. made 10. dollars

三、11. How did the students make money

12. How much did you pay for this pet

13. We work together to raise money

14. I don't think everybody likes cookies

15. There is something new in today's newspaper

Lesson 26 Cookies, Please!

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. A

二、2. C 3. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. any other 2. be afraid 3. coming up to 4. for sale 5. go over to

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、6. A 点拨:sale 常和 for 或 on 搭配，for sale 表示“待售，出售”；on sale 表示“打折销售”，由“It is very cheap.”可知选 A。

7. D 点拨:采用词语辨析法。句意:苹果手表很漂亮，但是太贵了。所以我买不起。save 节省;support 支持;offer 提供;afford 负担得起，买得起。

8. A 点拨:采用语法判定法。句意:蒂姆·库克每周给他妈妈打电话甚至当他环游世界的时候。while 当……的时候，常与进行时态连用;根据 called 可知应用过去进行时。

9. D 点拨:情景交际法。请求允许。问句句意：布莱克先生，我可以使用你的电脑吗？从答句我正在使用，可知表拒绝。Go ahead 去做某事，表允许；Thank you 谢谢，表感谢；Of course 当然，表允许；I'm afraid not 恐怕不行，表拒绝。故选择 D。

10. D

Lesson 27 Business English

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. mean 2. everyday 3. congratulate
4. including 5. ladder

二、6. different from 7. Everyday English
8. moving up 9. congratulate; on
10. means; a better

Lesson 28 Ms. Liu's Great Idea

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. gate 2. value 3. leave 4. honest
5. trust

二、6. B 点拨:the way to … 表示“去……的路”。

7. C 点拨:考查名词辨析。句意:我爷爷知道许多植物的历史和药用_____。wealth 财富;price 价格;value 价值;cost 费用。分析四个选项，value 用在空格处最为合适。故选 C。

8. B 点拨:be surprised to do sth. 意为“惊讶于做某事;对做某事感到惊讶”，故选 B。

9. A 点拨:采用词语辨析法。句意:——当你需要的时候我会一直支持你。——你真好。(我)很感谢你的支持。appreciate 感谢;thank 感谢;help 帮助;depend 依靠。appreciate 的宾语是事件或事情;thank 的宾语是人。

10. D 点拨:考查动词的用法。句意:——很抱歉，胡老师。我把英语练习本忘在家里了。——没关系。请记得下午把它带到这儿来。leave sth. + sp.，将某物遗忘在某处;remember to do sth. 记得去做某事;remember doing sth. 记得做过某事。故选 D。

三、11. Don't park the car here
12. I appreciate your trust
13. Everyone should be honest
14. I left my pen at home yesterday
15. We should learn the value of honesty

Lesson 29 How to Push a Product

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. shines 2. create 3. offers 4. successful
5. similar

二、6. is similar to 7. passing 8. stands out
9. caught my eye 10. have an interest in

三、11. A 点拨:采用词语辨析法。句意:——杰克每周六主动到地铁站帮忙(做义工)。——太棒了！下周六让我们也加入吧。A 选项表示“主动提供”；B 选项表示“拒绝”；C 选项表示“忘记;遗忘”。根据题意选择 A。

12. A

13. A 点拨:考查动词词义辨析。表示创造更多的就业机会，应用 create。

14. B 点拨: different “不同的”; similar “相似的”; strange “奇怪的”; interesting “有趣的”。句意为“——你能区分出这两幅画的不同(之处)吗？——不同(之处)？哦，不。它们看起来非常相似。”故选 B。

15. A 点拨:句意:——通往成功的道路是多么艰难！——确实如此！要成功，你需要大量的艰苦工作。根据句意第一空“成功”应是名词 success，第二空“成功”应是动词 succeed，故选 A。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 30 A Cookie Sale

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. sold 2. less 3. crazy 4. to carry
5. nobody

二、6. My brother is too young to go to school
7. I was happy that people liked my cookies
8. I finished the homework in less than an hour yesterday
9. Selling cookies is a great idea to help others
10. He is crazy about skiing

Unit Review

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. glasses 2. sunglasses 3. Monday
4. 10:00 a.m. 5. Sundays

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. C 点拨：考查宾语从句中连词用法辨析。句意：我担心我能否进入一所好的高中。whether 是否，常与 or not 连用，句中含有 or not。结合句意，故选 C。

2. A 点拨：考查宾语从句的时态及状语从句的时态。句意：——我不知道萨姆明天是否会来。——别担心。他一来我就告诉你。if 引导宾语从句，主句是一般现在时，由 tomorrow 可知，从句要用一般将来时；后面是 as soon as 引导的时间状语从句，遵循“主将从现”，要用一般现在时，故选 A。

3. C 点拨：考查宾语从句。句意：你能告诉我他们什么时候离开北京吗？ 引导的宾语从句应该用陈述语序，故排除 A、B 两项。再根据主句中的 could 在这里是为了让语气更委婉，并不是过去时态，因此从句中用原形 will 即可，不需要用过去式 would。

4. B 点拨：考查宾语从句。宾语从句用陈述语序，排除 C、D；主句用了一般过去时，宾语从句用过去时态。故选 B。

5. B 点拨：考查宾语从句。宾语从句用陈述语序，故排除 A、C 两项；再由答语是给对方指路可推知，问句是询问“请你告诉我超市在哪里好吗？”，故选 B。

二、6. was going to 7. pay 8. make money
9. came up to 10. cheap 11. dollar
12. sold out of 13. less than 14. went over to
15. crazy 16. tie 17. while 18. afford

Unit 6 Be a Champion!

Lesson 31 Don't Fall, Danny!

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. set a record 2. champion 3. relatives
4. standing on one foot 5. brought

二、6. D 点拨：固定搭配法。be late for 意思为“……迟到”。

7. C 点拨：for+ 时间段，常用于完成时态；on 后接具体的某一天或某一天的早上、下午和晚上；at+ 某时刻；in+ 时间段，用于一般将来时。由题中的 will be back 可知选 C 项。

8. A 点拨：采用短语辨析法。句意：这个男孩有个把所有东西放到合适位置的好习惯。put away 把……放好；put up 张贴；take away 带走；take up 占据。

9. D 点拨：考查疑问词组的用法。句意：——你在这所学校学习多长时间了？——将近三年了。故选 D。

10. B

三、11. How do you feel after standing on one foot
12. I know what the record is
13. Don't forget to bring your homework
14. He has kept a world record
15. Has Danny been doing his homework for two hours

Lesson 32 My Favourite Record

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. A

二、2. A 3. D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. lift 2. thick 3. weighs 4. several
5. photographs/photos

二、6. Mine 7. proud 8. kilos
9. farther/further 10. photographer

三、11. Their country should be proud of them

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

12. The bag is full of books
13. He went farther than anyone expected
14. Amy lifted her arm to wave
15. Several hundred students gathered on the playground

Lesson 33 2 800 Years of Sports

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. are 2. competed 3. to take part in
4. married 5. spirits

二、6. A 点拨：句意：——我打算下个月去香港。你呢，詹妮？——我将参加社会实践。take part in 参加。故选 A。

7. B 点拨：采用语法判定法和逻辑推理法。句意：每个国家都想让最好的运动员彼此竞争。have sb. do sth. “让某人做某事”；compete against/with “与……比赛”。

8. B 点拨：根据“I love them so much.”可知是“两者都”，故选 B。

9. A 点拨：考查动词短语。句意：我们需要做些研究来找到答案。find out “找到”；look out “小心”；hand out “分发”；take out “拿出”。结合语境可知本题选 A。 10. A

三、11. Have you ever watched the Olympics on TV
12. We will find out the truth soon
13. He is amazed at the result
14. They held the event every four years in Olympia
15. Did she get married last year

Lesson 34 Modern Olympics

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. America 2. stand for 3. peace
4. stay the same 5. touched my heart

二、6. C 7. C 8. D 9. A 10. A

三、11. What do you think is the same in the Olympics
12. Is the Olympic symbol always the same
13. Which song touched your heart
14. The Olympic mascot is often an animal
15. Are there many Americans in the room

Lesson 35 The Dream Team

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. gold 2. coaches 3. influence 4. defeat
5. win

二、6. B 点拨：考查连词的用法辨析。句意：不仅他的同伴，而且他都去过巴黎，因此他们对巴黎非常了解。neither…nor… 意为“既不……也不……”；not only…but also… 意为“不但……而且……”；either…or… 意为“或者……或者……，要么……要么……”。由句中的“so they know Paris well”可知：他和他的同伴都去过巴黎，故选 B。

7. B

8. C 点拨：work“工作”；come on“快点，开始”；do my best “尽我最大的努力”；effort “努力”，名词。分析题干可知，“我不知道是否能赢，但是我将尽我最大的努力。”故答案为 C。

9. D 点拨：父母的言行对孩子的成长有很大的影响。A. change 改变；B. stress 压力；C. progress 进步；D. influence 影响。根据句意可知此空是影响的意思，故选 D。

10. A 点拨：句意：——你们学校赢了这次篮球比赛吗？——没有。我们被击败了。win 赢；lose 输掉；be defeated 被击败。结合句意，可知选 A。

Lesson 36 Classroom Olympics

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. race 2. None 3. result 4. rope
5. twentieth

二、6. B 点拨：anyone “任何人”；everyone “每人，所有人”；none “没有一个”；someone “某人”。根据句意“——早上好，同学们。所有的人都到齐了吗？——没有，老师。汤姆没来。”可以判断用 everyone。所以选择答案 B。

7. B 点拨：运用排除法。题干意为：在学校，我问了一个男孩和两个女孩他们校长的名字，但他们中没

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

有一个人能帮我。由 but 可知意思转折，其后应该是否定，故排除 C 和 D，neither 用于表示两者，前面提到三个人，故排除 A，因此选 B。

8. C 点拨：考查介词。句意：没有别人的帮助，没人能够独自解决这个难题。with“用”；for“为”；without“没有”；from“从”。结合句意可知选 C。

9. B

10. B 点拨：句意：我的家离学校很近，因此我经常走着回家。close to+ 某地，离某地近；far from+ 某地，离某地远；故排除 A 和 C；再根据 walk home 可知这里指的是我的家离学校近。故选 B。

三、11. fell off　12. result of　13. None of

14. crying;shouting　15. came in twentieth

Unit Review

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. C　2. B　3. A

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. D　2. D　3. D　4. A　5. B

二、6. find out　7. started　8. compete against

9. every four years　10. take part in

11. took place　12. change　13. stand for

14. stays the same　15. peace

Unit 7 Know Our World

Lesson 37 Let's Learn Geography!

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. Japan; Japanese　2. island　3. except/but

4. population　5. abroad

二、6. is　7. to visit　8. travelling　9. to climb

10. have learned

三、11. Some day　12. have never been

13. What is　14. Have you ever been abroad

15. any other

Lesson 38 The World Is a Big Place

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. C

二、2. B　3. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. surface　2. total　3. planet　4. Indians

5. increased

二、6. C 点拨：be covered with“被……覆盖”。

7. C 点拨：考查介词辨析。increase 后可接 by 和 to。当后面是倍数或百分数时，用介词 by；当后面是具体数字时，用介词 to。

8. B 点拨：考查时态。由句中时间状语 In recent years 可知，本题应用现在完成时态。“经济增长”是主动，用主动语态，故选 B。

9. C 点拨：表示人口多用 large/big；表示人口少用 small。第二个空用介词 by 表示“到……之前”。故选 C。

10. D 点拨：考查分数表达和主谓一致。句意：——妈妈，我四分之三的同学都戴眼镜。——哦，天哪。你需要好好保护你的眼睛。在分数表达法中，分子用基数词，分母用序数词，若分子大于 1，分母用复数。3/4 即 three fourths，排除选项 B 和 C。此句 my classmates 表示复数，故谓语动词应用复数形式。故选 D。

三、11. The earth is a special planet

12. The box is covered with a coat

13. Travelling increases one's knowledge of the world

14. Will you finish the task by tomorrow

15. Oceans cover two thirds of the earth's surface

Lesson 39 Ring Up or Call?

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. American　2. spell　3. bathrooms

4. grammar　5. Australia

二、6. friends　7. translator　8. juice

9. differences　10. pronunciation

三、11. ring you up

12. He was sitting between two old ladies

13. How do you pronounce that word

14. Phones don't go up when they ring

15. Can you translate this sentence in different ways

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 40 Body Language

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. nodded　2. kisses　3. opposite
4. communicating　5. European
二、6. shook hands　7. sometime　8. European
9. politely　10. communicate with
三、11. the opposite of　12. Shaking hands
13. polite　14. kissed; on
15. several times

Lesson 41 A Class of the World

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. known　2. pride　3. living　4. called
5. prepared
二、6. the rainforest
7. famous/well-known; for
8. prepare for　9. all over the world
10. take pride in
三、11. We need to prepare for the speech
12. It is known to many young people
13. Can you imagine our life without water
14. Students talk about their countries with pride
15. I take pride in my knowledge of history

Lesson 42 North America

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. in　2. of　3. in　4. in　5. about
二、6. in the east of　7. longest
8. richest　9. leave for　10. square kilometres
三、11. C　12. B　13. B　14. A　15. C

Unit Review

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. B　2. B　3. A

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. A　2. C　3. A
4. A　点拨：考查非谓语动词和被动语态。第一个空需要用 used 作后置定语，第二个空是被动语态来表示“被用来做某事”，并且由于空格前面已经有情态动词 will，因此 be 动词要用原形。故选 A。
5. D　点拨：考查被动语态。句意：—— 那个乘客在占了另外一个人的座位之后拒绝起身让座！—— 真可耻！根据新的诚信体系他将受到惩罚。主语 He 是惩罚的承受者，所以用被动语态，这里表达的是将会被惩罚。用将来时的被动语态 will + be + 动词过去分词。故选 D。
二、6. planet　7. population　8. in total
9. increasing　10. is covered with
11. square kilometres　12. The Great Lakes
13. two thirds　14. Indian　15. islands

Unit 8 Save Our World

Lesson 43 Let's Clean Up!

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. pollution　2. bit　3. attention
4. explaining　5. rubbish
二、6. clean up　7. Pick up
8. polluted　点拨：句意：如果河被污染了，农民就不能用水浇庄稼了。对河来说，是被污染的，所以要用被动语态。
9. agree to　10. drew their attention

Lesson 44 Environment Clubs

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. D
二、2. A　3. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. least　2. wasted　3. to reduce
4. to face　5. throw
二、6. D　7. C
8. B　点拨：考查形容词比较级的用法。根据句意：—— 安，我担心我正在变得更胖。我该做什么呢？—— 我认为你应该少吃食物多做锻炼。及关键词 more 可知，此空应填比较级 less。故选 B。
9. B　点拨：考查动词短语辨析。keep on 继续，turn on 打开，try on 试穿，put on 穿上。根据语境 getting dark 可知，需要打开灯，故选 B。
10. C　点拨：固定结构法。句意：由于越来越多的餐馆加入“光盘行动”，人们被鼓励不要再浪费食物。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

encourage… not to waste 鼓励……不要浪费，是固定结构，故选 C。

三、11. It reduces the risk of heart disease

12. You mustn't throw away the garbage everywhere

13. It's a waste of money

14. I'm a member of an environment club

15. Shut down the computer when you don't use it

Lesson 45 Let's Sort Garbage!

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. sort　2. litter　3. amount　4. empty

5. broken

二、6. litter　7. broken　8. sorts　9. more

10. empty

三、11. The car needs to be repaired

12. Where did you put the garbage

13. People waste too much paper

14. He is carrying a bag full of oranges

15. There are pieces of broken glass on the desk

Lesson 46 Protect Our Environment

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. trucks　2. showers　3. factories

4. leaks　5. unlike

二、6. take care of　7. again and again

8. make a difference　9. Put; in

10. take a shower

三、11. We have checked our homework

12. We must try harder

13. I take short showers

14. We took a taxi to save time

15. They cleaned the classroom again and again

Lesson 47 Connected to Nature

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. with　2. off　3. off　4. out　5. down

二、6. C　点拨：be full of=be filled with 意为“充满；装满”。只有 C 符合。

7. D　点拨：根据两个时间点可知选短语 from…to… 意为“从……到……”，故选 D。

8. D　点拨：本题采用关键词法。由句中的 yesterday 可知句子时态为一般过去时。

9. B　点拨：题中的 get 是系动词，后要跟形容词，exciting 用于修饰物，excited 用于修饰人，结合句意，可知选择 B。　10. C

三、11. start out to write　12. is; connected with

13. live off　14. died of　15. are dying off

Lesson 48 Garbage Is Interesting!

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

一、1. seats　2. lid　3. tons　4. used　5. divide

二、6. broken　7. more　8. making

9. getting　10. to protect

三、11. is; with　12. made; out of

13. divided into　14. duty to　15. a used car

Unit Review

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. A　2. A　3. B

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. A　点拨：考查代词用法区别。句意：——我的课本丢了，我哪里也找不到它了。——这儿有一些，就请拿一本吧。表示前面提到的那个用代词 it 代替，表示与前面提到的同类的一个用代词 one，故选 A。

2. B　点拨：find it+*adj.* +to do sth. 为固定结构，意为“发现做某事……”这里的 it 为形式宾语，真正的宾语是后面的不定式短语。　3. B

4. C　点拨：固定结构：It takes/took sb. some time to do sth. 做某事花费某人一些时间。

5. C　点拨：考查代词。句意：——我找不到今天早上买的杂志。——哦，杰克正在那边读一本杂志，为什么不去看看是不是你的呢？ one 用来代替上文提到过同一类型的事物，但不是同一个；it 代替上文提到过的同一个事物。故选 C。

二、6. polluted　7. factories　8. rubbish

9. to protect　10. too many　11. pollution

12. allowed　13. good for　14. again

15. turn off

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

教材习题参考答案

Unit 1 Spring Is Coming!

▶ Lesson 1

1 February; cloudy; temperature; shower; thunderstorm

2 August 22; sunny; rainy; 25℃; 6:28 a. m.; 7: 47 p.m.

3 maybe; sunrise; thunderstorm; basketball

1. thunderstorm **2**. sunrise **3**. Maybe **4**. basketball

▶ Lesson 2

1 **1**. F **2**. F **3**. F **4**. T

2 第2、3、4、6、7句

3 **1**. reached **2**. practice **3**. enjoy **4**. rises **5**. plant

▶ Lesson 3

1 4 3 1 2

▶ Lesson 4

1 **1**. The average winter temperature is 15℃. The average summer temperature is 24℃.

2. The city gets about 1 000 millimetres of rain every year.

3. The city gets about 2 250 hours of sunshine every year.

4. Because the weather in Kunming is spring-like nearly all year around.

2 Susan——第2段; Mike——第5段; Zhang Jing——第4段; Tom——第1段; Dong Chao——第3段

3 **1**. because of **2**. thinks of **3**. long for **4**. feels like

▶ Lesson 5

1 **1**. Debbie. **2**. No, it isn't.

3. She likes to play on the swings, run, play catch, play soccer and play basketball.

4. Because he is too tired.

2 **1**. look like **2**. Hold on **3**. thank; for **4**. fall off

3 1 4 6 2 5 3 7

▶ Lesson 6

1 **1**. Because the weather in March in Edmonton can be cold and snowy or warm and sunny.

2. They drive to the countryside on weekends.

3. Because she can do all the fun activities in spring.

2 **1**. until **2**. zero **3**. low **4**. drop

3 C A B

▶ Unit Review

Building Your Vocabulary

I. instead push nearly wind plenty long spring

II. **1**. plenty of **2**. Neither; nor **3**. activities **4**. pushed **5**. not; until **6**. average

Grammar in Use

newspaper hometown countryside thunderstorm anymore playground hillside sunset weekend

Listening and Speaking

II. **1**. He will go for a picnic in the countryside.

2. Danny, Jenny and Mike.

3. They will meet at 10: 00 a.m. tomorrow morning.

Putting It All Together

1. Fifteen days.

2. Firework shows, dragon dancing and lion dancing are very common.

3. Because they are round, yellow and hot, just like the sun.

4. Indian people.

Self-Evaluation

I. **e.g.** It's not snowing, but it is cloudy. There will be a shower this afternoon.

II. **e.g.** Some practice *Tai Chi*. Others sing and dance.

III. weekend countryside hometown hillside sunset

Unit 2 Plant a Plant!

▶ Lesson 7

1 **1**. F **2**. F **3**. F **4**. T

2 roots; bottom; Cover; around; hole

2 3 4 5 1

3 D C B A

4 **e.g. 1**. We can have a rest in the shade under the tree.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. Trees can stop the wind.

3. Trees help us fulfill our basic needs.

▶ Lesson 8

1 第1、2、3、5、6、7、8句

2 pleasant; shade; basic; forest(s); cover

▶ Lesson 9

1 1. Saturday afternoons 2. all kinds of plants
3. easy

2 第1、2、5、6、7图

3 1. planting; plants 2. water; water
3. answer; answer 4. gardening; garden
5. showed; show

4 **e.g.** When is the best time to plant vegetables? How much water do they need?

▶ Lesson 10

1 a fence; water; soil; sunlight

2 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F

3 1. under 2. think 3. reason 4. check

▶ Lesson 11

1 2 4 1 3

2 Eastern Asia. This plant's flowers look like flying egrets.

The middle of Africa. If the wind blows, this amazing tree "laughs".

The southwest of Africa. It has only two leaves and a stem. This plant can live as long as 1 500 years.

3 1. touch 2. eastern 3. shy 4. surprised

4 **e.g.** The Rafflesia arnoldii is the biggest flower in the world. It comes from Southeast Asia. It has only one flower. It doesn't have leaves or stems.

▶ Lesson 12

1 1. They planted some seeds.

2. It sprouted a few days later.

3. Because it can get some sunshine in the yard.

4. He will send some seeds to Li Ming.

2 flower; root; stem; Leaves

3 **leaves:** cabbage, lettuce

roots: carrot

fruits: apple, eggplant, tomato, watermelon

seeds: peanut, sunflower, corn, pea

stems: celery, potato, sugarcane, onion

▶ Unit Review

Building Your Vocabulary

1. consider 2. eastern 3. garden
4. surprised 5. cover 6. hole 7. Most

Grammar in Use

I. 1. pleasant 2. amazing 3. colourful
4. careful 5. homeless 6. unhappy

II. 1. hopeful 2. water 3. usefully
4. dirty 5. warm 6. book 7. sunny
8. dangerous 9. cover 10. lazily

Listening and Speaking

II. 1. A 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. A

Putting It All Together

I. 1. Plants and animals are living things.

2. No, they don't.

3. A plant uses the energy in sunlight to make food for itself.

4. Some animals eat plants. Some animals eat other animals.

II. 1. I plant a seed in a small pot.

2. I give it plenty of water and it sprouts a few days later.

3. Soon, it grows a stem and a leaf.

Self-Evaluation

I. **e.g.** Most plants need a lot of sunlight to grow well. Plants need water to grow strong and stay healthy.

II. **e.g.** Gardening is a very enjoyable hobby. It grows in eastern Asia.

Unit 3 Animals Are Our Friends

▶ Lesson 13

1 **e.g.** She's afraid of you now.
She's gentle and quiet.
Dogs are friendly and loyal.
They even help people sometimes.

2 ran; rang; tiny; sofa

3 cats—lovely
dogs—loyal, good companions, helpful
fish— quiet
birds—cute
other small mammals (rabbits, ferrets…)—cute, helpful

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

others—kind

▶ Lesson 14

1 **1.** T **2.** F **3.** T **4.** F

2 **1.** mouse **2.** sand **3.** lay
4. wings **5.** avoid **6.** enemy

3 They live in the deserts of Asia. mice; rabbits
They live in Southeast Asia.
Their large noses.
They live in New Zealand. lay
They live all over the world.
They look like birds with their large wings.

▶ Lesson 15

1 **1.** Saturday. **2.** The zoo. **3.** 10:45 a. m.
4. A sign. **5.** A bear and some giraffes.

2 **1.** go through **2.** instead of **3.** take photos
4. dangerous **5.** wake up **6.** nearly

▶ Lesson 16

1 woke; escaped; Instead; joke

2 fierce; short; bamboo; plants; can't; as fast as; smaller and smaller; eight

▶ Lesson 17

1 B; C; A

2 **Paragraph 1**: "Save the tigers" is a group of volunteers.
These volunteers hope to save the tigers of the world.
Paragraph 2: The tiger is at the top of the food chain.
It helps keep the number of other wild animals in balance.
For this reason, tigers are important to the environment.
Paragraph 3: In recent years, tigers have been in danger of disappearing.
As forests disappear, tigers lose their homes.
The number of tigers in the wild is quickly decreasing and we must do something about it.

▶ Lesson 18

1 animals; strong; back; clean; warn; easily

2 **1.** They are good friends.
2. Owe is a baby hippo. Mzee is a 130-year-old tortoise.
3. It touched many people's hearts.
4. No, they don't.

3 hippo; storm; tortoise; friendship; together

4 **e.g.** Egret: Hello, my good friend.
Rhino: How are you, my small friend?
Owen: Grandpa Mzee, I don't have my house.
Mzee: Don't worry, my baby. You can live with me.

▶ Unit Review

Building Your Vocabulary

animals; strong; long; dangerous; forest

Grammar in Use

some; any; any; some

Listening and Speaking

II. **1.** Roots, frogs and fish.
2. In Asia, Africa and America.
3. When they feel scared.
4. Almost seven months.

III. CBAD

Putting It All Together

I.

Facts about Pandas					
Type	mammal	Food	bamboo	Home	China
Life Span	about 20 years	Size	between 1.2 to 1.9 metres tall	Weight	about 80 to 130 kilograms

Self-Evaluation

I. **e.g.** When the monkeys are happy or excited, they shake their noses.
Tigers are symbols of strength and courage.

II. **e.g.** Some people hunt and kill tigers for money.
We don't have any pandas at the Edmonton Zoo, Danny.

Unit 4 The Internet Connects Us

▶ Lesson 19

1 write blogs send or receive emails do research for homework chat online read

2 **1.** get **2.** play **3.** rains **4.** go

3 **1.** Computer & Internet **2.** Language
3. Entertainment **4.** Society & Culture
5. Education

▶ Lesson 20

1 **1.** F **2.** F **3.** T

2 festival hides symbols celebrate

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3 Always in March or April.
an important festival; one of the biggest holidays;
eat delicious food together;
eat chocolate rabbits; have egg hunts

▶ **Lesson 21**

1 1. They wrote each word by hand.
2. Modern technology.
3. The electronic book (e-book).

2 3 5 6 1 4 7 2

3 Information appeared modern common electronic sell

4 **e.g. A:** Do you like e-books?
B: Yes. I like them very much.
A: Why?
B: Because they are very easy for people to read online.

▶ **Lesson 22**

1 1. Her grandma has a terrible type of cancer.
2. Her grandma's dream is travelling around the world.
3. She found many people followed her blog and they began posting pictures of Grandma visiting places all over the world. They also sent their blessings and warm wishes with every picture.
4. She said, "This is wonderful! Thank you and all of those people. You have made my dream come true."

2 1. followed 2. receive 3. blessing
4. realize 5. grow

3 The Statue of Liberty, U.S.A.
The Great Wall, China
The Sydney Opera House, Australia
Big Ben, England

▶ **Lesson 23**

1 Good things about the Internet: It makes life easier and simpler. It helps us get things done more quickly. It opens up the world to us. It makes it easy to stay in touch if a friend lives far away.

Bad things about the Internet: Spending too much time online is harmful to people's health. It may even cause people to be less social with family and friends. Some people attack the web or use the Internet to steal others' personal information, even banking information.

2 1. Their school project.
2. She can chat with her friends easily.
3. properly and carefully

3 （供参考）E-mail with friends and family. Chat online with friends. Write blogs. Send, receive or post photos with friends

▶ **Lesson 24**

1 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T

2 1. chatting 2. set up 3. search
4. program 5. go online

3 **e.g.** I like to communicate with my friends by writing e-mails because it is very fast and convenient.

▶ **Unit Review**

Building Your Vocabulary

I. 1. keyboard 2. hid 3. appears
4. industry 5. receive

II. 1. write down 2. depend on 3. be afraid
4. take up 5. set up

Grammar in Use

1. If you know how to use the computer, you can write your report on the computer.
2. If you know another program, you can edit your passage more easily than before.
3. If you are careful on the Internet, it will make your life richer and easier.
4. If you spend too much time online, it will hurt your family and friendships.

Listening and Speaking

II. 1. F 2. F 3. T

Putting It All Together

1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T

Self-Evaluation

I. **e.g.** I like chatting with my friends online.
I like doing research for my homework on the Internet.

II. **e.g.** If I want to improve my spoken English, I'll go to "Language".
If you don't stop him, he will play games the whole day.

Unit 5 Buying and Selling

▶ **Lesson 25**

1 1. Because they need to make some money for their basketball team.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. At lunch hour.

3. One dollar for four cookies.

4. He is going to invent a new product.

5. She doesn't believe Danny.

2 **1.** 1 000 *yuan* **2.** raise some money
3. cookies **4.** invent **5.** posters

3 **1.** players **2.** paid **3.** dollars
4. make money **5.** sells

4 **A:** Hi, Jenny. What is your plan for the weekend?
B: I'm going to the countryside for a field trip with my classmates.
A: Wow, wonderful! By the way, how much will the trip cost?
B: About 600 *yuan*.
A: Then how much will each of you need to pay?
B: About 30 *yuan*.
A: So what will you do to raise money?
B: We will make some cookies and sell them to raise money.

▶ Lesson 26

1 **1.** F **2.** T **3.** F **4.** T **5.** F

2 **1.** coins **2.** cheap **3.** pocket
4. while **5.** afford **6.** tied

3 Danny's Strategies:
Function of the product: You can do your homework on it while you ride your bike.
Try out the product: Try it for one week. If you don't like it, I will give you your money back.
Attractive price: It's only five dollars. That's a very low price for such a great product!

▶ Lesson 27

1 低买高卖。
这个月我们的生意正在赔钱。
我升职了。/ 我得到了一份更好的工作。
我需要补充我的报告。
他是一位富人。
他们通过修改公司账目来偷钱。

2 **1.** T **2.** F **3.** T **4.** T

3 **1.** in **2.** up **3.** at **4.** by **5.** without **6.** in

4

How long have you been in the biz?
What a fly-by-night operation!
Can you come down a little?
It would turn out to be a real cash cow.

▶ Lesson 28

1 countryside husband nobody helped surprised open raise honest value

2 **1.** honest **2.** gate **3.** value **4.** believe
5. trust

3

1.	that they can finish it on time.
2.	that she is a new student here.
3.	how we can get to the Shanghai Hotel?
4.	that he will try his best to do better next time.
5.	that he would come to visit me the next week.

4 Last Sunday, I went to a store to buy a birthday gift for my friend. I spent one hour choosing a good gift and I went over to the seller to pay for it. The gift cost me 50 *yuan*. Then I gave a ¥50 note to him and he gave me a bag for taking the gift. When I walked out of the store, I found a ¥50 note in the bag which was very familiar to me. Suddenly I realized it was the note that I gave to the seller. I went back to the seller. He didn't realize he put the note into the bag instead of his pocket until I took the note to him.

After that, some people think I am honest while some feel it is foolish of me to give the money back. What about your opinion?

▶ Lesson 29

1 **1.** T **2.** F **3.** T **4.** F

2

	Topic Sentence
Paragraph 3	Create an ad.
Paragraph 4	Go to trade shows and present your product.
Paragraph 5	Push your product using samples and good deals.

3 similar customers catch their eye offer excellent stand out

▶ Lesson 30

1 Recently Jenny, Danny and Brian raised some money for their school basketball team. Brian baked cookies and sold them all in less than an hour. Jenny made a poster for the cookie sale. Danny invented a new product—the Danny Desk-

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Cycle, but everyone thinks it's too dangerous to do homework on a bicycle.

2 1. His school sends books to another school in a village.
2. Maybe they can sell cookies in the store.
3. Yes. Because they like to help others.

3 1. first 2. better 3. hurts 4. great
5. doesn't have any cookies now

▶ Unit Review

Building Your Vocabulary

I. 1. cheap 2. everyday 3. shining
4. trust 5. pockets

II. sent opened paid cost

Grammar in Use

2. Simon says that your product will succeed
3. Simon says that he works hard in school
4. Simon says that the girl is going to buy Brian's cookies
5. Simon says that Jenny has some ideas

Listening and Speaking

I. 1. It sells glasses.
2. All the sunglasses are on sale.
3. It closes at 7:00 p. m. on Tuesdays.
4. For eight hours.
5. If you come on Sundays, you will get a free gift.

II. How about this one?
Do you have any smaller ones?
How much is it?
That's a little expensive.

Putting It All Together

I. 1—5 CBADC 6—10 BDBAB

Self-Evaluation

I. She wanted to help us open a shop to raise money for school activities.

II. I'm going to buy sixteen!

III. Do you know that business English can be different from everyday English?

Unit 6 Be a Champion!

▶ Lesson 31

1 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T

2 1. He is very tired. 2. Brian.
3. His mother is going to prepare chicken.
4. For more than three minutes.
He thinks the gathering is more important than a world record.

3 champion set break feel

▶ Lesson 32

1 1. Brian's.
2. Sandra set the record for the largest book.
3. It was 60 cm long, 40 cm wide and almost 21 cm thick! It was full of her family's photographs.
4. Amazed.
5. He won first place in the long jump and broke the school record.

2 photographs keep photographer lifted become several

▶ Lesson 33

1 1. In 776 BC. 2. In Greece.
3. In 1896. 4. In 2008. 5. Yes, it was.

2 new; old; 776; Women; Frenchman; friendship; Summer; Winter

3 1. married 2. athletes
3. modern host competed

▶ Lesson 34

1 1. D 2. S 3. D 4. S 5. S 6. D

2 2. farther the farthest
3. the largest 4. the best 5. Fewer

3

Year	2012	2008	2004	2000	1996
Host City	London	Beijing	Athens	Sydney	Atlanta
Slogan	Inspire a Generation	One world, one dream	Welcome Home	Share the spirit	The Celebration of the Century

▶ Lesson 35

1 1. The U. S. basketball team.
2. No, it isn't.
3. A dream team has the best players, the best coach and the best team spirit.
4. By working together.

2 1. influence 2. badminton 3. gold
4. perform 5. coach

3 fastest highest good more important

4 **A:** Is it played inside or outside?
B: Outside.
A: Is it on land or in water?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B: On land.

A: Is it a solo event or a team event?

B: A team event.

A: How many players are there in a team?

B: Eleven players.

A: I know it's football.

▶ Lesson 36

1 1. Five events. Jump rope, long jump, sit-ups, push-ups and "Jump over the Dinosaur".

2. Some paper pizzas, a cardboard donut and a toy dinosaur. 3. Danny.

4. Brian was sad. Because he lost.

5. She thought the events were fun.

2 1. event 2. rope 3. result 4. none

3 1. Kim jumped more than Danny in the jump rope event.

2. Kim jumped the farthest in the long jump event.

3. Sandra did more than Lisa in the sit-ups.

4. Sandra jumped the most in the jump rope event.

4 Our event is called Ball Toss. We need a small box, some tape and ten tennis balls. First, we tape the small box on the floor. Then stand three metres away. Finally, try to throw ten tennis balls into the box. In one minute, the one who throws the most into the box is the winner.

▶ Unit Review

Building Your Vocabulary

I. 1. Ropes 2. kilos 3. gold 4. none 5. *Peace*

II. race faster give best won

Grammar in Use

1. better 2. easier 3. farthest 4. worse 5. less

Listening and Speaking

I. 1. 54.64 seconds.

2. He is a basketball player.

3. He plays the guitar.

Putting It All Together

I. 1. Because in many countries, the weather is too hot for sports such as skiing and skating.

2. In 1980.

3. Yang Yang.

Self-Evaluation

I. He has a book of world records.

II. They also represent their countries at the highest level.

III. Did anyone find out when the Olympics began?

Unit 7 Know Our World

▶ Lesson 37

1 Jenny—China Danny—China
Brian—Canada

2 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F

3 1. population

2. island

3. except

4. abroad

5. Japanese

▶ Lesson 38

1 1—c 2—e 3—a 4—d 5—b

2 1. increasing

2. total

3. driest

4. surface

5. billions

3 Europe—第 6 句；South America—第 4 句；
Asia—第 1 句；Africa—第 2 句；
Australia—第 7 句；Antarctica—第 5 句；
North America—第 3 句

▶ Lesson 39

1 express; pronounce; spell; ring up

2 √ In British English, people "ring up" someone, while in American English, people "call" someone.

√ British people use the "toilet", while Americans go to the "washroom" or "bathroom".

√ British people say "autumn", while Americans say "fall".

3

	British English	American English
Vocabulary	autumn, toilet	fall, washroom/ bathroom
Spelling	colour, metre	color, meter
Expression	ring up someone, 21st October	call someone on the phone, October 21
Other differences	pass/pɑːs/, clerk/klɑːk/	pass/pæs/, clerk/klɜːrk/

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

▶ Lesson 40

1 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T

2

Gestures	Meanings	Countries
shake hands	greeting, friendship and trust	in China and some other countries
kiss each other on both cheeks	friendship and love	in some European countries
nod one's head	yes	in most places
	no	in India
shake one's head	yes	in India
	no	in most places
thumbs-up	okay and well done	in many countries
	not polite	in Australia
	five	in Japan
	one	in Germany

3 1. kisses 2. shake 3. nod 4. European 5. polite

▶ Lesson 41

1 1. √ Egypt. 2. √ In Brazil.
3. √ The Bosphorous Bridge.
4. √ Ride a camel.

2 largest called Europe Asia connects surprise population famous

3 1. tourists 2. relaxes 3. preparing
4. called; surprised 5. pride

4 Beijing is my home city. It is the capital city of our country. It is a city in northern China. It has a population of nearly 20 million. It covers more than 16,000 square kilometres in area. Beijing is known for its places of interest, such as the Great Wall, Tian'anmen Square, the Palace Museum, and so on.

▶ Lesson 42

3 square; most common; Spanish; speak; larger; live

▶ Unit Review

Building Your Vocabulary

I. 1. prepare 2. polite 3. except
4. surface 5. trust 6. tourists 7. kiss

II. 1. pronounced 2. increasing
3. translate 4. politely 5. spelt

Grammar in Use

I. 1. have been 2. has gone 3. have been
4. has gone 5. has gone; has been

II. 1. is spoken 2. not be seen
3. are used 4. will be built 5. be shaken
6. be translated 7. be learned 8. be treated
9. is said 10. wasn't invited

Putting It All Together

I. 1. China is the biggest country in Asia.
2. More than four billion people live in Asia.
3. Mount Qomolangma is the highest mountain.

II. I have a two-week holiday. My parents and I want to go to Wuhu for my holiday. We will go there by train.We are going to go sightseeing and take some photos.Then we will visit Jiuzi Square and the Mirror Lake Park. Finally, we are going to enjoy some delicious food in the Food Street.

Self-Evaluation

I. Sometimes we describe the same thing in different ways or use different words.

II. Jenny and I have been to China twice.

III. It must be treated well for our children and for our children's children, too!

Unit 8 Save Our World

▶ Lesson 43

1 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T

2 1. In the schoolyard.
2. Picking up garbage.
3. Pollution.

3 rubbish pollution agree attention schoolyard cleaning

4 Save Our Sea
Protect the Blue Sky
Pursue Green Fashion
Trend towards Green Civilization

▶ Lesson 44

1 1. Because students want to work together to reduce pollution and protect the environment.
2. Because it's a good way to reduce packaging.
3. In an environment club, students fix leaky toilets and sinks. They turn off the television and shut down the computer when they are not using them. And they turn off the lights when they leave a room.

2 1. polluted 2. waste 3. Nobody
4. least 5. shut

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3 fewer throw reuse recycle garbage

▶ Lesson 45

1 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T

2 1. It is fun [to travel]!

2. It is not right [to waste things].

3. It is quite easy [to find information with this program].

4. They think it is rude [to point with a finger].

5. It is dangerous [to leave broken glass on the ground].

PROJECT

How could people make less garbage? First, people can buy fewer things. When they buy fewer things, they throw away fewer things. Second, people can reuse things. They can use things, and then they use them again. Third, people can recycle things. They can make old things into new things.

▶ Lesson 46

1 sort garbage at home; reuse plastic bags; ride bikes or take buses; take short showers

3 We should open a window instead of turning on the air conditioning.

We should use both sides of the paper.

We should sort the waste before throwing it away.

We should turn off the tap when we are brushing our teeth.

We shouldn't throw garbage on the ground.

We shouldn't cut down trees in forests.

▶ Lesson 47

1 3 4 1 2

2 1. dead 2. respect 3. follow
4. connected 5. died

3 BDAC

▶ Lesson 48

1 **This week:** They learned about pollution.

On Tuesday: It was World Environment Day. All of their classmates took bags and picked up the garbage.

Later on Tuesday: Brian, Danny and Jenny went for a walk around their neighbourhood. They picked up the rubbish. Danny found a used toy car with one broken wheel. He took it home, cleaned it and fixed it.

On Wednesday: They sorted their school's garbage.

Today: Danny made a car out of garbage.

Later this month: They will go on a class trip to the city recycling centre.

2 1. Let's clean it up. 2. Let's pick it up.
3. Let's go for a walk. 4. Please put on the coat.

3 Battery; Paint

▶ Unit Review

Building Your Vocabulary

I. 1. rubbish 2. follow 3. pollute
4. waste 5. pollution

II. 1. pick up 2. throw away
3. More than 4. turn; off 5. Neither; nor

Grammar in Use

1. It is hard for us to finish the project in an hour.
2. It will be fun for us to go to the schoolyard to play.
3. It is not right for people to waste paper often.
4. It is our duty to protect the environment.

Listening and Speaking

I. 1. They were by the river. 2. Li Ming.
3. A toy truck.

II. Can you help me?
What's wrong?
Could/ Can you help me take the garbage out?

Putting It All Together

I. 1. He uses the cardboard for the car's body.
2. He uses the lids of the ice cream pails for the car's wheels.
3. He uses old metal cans for the headlights of the car.

II. **e.g.** There is much pollution in my city. How can we reduce pollution? First, we should take our own bags instead of using plastic bags when we go shopping. Second, we shouldn't throw away rubbish anywhere. At last, we had better go to school or work on foot or by bike. I think these ways can help save our city.

Self-Evaluation

I. It's not too hard to protect the environment.
We should respect the earth and all the living things on it.

II. On Tuesday, it was World Environment Day.
Some hazardous waste is poison—it makes people sick.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

廿年磨一剑 · 匠心铸经典

教师的备课笔记 · 学生的随身家教 · 家长的辅导工具



责任编辑：刘　军
封面题字：沈　鹏
封面设计：典点瑞泰

荣德基官方网站：http://www.rudder.com.cn
荣德基天猫旗舰店：http://rongdeji.tmall.com

荣德基初中报道

ISBN 978-7-5383-9329-3
05>
9 787538 393293
定价：41.80元

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料